



ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus
Admin Guide

ManageEngine 
SupportCenter *plus*

Table of Contents

INTRODUCTION	7
GETTING STARTED	9
SupportCenter Plus Users	10
Importing Support Reps from Active Directory	11
Importing Accounts/Contacts	13
Registering SupportCenter Plus	15
Configuring Business Units	17
Customer Portal Settings	21
HOME PAGE	23
License Expiry Alert	26
Dashboard	27
Log a Call	30
My Tasks	32
Publishing Announcements	34
Reminders	37
Preferences	41
Feedback	43
ACTIVITIES	44
Activities List View	45
Viewing Activities based on Filters	47
Customizing Activities List View	48
Searching Tasks and Events	49
Adding New Tasks	50
Viewing Tasks	52
Creating New Events	54
Viewing Events	57
REQUESTS	60
Request List View	64
Requests Based on Filters	67
Custom Views	69

Customizing Request List View	72
Search Requests	73
Creating New Requests	75
Auto CC Recipient	79
Editing Requests	81
Deleting Requests	82
Closing Requests.....	83
Merging Requests.....	84
Assigning Requests to Support Rep.....	87
Request Details Page	89
Request Conversations.....	94
Start/Stop Request Timer	97
Adding Notes.....	99
Adding Reminders	100
Duplicate Requests.....	101
Printing Requests	102
Canned Responses	103
Add New Canned Response	103
Editing Canned Response.....	104
Deleting Canned Response.....	104
Replying via Canned Response	105
Adding Resolution	106
Search Solutions	108
Submit For Approval.....	109
View Contact Details.....	111
View Requests by Contact	112
Replying to the Contact.....	113
Forwarding Requests to Support Reps	116
E-mail the Support Rep.....	119
SMS the Support Rep.....	121
SOLUTIONS	122
Solution List View.....	123
Solutions based on filters	126
Custom Views.....	127
Customizing Solution List View	130
Search Solutions	131

Adding New Solution.....	133
Solution Details Page	135
Editing Solutions	137
Deleting Solutions	138
Forward Solution	139
Submit for Approval	140
Approve/Reject Solution.....	142
Managing Topics	143
Browsing Solutions by Topic	146
Topics Template.....	147
CONTRACTS	149
Contracts List View	151
Contracts based on filters	153
Custom Views.....	154
Customizing Contract List View	157
Search Contracts.....	158
Creating New Contract	159
Contract Details Page	161
Editing and Deleting Contracts	162
Renew Contract	163
Printing Contracts	165
ACCOUNTS	166
Accounts List View.....	167
Accounts based on Filters	170
Custom Views.....	171
Customizing Accounts List View.....	174
Searching Accounts	175
Adding a New Account	177
Account Details Page	179
Editing and Deleting Account	186
Assign/Unassign Topic Template.....	187
Importing Sales details from CSV File.....	189
Importing Accounts/Contacts from CSV File	190

CONTACTS	191
Contacts List View	192
Contacts based on Filters	194
Custom Views.....	195
Customizing Contact List View.....	198
Search Contacts.....	200
Adding New Contact	202
Contact Details Page.....	204
Editing and Deleting Contact.....	207
Reconcile Contacts	208
Associate Accounts with Contacts	209
Unapproved Contacts.....	210
Registered Contacts.....	211
CONFIGURATIONS	212
Helpdesk Settings	213
Mail Server Settings.....	214
Mail Configuration.....	217
Twitter Settings.....	218
Computer Telephony Integration (CTI)	220
Telephony Server Settings	220
Click to Dial	221
Screen Pops	222
Helpdesk Customizer	224
Configuring Category/Sub Category/Items.....	225
Editing and Deleting Category/Sub Category/ Items.....	227
Configuring Status	229
Configuring Level.....	230
Configuring Mode.....	231
Configuring Priority	232
Request Additional Fields	233
Request Field Permissions	234
Request Closing Rules	235
Request Template.....	236
Scheduled Requests.....	240
Notification Rules	243
Configuring Business Rules	244
Time Entry Type.....	247
Time Entry - Additional Fields.....	248
Remote Assistance	249
Remote Assistance Setup.....	250
Inviting Contacts from Request Details page	251

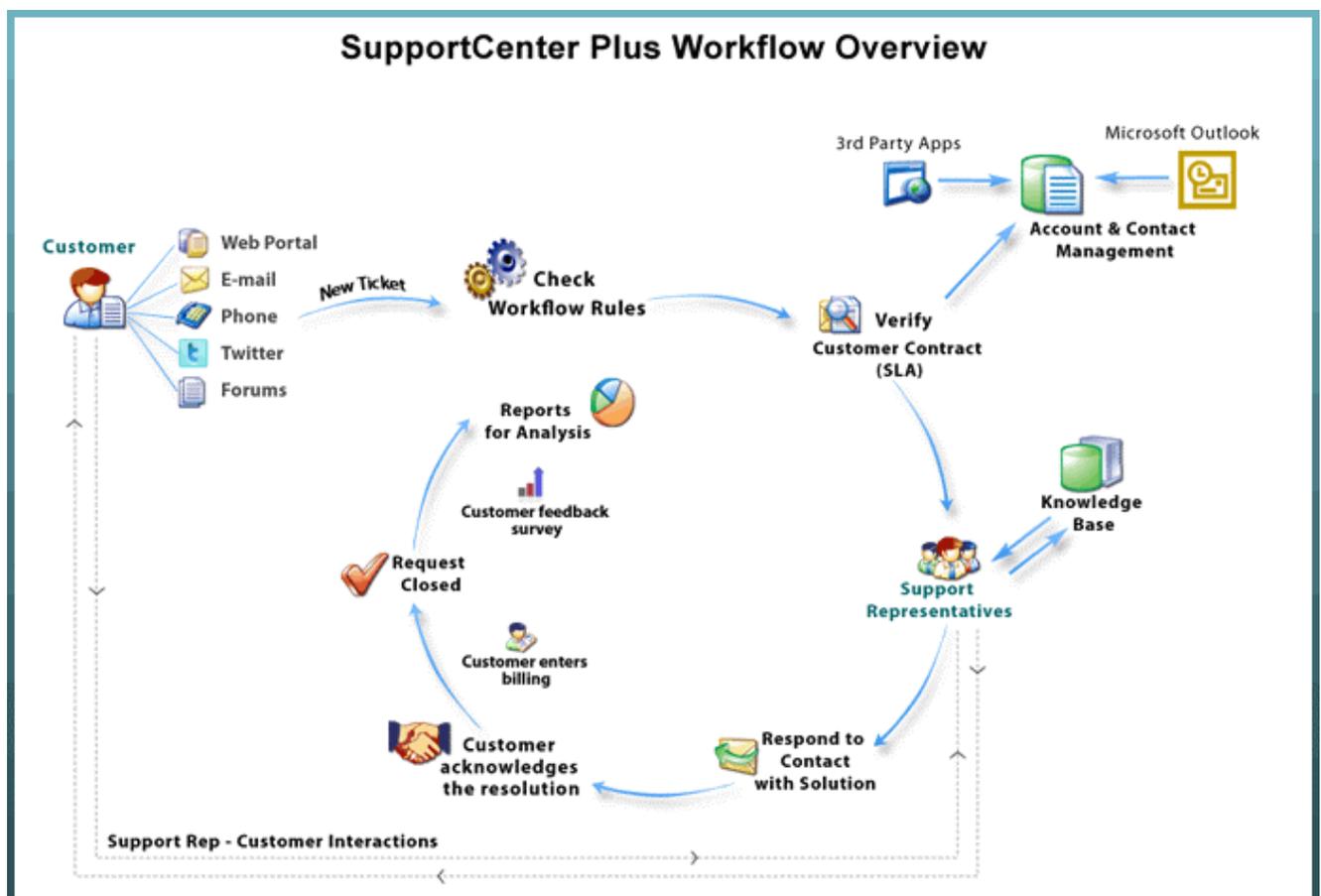
Account Settings	252
Configuring Industry	253
Configuring Product Types	254
Product Additional Fields.....	255
Configuring Product	256
Account - Additional Fields.....	257
Sales - Additional Fields	258
Schedule CSV Import	259
Customer Portal Settings	261
Contract Settings	264
Support Services	265
Configuring Support Plan	266
Configuring Service Level Agreements	268
Configuring Operational Hours.....	271
Configuring Holidays	272
User and Related Settings	273
Configuring Roles	274
Configuring Contact - Additional Fields.....	276
Configuring Support Rep - Additional Fields.....	277
Configuring Support Reps	278
Account Manager.....	282
Configuring Groups.....	283
Windows Domains	285
User Survey Settings	287
Survey Settings.....	288
Defining a Survey	289
Sending Survey.....	291
Survey Preview	293
Viewing Survey Results	294
Organization Settings	295
Configuring Organization Details.....	296
Configuring General Settings.....	297
System Notification Settings	302
Backup Scheduling	303
SUPPORTCENTER PLUS API	304
API Settings in SupportCenter Plus	305
Request Related Operations.....	308
Account/Contact Related Operations	322
Solution Related Operations.....	333

REPORTS	335
Pre-defined Reports.....	336
Custom Reports	338
Viewing Reports.....	341
Query Reports	344
Schedule Reports	345
Report Settings.....	346
Exporting Report as PDF.....	347
DASHBOARDS	348
Adding Widgets to Dashboard	351
Dashboards.....	355
APPENDIX	358
System Log Viewer	359
Contacting ZOHO Corporation	360

Introduction

The process of handling service request from the customer to the support rep is manual in many organizations, which makes them prone to human error, and extremely difficult to manage and synchronize customer information. Thus often leading to a significant delay in executing the incoming tickets and tasks.

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus is one of the most comprehensive Customer Help Desk Software, which can help any business to effectively support and communicate to their customers. SupportCenter Plus is a web based customer service and support solution that offers **Trouble Ticketing, Account & Contact Management, SLA Management** and **Knowledge base** all in one package. It helps you track and resolve customer issues quickly, thereby delivering superior customer support and taking customer satisfaction to the next level.



The two main focus of ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus are;

- Request Tracking, and
- Customer Account Management

Using the above modules, support reps and administrators can resolve complex issues in no time, thus reducing end-user frustration arising due to time consuming issue resolving process. In addition, they can also keep track of the changing needs of the customers and modify their services to suit their requirements.

Requests Module

Helpdesk Support Reps receive requests from a variety of sources; email, phone calls, forums, web portal, from various regions across the globe. The request module functions as the customer support desk where requests are fetched from the mail server at regular intervals and routed to the respective Business Units from where necessary solutions are provided by assigning support reps to resolve issues reported.

Solutions Module

This module serves as a knowledge base for your customer support team as well as your customers. Customers can search this for solutions for issues and solve it themselves. Also, when support reps resolve issues, they can directly convert these resolutions as knowledge base articles.

Contracts Module

Contracts are the services offered to an account and their associated products for a specific time period. These support services are grouped under a Support Plan which determines the due by time for requests raised for the account/product. Thus based on the associated contracts, any request raised for the account/product should be resolved based on the support plan and applied due by time.

Accounts Module

With this module, all your valuable customer information can be maintained and kept up-to-date. The account information gives you details of their contacts, the products purchased and the kind of support services that needs to be provided to them. Furthermore, for accounts with branches in different locations, each branch is added as a sub account of the account. Thus maintaining information of the branches of an account too.

Contacts Module

The contact information tracking enables you to have a tab on what is the latest progress on the status of the customer, the type of customer and other such related information. To view the various contacts and their details, click the **Contacts** tab in the header pane.

Reports Module

Using reports module you can evaluate and analyze the efficiency and productivity of your support team, and the load of requests handled by them. A set of predefined reports are generated from the data available in the application. Apart from the preset reports you can also customize your reports using **Custom Reports** option.

Getting Started

Installed the product and cannot figure out from where to start your configurations? Getting Started Guide tells you how to go about working on the product after Installation.

The initial features to be configured in SupportCenter Plus application are;

- SupportCenter Plus Users
- Importing Support Reps
- Importing Accounts & Contacts
- Email and Mail Server Configurations
- Configuring Business Units
- Customer Portal Settings

SupportCenter Plus Users

In SupportCenter Plus there are three kinds of users;

- **Administrator:** support reps privileged to configure and manage all the settings in the application.
- **Support Reps:** who attend to requests, and can create and run custom reports.
- **Contacts:** who submit service requests into the application.



Note: Contacts can log into the application from the Customer Service Portal.

The user you are logging in as is the main administrator. You will be able to access all the modules and features in the application.

If you have forgotten your password to log into the application, all you need to do is click on the **Forgot Password** link in the login screen.

1. Enter the e-mail address registered in the application.
2. Click **Send Request** button. An e-mail is sent to the specified address to reset the password.
3. Click on the link specified in the e-mail. The create new password form appears.
4. Enter the **New Password** in the field provided.
5. Retype the password in the **Confirm New Password** field.
6. Click **Change**. A success message appears along with a link to take you back to the login screen.
7. Click **Back to Login** and enter your Username and the new Password to log into the application.

Note: Please note that the support reps and contacts should possess a registered e-mail address and a login name. In case of contacts, apart from the two conditions, the contacts should be associated to an account.

Importing Support Reps from Active Directory

You can import all your support reps instantly if their details are configured in the Active Directory. SupportCenter Plus allows you to enable Active Directory authentication to these support reps and also provide specific roles to execute definite tasks in the application.

You can find **Import from Active Directory** option under Admin -> Support Reps.

- **Domain Name & Domain Controller:** Domain name and Domain Controller from which the support reps need to be imported.
- **Login Name & Password:** Login Credentials to the domain.
- Select the fields to be imported from the active directory.

Import from Active Directory

Import from Active Directory

Please Note:
On Importing, Existing data will be overwritten and New data will be added.

* Mandatory Field

* Domain Name	<input type="text" value="ACME"/>	▼	Add New Domain
* Domain Controller	<input type="text" value="acme"/>		
* Login Name	<input type="text" value="administrator"/>		
* Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>		

Select Fields for Import

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Phone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mobile
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Job title	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> E-mail

On selecting the necessary **Organizational Units (OU)** and importing the support reps, you need to enable **Active Directory Authentication** under Settings in the Admin module.

You can also schedule an Active Directory Import at regular intervals to synchronize the database information with the active directory. If there are any modifications in the existing support rep information, the data will be rewritten and updated in the application.

Active Directory Settings

- Enable Active Directory Authentication**
If enabled, Support Rep(s) can log in to SupportCenter using their Active Directory credentials.
- Schedule Active Directory Import**
Import every days

On enabling AD authentication, the login name and password with its domain is validated in the AD after which the Support Rep can log into the application.

Alternatively, you can also add support reps manually into the application using the **Add New Support Rep** link. [Refer Support Reps to know more on adding support reps manually]

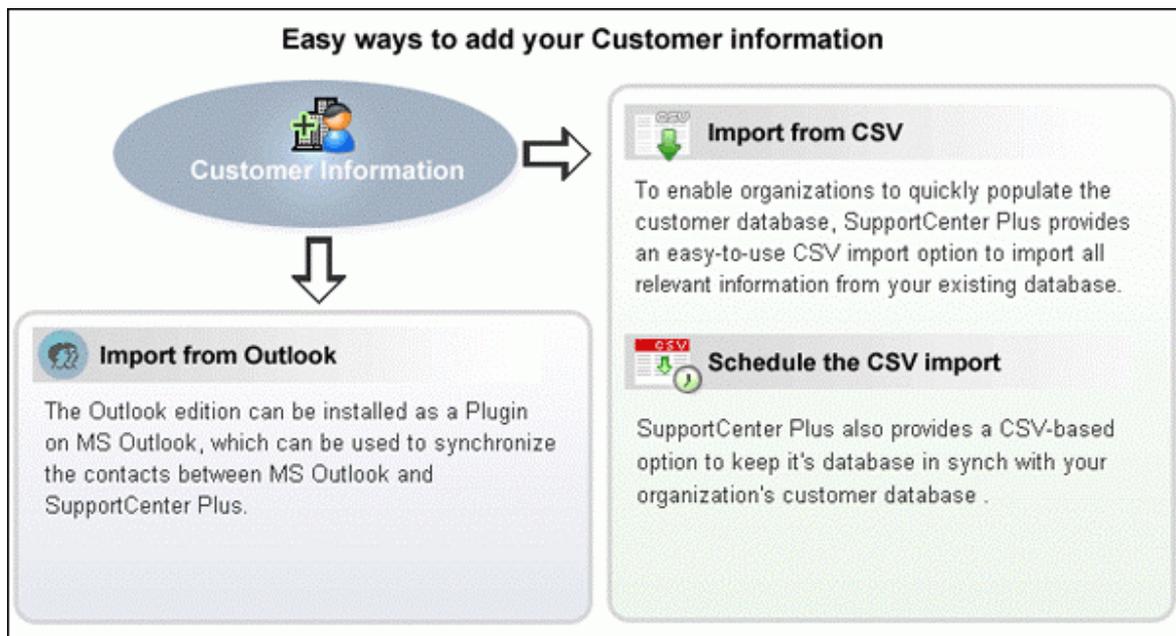
Importing Accounts/Contacts

Once the support reps are successfully imported into the application, the Accounts and the respective contacts information is imported either from

- Microsoft Outlook, or
- CSV Import

The Outlook edition can be installed on user's MS Outlook as a plugin, which can be used to synchronize the contacts in between Microsoft Outlook and the SupportCenter Plus.

[To know more on refer Import From Outlook]



Importing Accounts/Contacts from CSV file

Importing Accounts/Contacts from CSV link is found under the **Accounts** and **Contacts** module. SupportCenter Plus also provides Scheduling CSV Import to keep its database in sync with the customer's database.

The CSV Import consists of three steps;

Step 1: Upload CSV file

1. Click on **Browse** button to select the CSV file.
2. On locating the CSV file from the file chooser window, click **Open**.
3. Select the **File Encoding** from the drop down.
4. Click **Next >>** button.

Step 2: Map Columns

From this section you can import both account and contact information at the same time. Thus establishing the contact-account relationship and also self service login to the contacts in just one import. For this, every individual contact available in the CSV file should be associated to an account.

1. Map the application contact fields with the field names from the CSV file.
2. Click **Next**>>. Click **Previous** << to go back to Step 1.

Step 3: Import

1. Click **Import Now** button. The account/contact details from the CSV file is imported.
2. Once the import is complete, the data on how many records were added, how many overwritten, and how many failed to import is displayed in the pop-up.
3. If at any point you wish to stop importing from the CSV file, click the **Exit** button.

Registering SupportCenter Plus

Once your trial evaluation period is over, you need to register the SupportCenter Plus application. To purchase the application, please contact sales@adventnet.com. They will send you the registered license file. Using this license file, you can register the SupportCenter Plus application.

To register SupportCenter Plus,

1. Log in to the SupportCenter Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the **License** link available at the right top of the application. The **License** window is opened as shown,

Renew

[Close]

ManageEngine® SupportCenter plus
CUSTOMER SUPPORT SOFTWARE

Renew

To renew AdventNet ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus, locate the license file sent to you and click Apply button

License File :

Product Name	: AdventNet ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus 7.0.0
License Type	: Trial Version
Max. Number of Support Rep Logins	: 2
Max. Number of Accounts	: Unlimited
Expires on	: Sat, 17 Jan 2009 (Expires in 29 days)

Contact AdventNet ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus support :
Email : support@supportcenterplus.com
Toll free : +1-888-720-9500

3. Click the **Browse** button to locate the license file sent to you when you purchased the application.
4. From the file chooser window, select the license file and click **Open**.
5. Click **Apply**.

If your license has expired, then follow the steps given below,

1. Save the license file in one of the directories of the server machine.
2. Start the server from the command prompt.
C:\AdventNet\ME\SupportCenter\bin>run.bat
3. A message prompts for the license file path.
4. Enter the full directory path of the license file.

5. Shutdown the server when it begins to start.
 - Open another command prompt
 - Go to the bin directory
 - Run the script
 - `cmd> sh shutdown.sh -S`

After this process you will be able to start the server using the normal mode (Start -> Programs -> ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus-> Start Server).

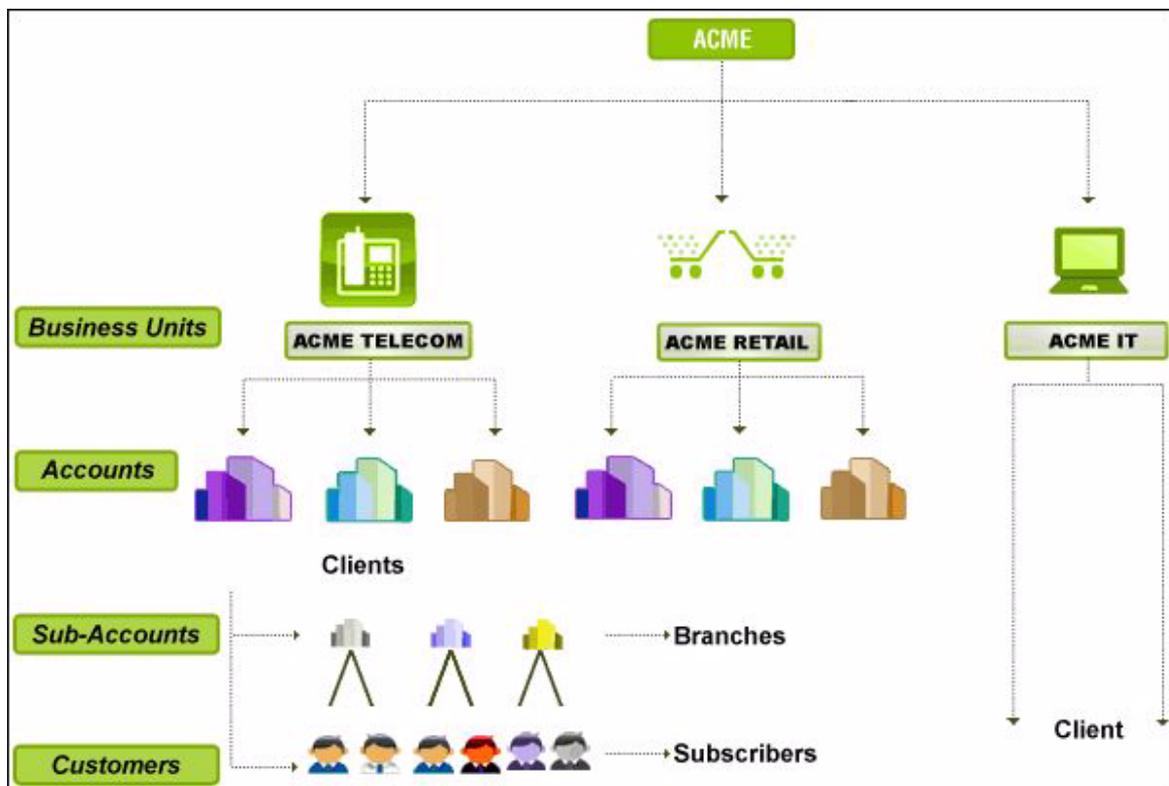
The registration of the SupportCenter Plus application is complete. You can continue using the application.

Configuring Business Units

Organizations with various marketing segments can be best thought of as a number of businesses, that supports their own set of accounts, customers and vendors. Hence, the customer support operations in these enterprises are complex, interconnected and extremely difficult to organize.

In ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus, you can configure individual segment or division as a "Business Unit", with which, you can organize and manage your support team effectively.

For instance, let's take the company Acme Corporation. It has 3 Strategic Business Units which include Telecom, Retail and IT. Each Business Units can have their own customers (Accounts) and each customer can have multiple branches (Sub Accounts). The Accounts and Sub accounts can have their own contacts (Customer Contacts), who will be raising the requests.



Before getting into the configurations and modules based on departments, let us understand the roles and privileges offered to a support representative in departments.

Support Representative: Ability to be associated to multiple departments, and assigned with different roles for every department.

- 
Global Administrator: All the business units is governed by a global administrator, who will have a wholesome view of all the business unit operations.

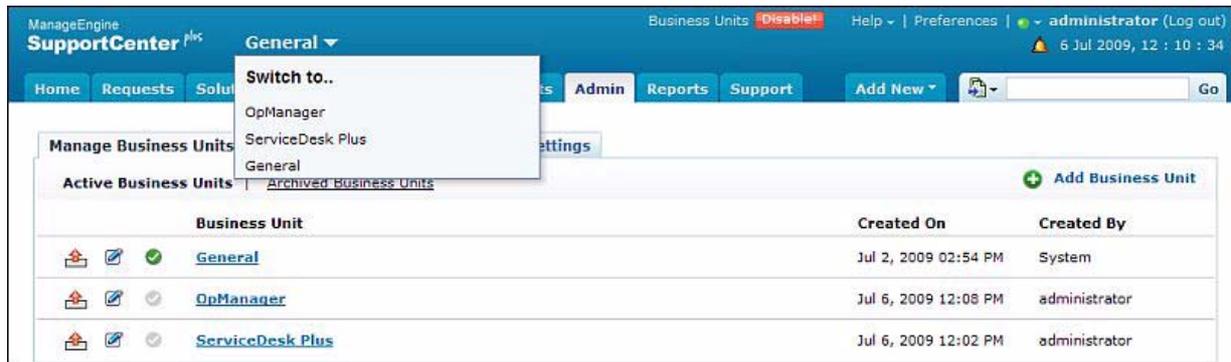
- 
Business Unit Administrator: Each Business Unit can have its own Business Unit Administrator, who will have the rights to maintain the different accounts, sub-accounts and other related operations of the business unit.

If you have enabled multi tendency, on installing ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus, the configuration wizard opens to view the following tabs,

- **Manage Business Units**
- **Business Unit Settings**
- **Global Settings**

Manage Business Units

You can manage and organize all your Business Units from this tab. Manage Business Units lists all the Business Units added in SupportCenter Plus from which you can add, edit and move Business Units to archive state. In addition, you can also set a Business Unit as default. The default Business Unit accumulates requests which are not aliased to any business unit.



Add Business Unit

1. Click on **Add Business Unit** link.
2. Specify the **name of the Business Unit**. The name is a mandatory field.
3. Select the **Time Zone** of the specified Business Unit.
4. Enter a brief description on the Business Unit in **Description** field.
5. If you wish to make this Business Unit available in Customer Portal then enable the check box "**Make it available in the Customer Portal**".
6. Click **Add Business Unit** to add the business unit and return to the list view page. If you do not wish to add the Business Unit then click **Cancel**.

Note: The number of Business Units added depends on the license purchased. If you have purchased a 5 Business Unit license then only 5 business units can be added along with the default Business Unit present in the application.

Edit Business Unit

1. From the list of Active Business Units, click the **Edit** icon  beside the Business Unit you wish to edit.
2. Modify the required fields and click Update.

Archive Business Units

Business Units cannot be deleted but can be made inactive by moving it to archive for further reference. The business unit currently viewed cannot be moved to archive state unless you switch to another business unit.

To move a Business Unit to archive,

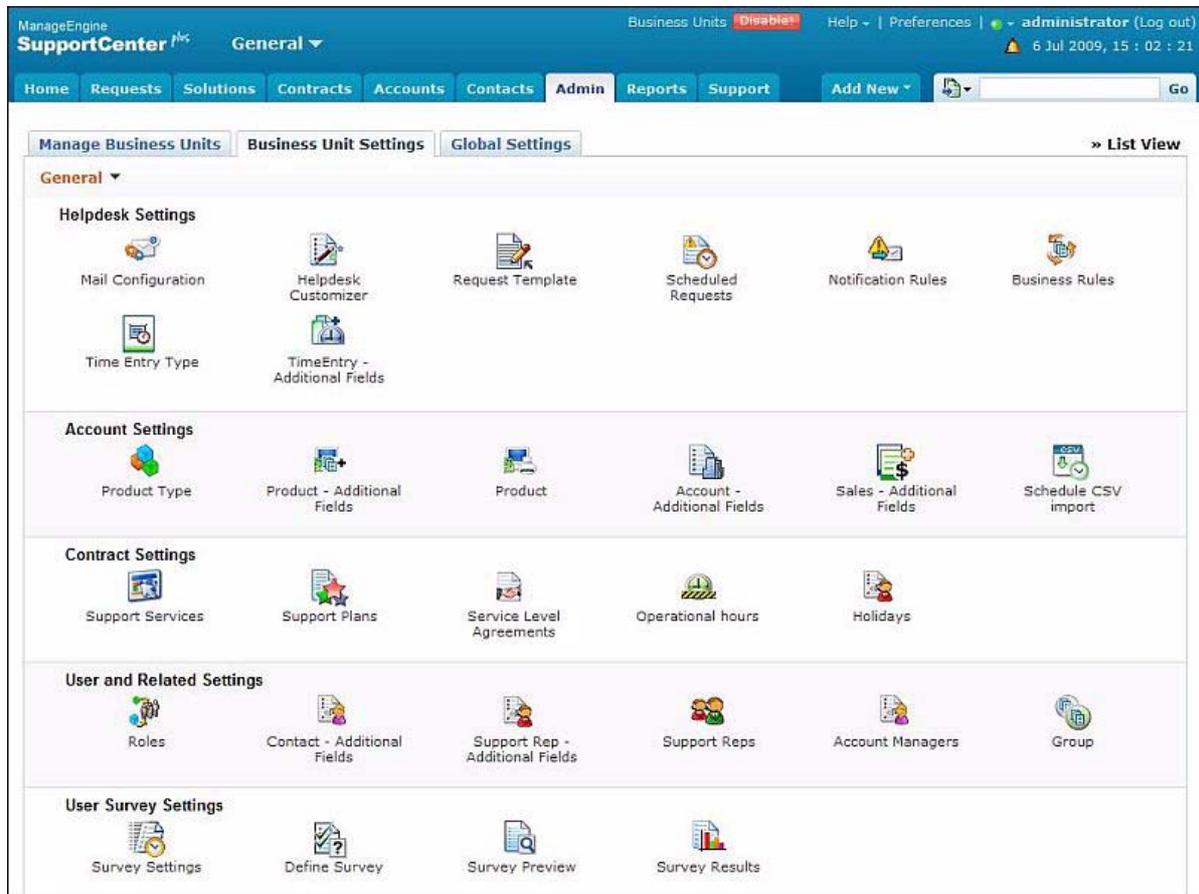
1. From the list of Active Business Unit, select the **Archive Business Unit** icon  beside the Business Unit you wish to move to archive state.
2. A success message appears and the business unit is moved under Archive Business Unit. **Note:** Business Units moved to archive will not take up a license.

To reactive archive Business Units

1. Select **Archive Business Unit** link. The list of all archive business unit is displayed.
2. Click **Reactivate Business Unit**  icon beside the business unit you wish to make active.

Business Unit Settings

The Business Unit Settings consists of all the admin settings that require separate configurations for each Business Units. To know more on configuring individual settings refer Configurations.



The screenshot displays the 'Business Unit Settings' page in the ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus Admin interface. The page is organized into several sections, each with a set of configuration options represented by icons and text labels:

- General Settings:** Includes Mail Configuration, Helpdesk Customizer, Request Template, Scheduled Requests, Notification Rules, Business Rules, Time Entry Type, and TimeEntry - Additional Fields.
- Account Settings:** Includes Product Type, Product - Additional Fields, Product, Account - Additional Fields, Sales - Additional Fields, and Schedule CSV import.
- Contract Settings:** Includes Support Services, Support Plans, Service Level Agreements, Operational hours, and Holidays.
- User and Related Settings:** Includes Roles, Contact - Additional Fields, Support Rep - Additional Fields, Support Reps, Account Managers, and Group.
- User Survey Settings:** Includes Survey Settings, Define Survey, Survey Preview, and Survey Results.

The interface also shows a navigation menu at the top with options like Home, Requests, Solutions, Contracts, Accounts, Contacts, Admin, Reports, and Support. The current user is identified as 'administrator' with a 'Log out' option.

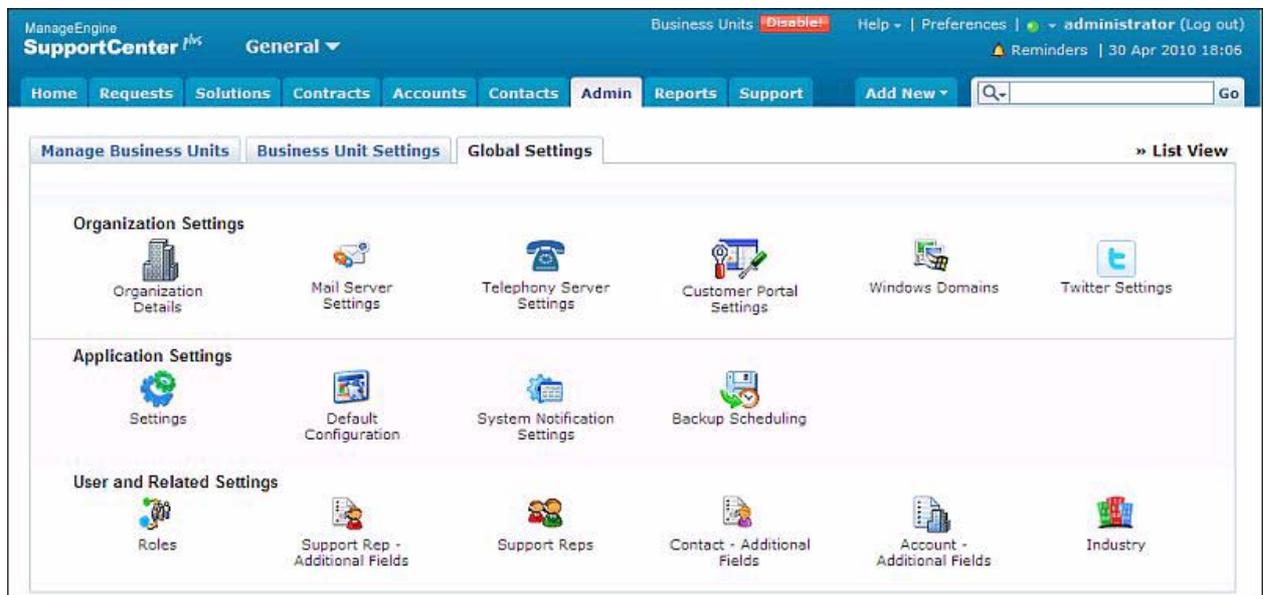
Global Settings

A few admin settings are applicable to all the Business Units configured in the application like the Mail Server Settings, Customer Portal, scheduling a backup and so on. These admin settings are grouped as **Global Settings**.

In addition to the above list, **Global Additional Fields** can be configured for support reps, contacts and accounts. The addition fields configured are available while adding support reps, accounts and contacts for all the business units in the application.

The **Roles** and **Support Reps** functionality under Global Settings is an added advantage to the multi tendency support, especially in scenarios where a support rep or a role is required for all the available business units.

To know more on configuring individual settings refer Configurations.



Customer Portal Settings

To make your customers gain easy access into SupportCenter Plus application you can customize and design your Customer Portal to suit your needs. Whether its permitting your customers to browse through solutions or announcements, to customizing the entire portal color, Customer Portal Settings provides it all.

With Customer Portal Settings under the Admin module, you can transform the entire web portal page into a flexible and feasible customer portal.

Note	Customer Portal Page can be accessed at  <a href="http://<server_name>:<port>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd">http://<server_name>:<port>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd
-------------	--

There are three blocks which needs to be configured before you achieve your desirable customer portal

- **Portal Name:** The name to be displayed in your customer portal.
- **Portal Content:** The contents that needs to be displayed in the portal which includes, the header, sidebar and the content area.
- **Portal Color Customization:** You can customize the portal color, font and size accordingly to your choice.

Portal Content

The Portal Content block consists of the **Header**, **Content Area** and **Sidebar**.



- **Header:** On the header you can display your company logo and specific URLs to the product or website. Enable the check box beside **Logo** to display the company logo in the customer portal. You can also add direct links to your company websites from the portal.



- **Content Area:** Add links to instantly browse through solutions or a submit a ticket from the customer portal. You can customize the content area by add new links or modifying the existing links. You can also make available all the public announcements, recent solutions and popular solutions to the customer on selecting the corresponding check boxes.
- **Sidebar:** Sidebar provides options for **Login** section to customers and also a **Registration** option for new customers. You can also provide options if an approval is required for the new customers from the drop down. Further, a **Search Solutions** field can be provided to search for the public solutions and a **Sidebar box** containing sections. To add sections, click on **Add Section**, enter the details and **Save**.

Portal Color Customization

Customize the header, content area, sidebar and body background with portal color, font and size according to your choice. To restore to the default color scheme, select **Restore Default Color Scheme** link.

To preview the customer portal while customizing click **Preview**. Click **Apply Changes** to apply the changes made.

Home Page

The home page for all users of SupportCenter Plus has various useful information displayed that enables an administrator, a support rep, or a contact to take necessary action. Based on the login credentials of the user, the following are available in home page,

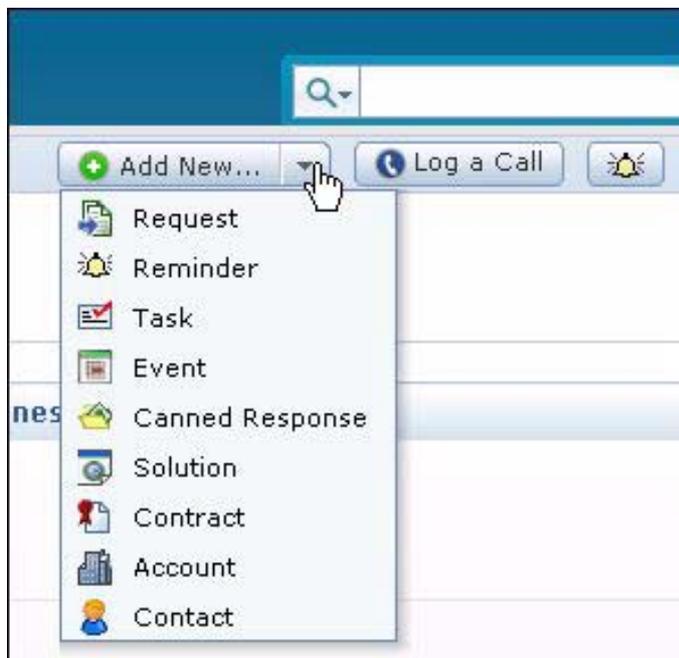
1. Dashboard
2. Log a Call
3. Add New drop down
4. Search field
5. Reminders
6. Preferences
7. Feedback
8. Online Status

Log a Call

Log a Call is an instant mode to create new requests or view existing requests when you are on a call with the customer. With log a call option, support reps can log requests either by conducting a search from the existing customers list or by entering the contact details for a first time caller. [Click here to know more.](#)

Add New drop down

The Add New is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Requests, New Reminders, New Task, New Canned response, New Solution, New Contract, New Account and Contact.

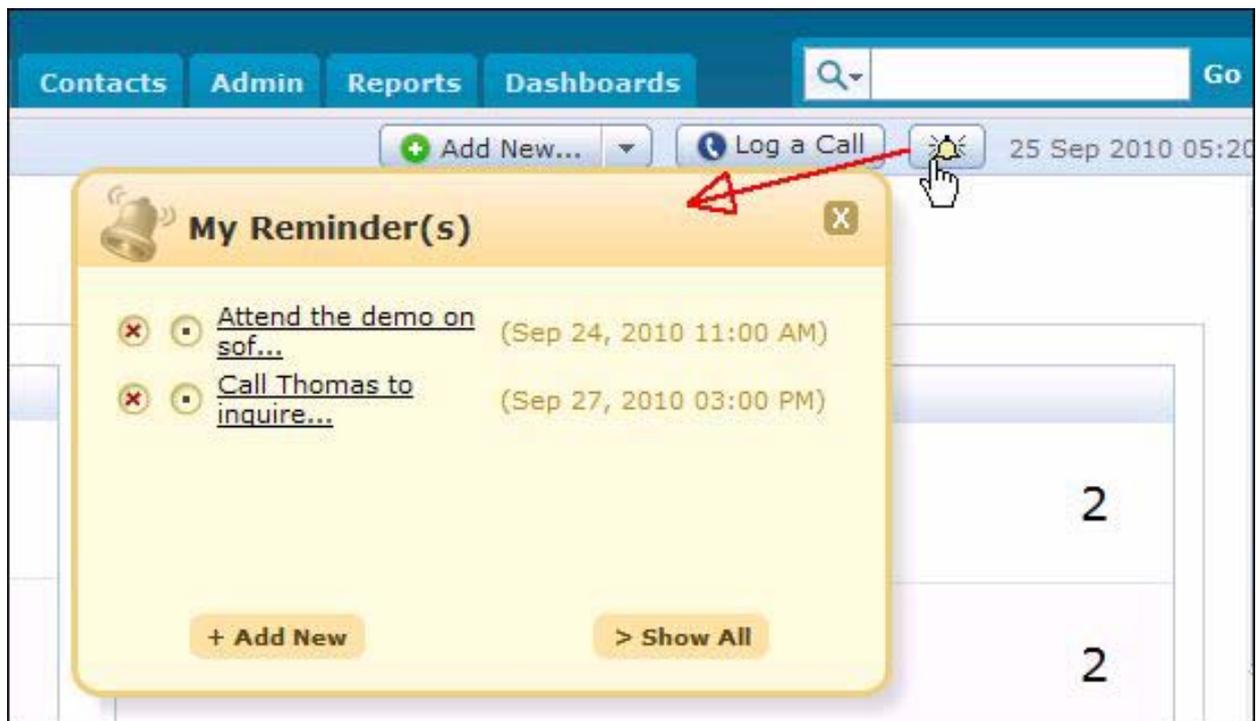


Search field

You can search for Requests, Accounts, Contacts, Solutions and System Log from the home page. If you wish to search for Zoho Corporations, then select Accounts from the drop down and enter the keyword as Zoho Corporations. Click **Go** to redirect the page to the Accounts list view page.

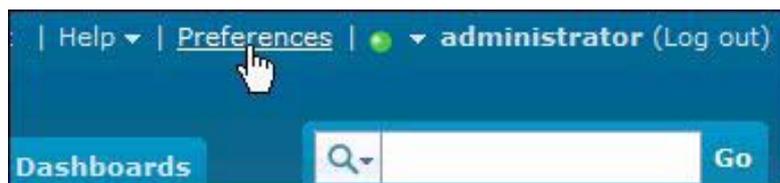
Reminders

Reminders is a substitute for those sticky notes or post-it notes which you use to remember your tasks for the day. Click here to know more.



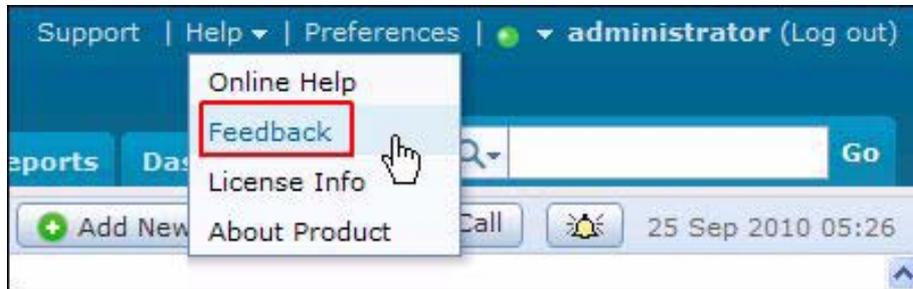
Preferences

You can change the language displayed in the application, customize your signature, change your password and lots more from the Preference link.



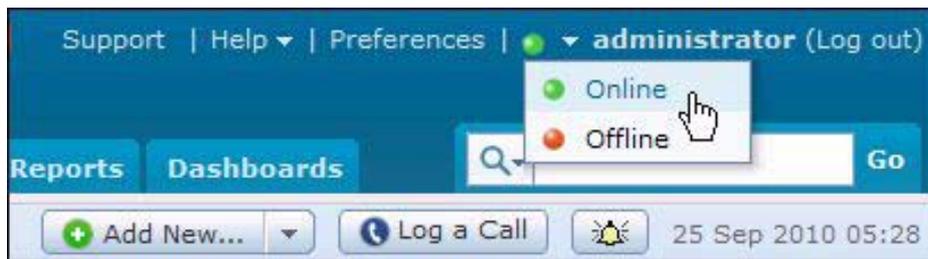
Feedback

Send a feedback immediately to our support rep from the application. Click here to know how to go about sending it.



Online Status

You can select your online status to be shown to other technicians. By default, the status is **Online**. You can change the online status either from the Home page or from Settings in the Admin module.



License Expiry Alert

The license expiry alert is displayed just below the header tabs with details such as the number of days the license is valid, the date by which the license has to be renewed, sales contact email id, link to apply license and a drop down box to select the number of days after which the reminder is to be displayed.



Select the number of days after which you want the reminder to be displayed. Click **Ok**. The license expiry alert disappears and will be displayed again after the specified time frame.

If you want the reminder to be available each time you login, click on **Hide** link to temporarily hide the alert. If you have a license and want to apply it, select click here to apply link. The **License Info** page opens. To apply the license, refer Registering SupportCenter Plus.

Dashboard

The dashboard of SupportCenter Plus login home displays the following tabs,

- My View
- Support Team

My View

My View for a support rep, displays information on summary of the requests assigned to the logged in user, Tasks assigned to the logged in user and the Announcements published company wide.

Requests Summary

- **Request Overdue** - number of requests assigned to the logged in support rep that are overdue.
- **Requests Due Today** - number of requests assigned to the logged in support rep for that day.
- **Pending Requests** - number of requests assigned to the logged in support rep that are unresolved.

Clicking on each link opens the corresponding list view.

The screenshot shows the 'My View' tab selected in the dashboard. Below the tabs, there is a 'Requests Summary' section. It contains three rows of data:

Icon	Request Type	Count
	Requests Overdue Over due requests	10
	Requests Due Today Requests due to be completed today	6
	Pending Requests Pending requests	15

Requests approaching SLA Violation

The number of requests assigned to the logged in support rep that is approaching SLA violation are listed along with the time frame.

Requests approaching SLA Violation		SLA violates in next
 7137 - Unable to restore the bac... Business Unit: General Assigned To: administrator		26mins
 7138 - Unable to restore the bac... Business Unit: General Assigned To: administrator		27mins
 7139 - Unable to restore the bac... Business Unit: General Assigned To: administrator		27mins
 7140 - Unable to restore the bac... Business Unit: General Assigned To: administrator		27mins

Requests approaching SLA Violation (First Response)

The number of requests assigned to the logged in support rep that is approaching first response time SLA violation are listed along with the time frame.

Requests approaching SLA Violation (First Response)		SLA violates in next
 7137 - Unable to restore the bac... Business Unit: General Assigned To: administrator		7mins

Support Team

This tab lists all the support reps with login permissions. If the support rep is logged in to the application, then the login status would be **Online** else the login status shows **Offline**. The log in status of the support rep is shown based on the **Online Status** settings in Admin module.

For the contact to view the support teams availability information, **People** option in Settings under the Admin module should be enabled. Else the Support Team tab will not be available.

Home - Dashboard

My View Global View Support Team

 <p>administrator Phone : 1234455 Email : Online Status : ● - Online Change Image</p>	 <p>George Mallory Phone : 983 788 3471 Email : george@acme.com Online Status : ● - Online Change Image</p>
 <p>Jake Thomas Phone : 925-852-2564 Email : jake@acme.com Online Status : ● - Online Change Image</p>	 <p>Marc Anthony Phone : 925-852-2588 Email : marc@acme.com Online Status : ● - Online Change Image</p>
 <p>Henry William Phone : 925-852-2645 Email : henry@acme.com Online Status : ● - Offline Change Image</p>	 <p>John Mathew Phone : 925-852-2592 Email : john@acme.com Online Status : ● - Offline Change Image</p>

Log a Call

Log a Call is an instant mode to create new requests or view existing requests when you are on a call with the customer. With log a call option, support reps can conduct a search for existing **Customers/Accounts** on entering the contact name, account name, phone and mobile number, job title and contract name. Also, if the contact is a first time caller, then you can enter the contact and request details using **log a call for the new user**. Click **Log a Call** button to access this option.

- Search existing customers and log a call
- Log a call for new users

Search existing customers and log a call

When a call is from a known customer whose details are entered in the application, then you can conduct a quick search using the parameters like contact name, account name, phone and mobile number, job title and contract name.

Log a Call

Search existing customers and log a call

Find by: Contact Name, Account name, Contract Name, Phone, Mobile, Email, Job Title

Search results for 'Acme'

Contacts

ID: 301 Sharon Harper
 Engineer - Acme
 Phone: 984-763-7432 | Email: sharon@acme.com - [Add Request](#) - [View Requests](#)

Accounts

ID: 301 - Acme
 Manufacturing - 41
 Phone: 983642742 | Email: info@acme.com - [Add Request](#) - [View Requests](#)

The result displays the contacts and accounts. Here in the image, Acme is the account and Sharon Harper is the contact associated to the account. So on conducting a search with the account name, the account and the contacts associated to the account appears.

You can add new requests by clicking **Add Request** link. A new request form pops up, in which the contact name, contact details and account information are pre-filled with the corresponding values. All you need to do is enter the **Request Title** and **Description**. If you require additional details to be entered such as category, priority or assign a support rep, click **Add More Details** link. This takes you to the New Request form.

Note

If you have selected the **Add Request** link under "Search results for Accounts", the contact name and contact details fields are not pre-filled and should be manually entered by the support rep.

Apart from raising a request for a customer on call, certain contacts call to the support team to inquire updated on their ticket. With **View Request** link, you can check all the requests raised by the Contact or for the Account. The requests can be viewed based on filters, so you will be aware of all the open and pending requests.

Log a call for new users

If the contact is a first time caller, you can enter the contact name, contact details and the request details using **Log a call for new users** option. The contact name, contact details and the account mentioned in form are automatically updated in the Contacts and Accounts tab. If you require additional details to be entered such as category, priority or assign a support rep, click **Add More Details** link. This takes you to the New Request form. Click **Save** to save the request.

My Tasks

You can track tasks assigned to you from **My Task** block in the home page. The tasks can be added by you as a personal reminder of the due by tasks or it can be assigned to you by other support reps.

From this block you can also add tasks to other support reps. On adding the task to other support reps, the task will be listed in their home page and the support rep can view the task on logging in to the application.

You can also add task for Requests, Contract, Accounts and Contract from the respective module. Say, for instance, if a ticket raised requires multiple support reps to work, then separate tasks can be assigned to the support rep. Also, if users under an account require logins, then the task can be assigned to the account.



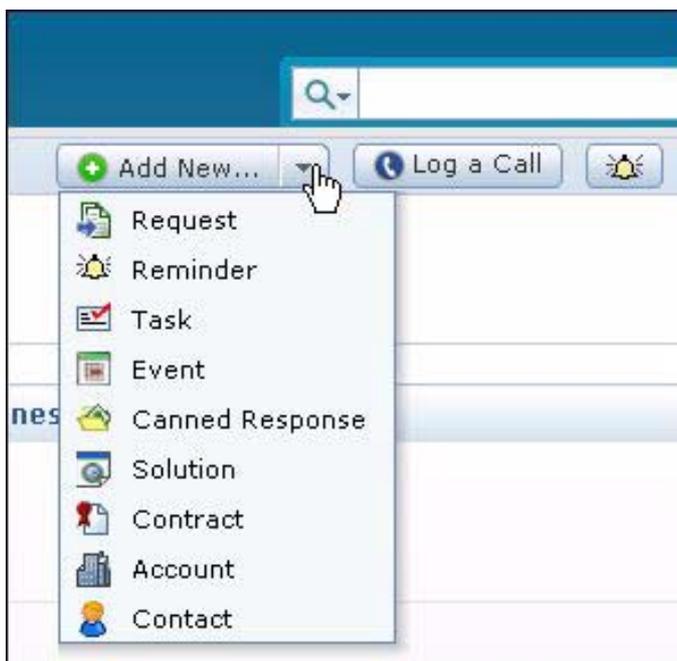
Note

1. My Task views the tasks assigned to the logged in support rep.
2. You can track all the task assigned to you by other support reps.
3. You can add personal tasks as a reminder of the due by task.
4. You can assign tasks to other support reps.

Add New Task

You can add a new task either from **My Tasks** block, **Add New** drop down or from the **Activities** tab.

1. From **My Tasks** block in the home page, select Add New  button. **[OR]** Alternatively, you can also add a task from **Add New** drop down in the home page.



2. In the New Task form, specify the **Title** of the task. The Title is a mandatory field.

3. If the task is associated to a request, account, contact or contract, then select the same from the **Associate to** drop down. Also, you can associated it to a specific request, account, contact or contract using the search icon . **Note:** If you are adding the task from the Request, Account, Contact or Contract details page, then the **Associate to** option is selected automatically.
4. Select the **Start Date** of the task from the calendar icon . Also, select the **Start Time** from the drop down.
5. Select the **Due Date** of the task from the calendar icon . Also, select the **Due Time** from the drop down.
6. For repetitive tasks, select the duration as daily, weekly, monthly or yearly from **Repeat Task** drop down. Select the interval within which the task should be repeated from the **Repeat Every** drop down. If the event has an end date, select the date using the calendar icon . Else, enter the number of times after which the event ends in the text field.
7. If the task is non-repetitive, select **Never** from **Repeat Every** drop down.
8. To assign the task, select the support rep from **Assign to** drop down. Next, select the **Priority** and **Status** of the task from the respective drop down.
9. Enter the content of the task in the **Description** field.
10. You can be reminded of the task by selecting the number of days/hours from **Remind me before** drop down. You will be reminded of the task based on the schedule start time.
11. Click **Add**. The task is added and listed with the already existing tasks in ascending order based on date and time.

If you have enabled "**Send Email when a task is assigned to a support rep**" under Notification Rules, then an email notification is sent to the support rep assigned to the task as shown below,

```

Dear Jake Thomas,

Task details are
Title : Assign Logins to contacts
Associated to : Request
Start date :11-Nov-2010 11:00
Due by date : 13-Dec-2010 19:00
Created By : administrator
Description : Assign logins to the contact - Sharon Harper

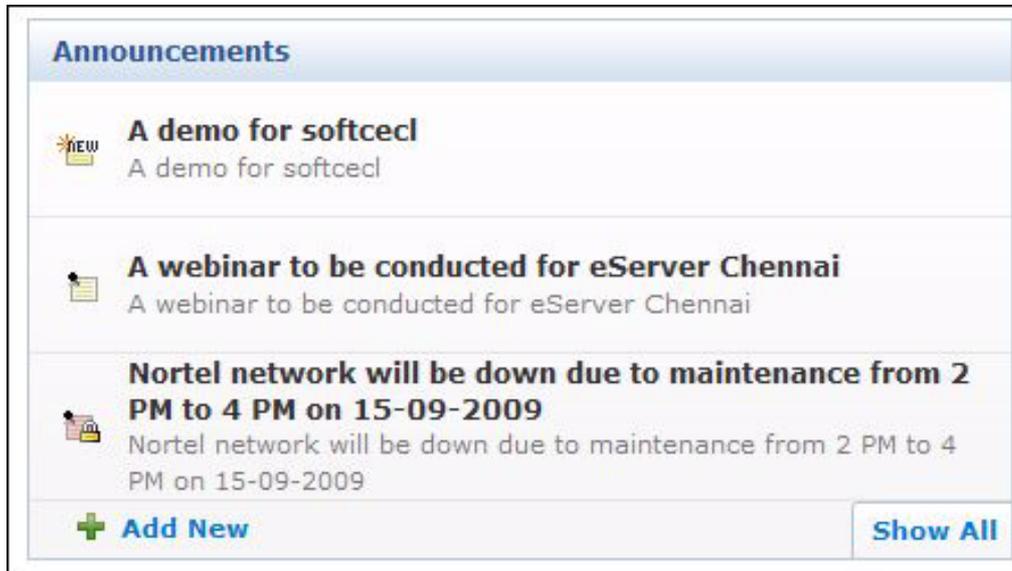
Click for details : http://localhost:8080/Activity.do?mod=viewTask&activityId=2
Regards
administrator

```

Clicking on the link in the email leads to the SupportCenter Plus login page, where on entering the login credentials, the support rep can get started with the task. To know more on the operations performed on Tasks, refer the Activities.

Publishing Announcements

You can publish announcements as public (to all contacts) or only to the support reps. The announcement board is available in the login home where the recent announcements is displayed.



The icons beside the announcements in the home page depicts whether the announcement is public, private or a new announcement.

-  Announcement made public i.e., announcements visible to all contacts on log in.
-  Announcements published only to support reps.
-  Newly added announcement which is published only to support reps.
-  Newly added company wide announcements.

Add New Announcement

To add a new announcement,

1. From the announcement block in the home page, click on **Add New** button.
2. Specify the **Announcement Title**. This can be a short statement describing the announcement. It is a mandatory field.
3. Enter the detailed content of the announcement in **Announcement Content** field. Say, if there is a webinar conducted for eServer from 4 PM to 6 PM on the 26-09-2009 at Conference Room II, then the Announcement title can be "Webinar conducted for eServer" and the details like the date and venue can be specified as the Announcement Content.
4. Select the **To** date from the  calendar icon. You can also select the Time for the selected date from this calendar icon. By default, **From** contains the date and

time when the announcement was created. **Note:** To show the announcement forever, leave the To field blank.

- To publish this announcement only to the support reps, select **Show this announcement only to Support reps** check box. The announcement will not be visible to the contacts.
- You can also send the announcement as email to support reps or contacts on selecting the check box beside **Send this announcement as email**. Enter the **To** mail address. If you wish to send the same information to more than one person, enter the email Ids of those people in the **CC** field separated by comma. If you do not wish to disclose the recipients of the information, enter the email ids of those people in **BCC** field separated by comma. The announcement is sent as email to the concern people and the announcement is added as Public in the home page.
- Click **Save**.

The announcement is added and a pop up window appears displaying the announcement details. From this window, you can **Edit**, **Delete** and navigate **Previous** and **Next** to other announcements. Using this navigation options you can view the announcements without closing the pop up window.

Manage Announcements

To view all the announcements added in the application,

- From the announcement block in the home page, click on **Show All** button. The **Manage Announcements** page opens as show,

The screenshot shows the 'Manage Announcements' interface. At the top, there's a breadcrumb 'Home > Manage Announcements' and a title 'Manage Announcements'. Below the title, there's a 'Filter Showing' dropdown menu currently set to 'All', with a sub-menu open showing options: 'All', 'Currently Showing', 'To be shown', and 'Already Shown'. To the right of the filter, it says 'Showing 1- 8 of 8' with navigation arrows and 'Show 8 per page'. Below this is a 'New Announce' button. The main content is a table with columns: Title, Shown To, Date From, and Date To. The table contains several rows of announcements, each with a checkbox and a link icon in the Title column.

	Title	Shown To	Date From	Date To
<input type="checkbox"/>	A webinar to be conducted for eServer Chennai	Everyone	Sep 14, 2009 03:20 PM	View forever
<input type="checkbox"/>	Acme helpdesk upgrade	Everyone	Sep 14, 2009 03:00 PM	Sep 15, 2009 03:00 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nortel network will be down due to maintenance fro...	Everyone	Sep 14, 2009 02:53 PM	Sep 24, 2009 02:54 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	A webinar to be conducted for eServer Chennai	Support Rep	Sep 14, 2009 11:41 AM	View forever
<input type="checkbox"/>	A demo for softcecl	Everyone	Sep 14, 2009 11:33 AM	Sep 29, 2009 11:33 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	A webinar to be conducted for eServer Chennai	Everyone	Sep 9, 2009 02:34 PM	Sep 16, 2009 02:34 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nortel network will be down due to maintenance fro...	Support Rep	Sep 9, 2009 02:32 PM	Sep 22, 2009 02:33 PM
<input type="checkbox"/>	A demo for softcecl	Support Rep	Sep 1, 2009 02:35 PM	Sep 10, 2009 02:36 PM

- By default, all the announcements are shown. You can select the announcements to displayed in the column view from **Filtering Showing** combo box. You can view announcements that is **Currently Shown** or announcements that is **To be shown** in the home page or announcement that is **Already displayed**.

Note	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From this page, you can add a new announcement, edit a announcement and bulk delete announcements. 2. To view the details of a announcement click on the title of the announcement either from the announcement block or from manage announcements page. 3. Contacts can view only the current announcements.
-------------	--

Edit an Announcement

You can edit an announcement either from the manage announcements page or while viewing the announcement detail. To edit an announcement from the announcement pop up,

1. Select the **Title** of the announcement you wish to edit from Manage Announcements page. The details of the announcement opens in a pop up window.
2. Click on **Edit** button.
3. From the edit announcement pop up, make the changes and click **Save**. If you do not want to make any changes, click **Cancel**.

Deleting Announcements

To delete a announcement,

1. From the home page, click on the **Title** of the announcement to be deleted. The announcement details page pop ups.
2. Click on **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed with the delete operation. The announcement is deleted from the list.

Alternatively for bulk deletion of announcements,

1. From the home page, click on **Show All** button in the announcement block. The Manage Announcement page opens.
2. Select the announcement to be deleted by enabling the check boxes.
3. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog box appears.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The announcement is deleted from the list.

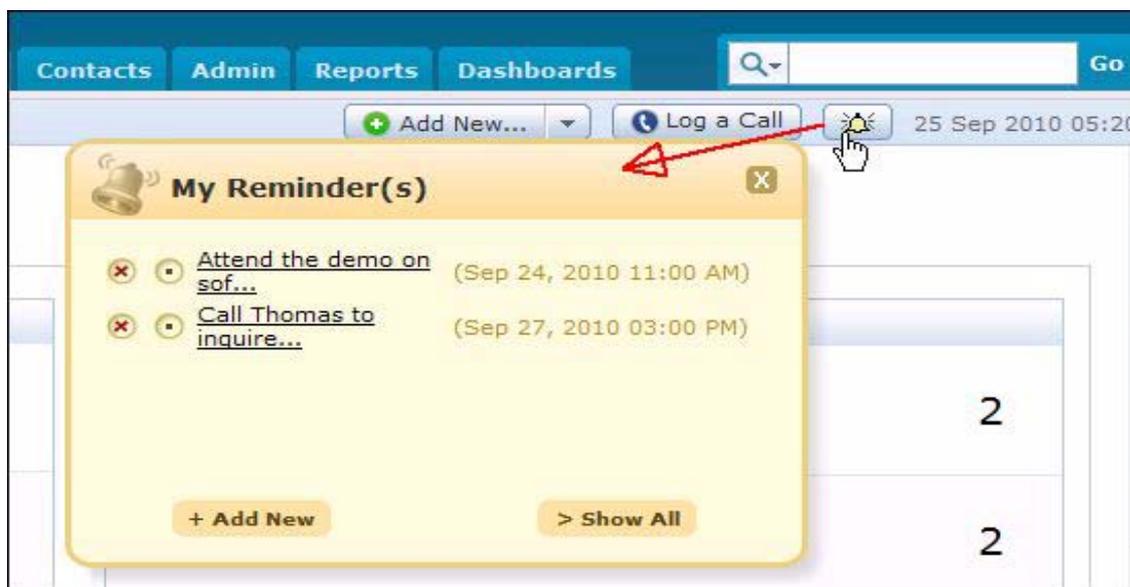
Reminders

Reminders is a substitute for those sticky notes or post-it notes which you use to remember your tasks for the day. You can also add reminders from the Request module to close certain requests or the pending tasks specified for a request can be added as a reminder.

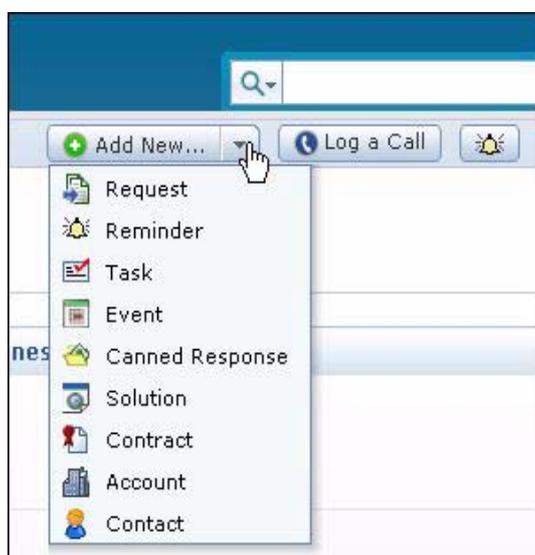
Add New Reminder

To add new tasks to your reminders list,

1. Click on **Reminders** link to open My Reminders pop up.



Alternatively, you can reminders from **Add New** drop down list in the home page.



- Click **+Add New** link from My Reminder pop up. The Reminders page opens as shown,

- Specify the summary in the provided text field. Say, you want a reminder to attend a demo on Softcel.
- Select the **Date** and **Time** for the reminder. The date field is set to today's date and the time is set by default as 11:00 AM. Change the date and time settings. To change the **date**, select the calendar icon and choose the date of your choice. From the time drop down box, choose the time at which the task is scheduled.
- Select the reminder duration say before 1 hr or 2 hr from the **Remind me before** combo box. By default the message would be **Never**.
- Click **Add**. The new reminder is added along with the list of already existing reminders in the ascending order based on date and time.

Viewing all Reminders

You can view all the open and completed reminders along with the reminder details such as Reminder Date and Module. The Link is specified only if the reminder is added from the request module.

- Click on **Reminders** link.
- From My Reminders pop up, select **>Show All** link. By default, you can view All the reminders from this page.
- If you wish to view all the open reminders alone then select **Open** option from **Showing** drop down box.

Reminder Summary	Reminder Date	Module	Link
<input type="checkbox"/> Call Andrew to inquire on the webinar	Sep 10, 2009 03:00 PM	General	
<input type="checkbox"/> Attend the demo on softcel	Sep 11, 2009 01:00 PM	General	
<input type="checkbox"/> RequestID : 11 Subject : daily check on server Business Unit : General Contact : preethi	Sep 14, 2009 11:00 AM	Request	Request Id : 11

Note

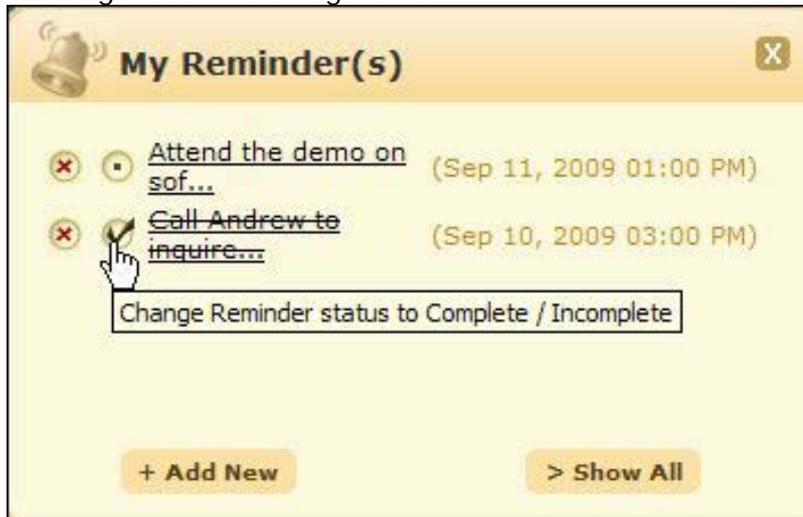


- From this page, you can **Add New Reminder**, **Delete** bulk reminders and **Change the status** of a reminder.
- If a reminder is added from the request module then a link to the request with its request Id is provided from this page.
- You can show your reminders to Contacts on enabling the option under **Setting** in the Admin module.

Change the Reminder status

Once you have completed the task, you can change the reminder state to complete.

1. Click on Reminders link to open My Reminders pop up.
2. Select the radio button beside the completed task. The strike off task will be arranged in descending order.



Alternatively,

1. Click on **Reminders** link.
2. From My Reminders pop up, select **>Show All** link. By default, you can view All the reminders from this page.
3. Select the check box beside the Reminder Summary for which you wish to change the state.
4. Select the state from **Change Reminder State To** drop down list. Select **Complete**.
5. Click on **Change** button. To indicate the change, the task is striked off.

Deleting Reminders

To delete a reminder,

1. Click on **Reminders** link to open My Reminders pop up.
2. Select **Delete** radio button beside the reminders you wish to delete. The reminder is deleted from the list.

To delete bulk reminders,

1. Click on **Reminders** link.
2. From My Reminders pop up, select **>Show All** link. By default, you can view All the reminders from this page.
3. Select the check box beside the Reminder Summary you wish to delete.
4. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation message appears on delete operation appears.
5. Click **Ok** to proceed. The reminder is deleted from the list.

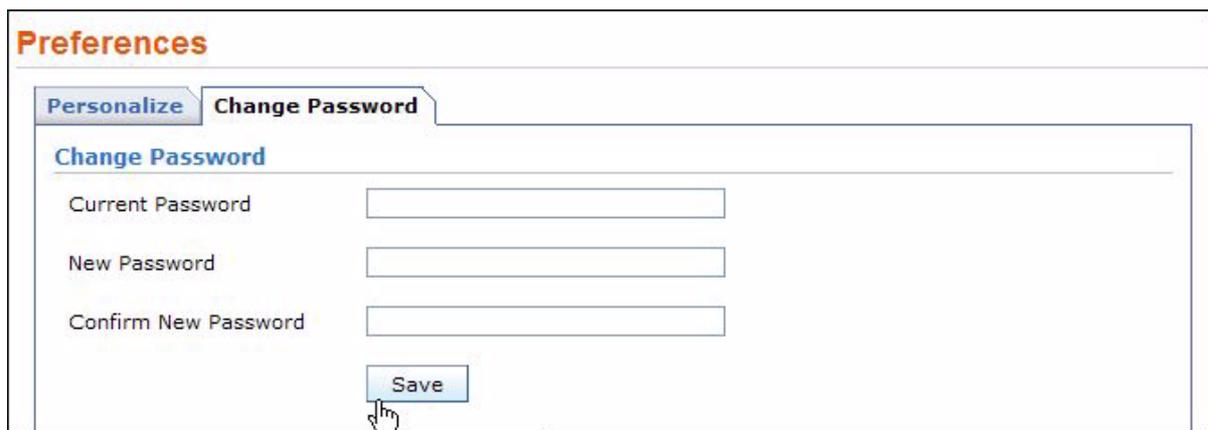
The advantage of moving the task to completed state instead of deleting is that, you can revert the state of the task to Open and edit the attributes. But once the task is deleted, it is completely removed from the application and cannot be retrieved.

- **Display Language** You can select the language to be displayed in the application from **Choose Language** drop down list. say, French. All the data in the application will be displayed in French.
- **Time Zone** You can also customize the time zone according to the site where the server is installed. The date and time will be set with respect to the time zone.
- **Date/Time Format** Select the format of the date such as, 2009.09.10, from the **Set Date Format** drop down box. Similarly, you can also set the time format from the **Set Time Format** drop down box. The selected date and time format will be displayed where ever the date/time is mentioned. Say, while creating a new request, the request created on and due by time will be displayed in the selected date and time format. The date and time is set accordingly to the selected time zone.
- **Email Signature** You can personalize your signature while replying to mails on entering your signature in the text provided. Click **Save**.

Change Password

To change your password,

1. Click on **Change Password** tab.



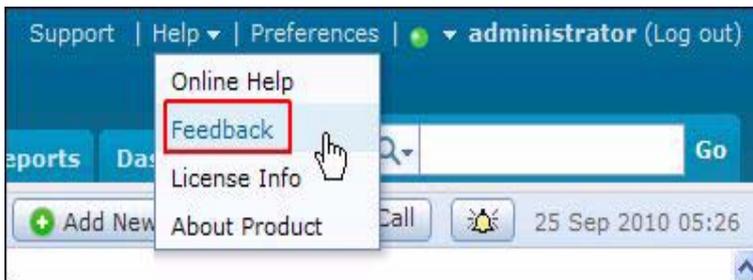
The screenshot shows the 'Change Password' form. It has a title bar 'Preferences' with two tabs: 'Personalize' and 'Change Password'. The 'Change Password' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'Change Password' with three input fields: 'Current Password', 'New Password', and 'Confirm New Password'. A 'Save' button is located below the input fields, with a mouse cursor pointing to it.

2. Enter the **Current Password** in the field.
3. Next, enter your **New Password**.
4. Re-enter the new password in **Confirm New Password** field.
5. Click **Save**. Your login password has been changed and will be taken into effect when u log out and log into the application.

Feedback

You can send a feedback regarding the product instantly to our support team. To send a feedback,

1. Click on **Help** link. Select **Feedback** from the list of options.



2. In the Feedback pop up, the **To** address is our support mail id and is in non-editable format.
3. Specify **Your Name**, **Your Email Id**, the **Subject** and **Message** mail content in the respective fields.
4. Click on **Submit** button.

Activities

The Activities tab comprises of the list of Events conducted in the organization and the Tasks assigned to the support reps. Events are considered as the team meetings, conference, seminars or product launch that takes place in the organization. The Event and Task can be associated to a request, contract, account or contact. Say for instance, if the Event is a team meeting to discuss an issue over the Acme account or a Task assigned to a support rep to change the printer toner.

In this Activities section, we will be referring Tasks and Events as Activities.

Activities List View

The activities list view page organises and displays all the events and tasks configured in SupportCenter Plus. The following functionality can be performed from the activities list view,

- option to view the events and tasks based on filters.
- customize columns to be displayed in the list view.
- set the number of tasks or events to be displayed per page.
- search for tasks or events using the search icon.

On clicking the Activities tab in the header pane, the page redirects to the activities list view page. This page consists of two sub tabs - **Tasks** sub tab and **Events** sub tab. Clicking on Tasks sub tab, lists the tasks list view page, while clicking on Events sub tab lists the events list view page.

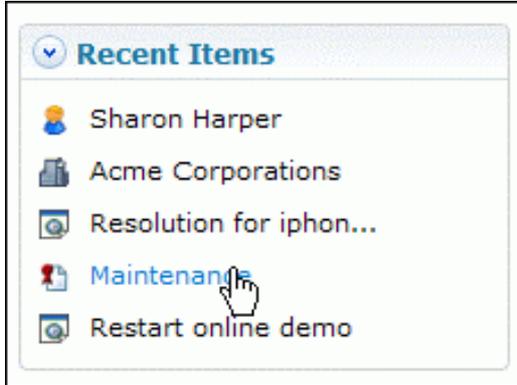
<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Associated to	Assigned to	Created by	Start Date	Due Date	Priority
<input type="checkbox"/>	Assign Logins to contacts	-	administrator	administrator	Oct 27, 2010 05:30 PM	Nov 27, 2010 06:00 PM	Medium
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Oct 27, 2010 05:30 PM	Nov 27, 2010 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Jan 28, 2011 05:30 PM	Feb 25, 2011 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	May 1, 2011 05:30 PM	May 23, 2011 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Aug 2, 2011 05:30 PM	Aug 24, 2011 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Nov 3, 2011 05:30 PM	Nov 25, 2011 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Feb 1, 2012 05:30 PM	Feb 23, 2012 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Apr 25, 2012 05:30 PM	May 17, 2012 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Jul 24, 2012 05:30 PM	Aug 18, 2012 10:00 AM	High
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change the printer Toner	Request	administrator	administrator	Oct 25, 2012 05:30 PM	Nov 19, 2012 10:00 AM	High

From the List View page, you can:

1. **Views:** The pre-defined filters provide a quick consolidated view of the tasks and events configured in the application.

- Views**
- Tasks**
- » Tasks Today
- » Pending Tasks
- » Overdue Tasks
- » Completed Tasks
- » All Tasks
- » My Tasks
- Events**
- » All Events
- » Events Today
- » Upcoming Events
- » My Events

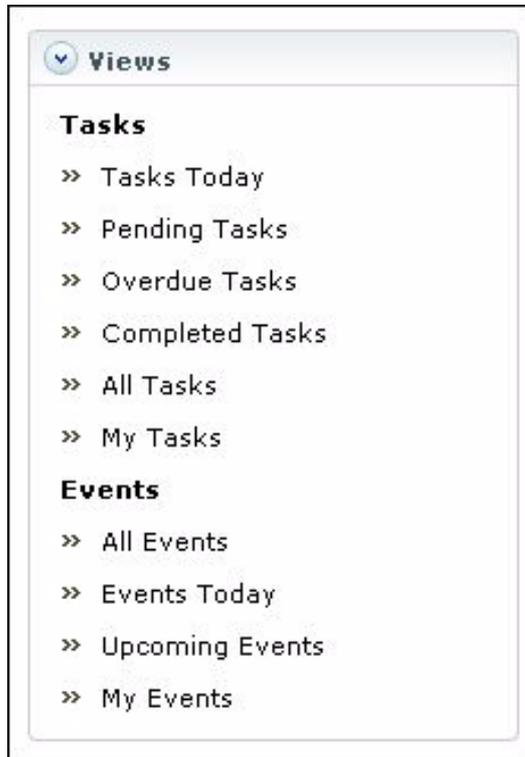
2. **Set the number of requests per page and navigation buttons:** You can set the number of tasks and events to be displayed in the list view page.
3. **Recent Items:** All the recent items viewed by you is displayed under the Recent Items block. You can also navigate back to the pages on clicking on the item link.



4. **New Tasks:** Creating New Tasks.
5. **New Events:** Creating New Events.
6. **Bulk Operations - Delete:** Delete bulk tasks and events from the list view.

Viewing Activities based on Filters

Through the pre-defined filters in the Activities Tab, you can have a quick and consolidated view of the tasks and events configured in the application. The of the pre-defined filters are as shown below,



Tasks

- **Tasks Today:** Lists all the tasks assigned to the logged in support rep that is due on that day.
- **Pending Tasks:** Lists all the unfinished and incomplete tasks assigned to the logged in support rep.
- **Overdue Tasks:** Lists all the tasks assigned to the logged in support rep that has exceeded the due date.
- **Completed Tasks:** Lists all the tasks assigned to the logged in support rep which are completed and closed.
- **All Tasks:** Lists all the tasks, irrespective of status, configured in the application.
- **My Tasks:** Lists the tasks assigned to the logged in support rep, irrespective of the status.

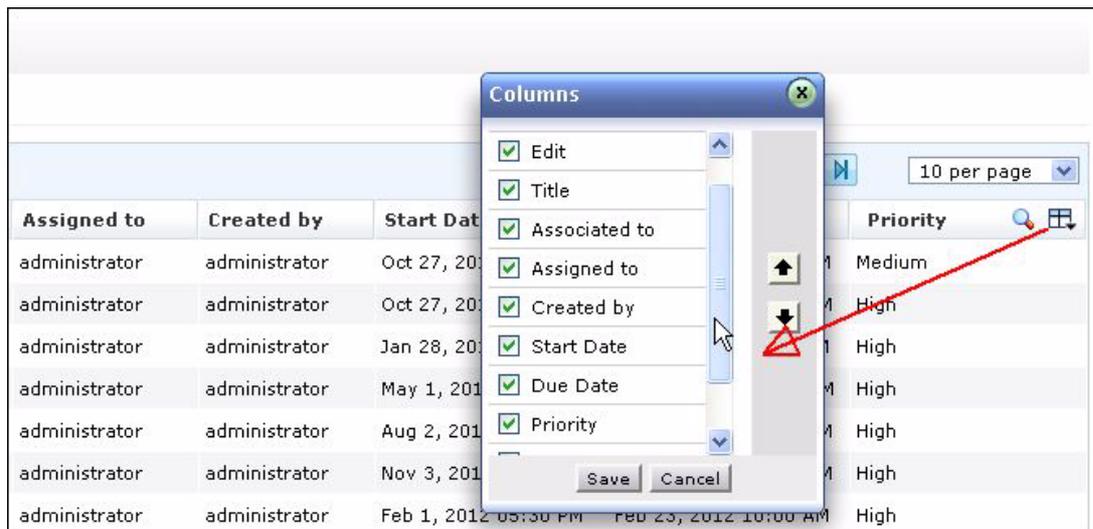
Events

- **All Events:** Lists all the events configured in the application.
- **Events Today:** Lists all the events that are to be held on that day.
- **Upcoming Events:** Lists all the upcoming events in the organization.
- **My Events:** Lists all the events created by the logged in support rep.

Customizing Activities List View

You can customize the Activities List View to display columns of your choice. To customize columns displayed in the list view,

1. Click the **Activities** tab in the header pane.
2. From the List View, click on **Column Chooser** icon . The **Columns** widget pops up listing the parameters that can be displayed in the list view. The columns that are currently visible in the list view is indicated with selected check box.



3. To remove a column, de-select the check box and click Save.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the check box beside the column you wish to add. Click Save.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**. Only the selected columns are added in the activities list view.

Searching Tasks and Events

You can also perform a column-wise search of tasks and events based on the parameters listed in the List view.

To perform a column-wise search,

1. Click on **Activities** tab in the header pane.
2. From the List View page, click on **Search** icon . The search field opens just below every column that is visible in the list view.
3. Enter the search string in the column of your choice. You can enter keywords in more than one column to perform a combined column search.
4. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.

All Events

New Event Delete 1 - 6 of 6 10 per page

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Created on	Created by	Start Date	End Date	Location
	<input type="text" value="Team Meeting"/>		<input type="text"/>			<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Conference Meeting	Oct 30, 2010 10:52 AM	administrator	Oct 30, 2010 11:30 AM	Nov 11, 2010 06:00 PM	Hall
<input type="checkbox"/>	Conference Meeting	Oct 30, 2010 10:52 AM	administrator	Oct 30, 2010 11:30 AM	Nov 11, 2010 06:00 PM	Hall
<input type="checkbox"/>	Conference Meeting	Oct 30, 2010 10:52 AM	administrator	Oct 30, 2010 11:30 AM	Nov 11, 2010 06:00 PM	Hall
<input type="checkbox"/>	Conference Meeting	Oct 30, 2010 10:52 AM	administrator	Oct 30, 2010 11:30 AM	Nov 11, 2010 06:00 PM	Hall
<input type="checkbox"/>	Conference Meeting	Oct 30, 2010 10:52 AM	administrator	Oct 30, 2010 11:30 AM	Nov 11, 2010 06:00 PM	Hall
<input type="checkbox"/>	Team Meeting	Nov 1, 2010 12:41 PM	administrator	Nov 1, 2010 04:00 PM	Nov 1, 2010 07:00 PM	conference hall

Note



1. The search would return the results for any of the text fields of the tasks and events.
2. You cannot search for tasks and events based on any of the date fields.

Adding New Tasks

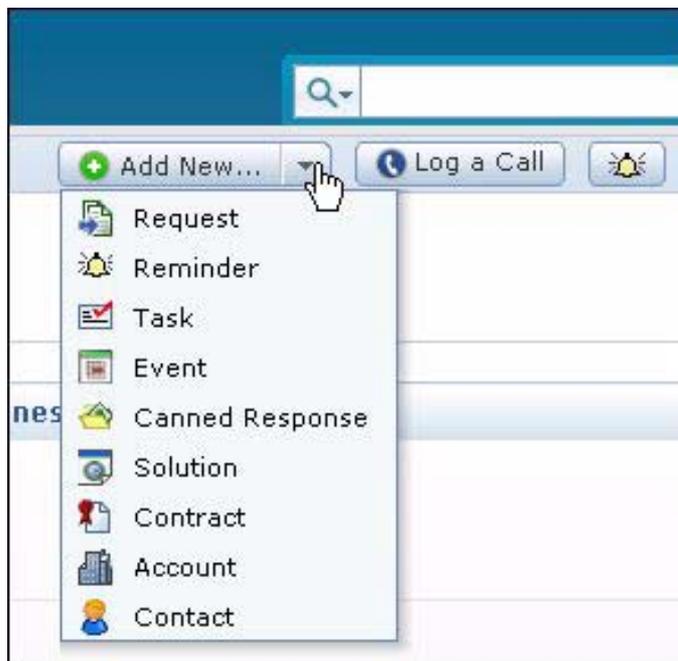
You can add new tasks and associate it to a Request, Account, Contact or Contract from this module. The tasks added by you can be a personal reminder of the due by tasks or you can add tasks to other support reps. Say, if a request involves multi technician work, then different tasks are created and assigned to the technicians, and each of these tasks are associated to the request.

There are two ways through which Tasks can be created in the application,

- a. Add New..drop down
- b. Activities Tab

Adding Tasks from Add New..drop down

The Add New..drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Task form from the home page.



To know how to add a new Task, go to Step 4 in Adding Tasks from Activities Tab.

Adding Tasks from Activities Tab

1. Click the **Activities** tab in the header pane. The Activities Tab comprises of the **Tasks** and **Events** sub tabs.
2. Select the **Tasks** sub tab. The list of tasks assigned to the logged in support rep that is due for that day is listed.
3. Click **New Task** button.
4. In the New Task form, specify the **Title** of the task. The Title is a mandatory field.
5. If the task is associated to a request, account, contact or contract, then select the same from the **Associate to** drop down. Also, you can associated it to a specific

request, account, contact or contract using the search icon . **Note:** If you are adding the task from the Request, Account, Contact or Contract details page, then the **Associate to** option is selected automatically.

6. Select the **Start Date** of the task from the calendar icon . Also, select the **Start Time** from the drop down.
7. Select the **Due Date** of the task from the calendar icon . Also, select the **Due Time** from the drop down.
8. For repetitive tasks, select the duration as daily, weekly, monthly or yearly from **Repeat Task** drop down. Select the interval within which the task should be repeated from the **Repeat Every** drop down. If the event has an end date, select the date using the calendar icon . Else, enter the number of times after which the event ends in the text field.
9. If the task is non-repetitive, select **Never** from **Repeat Every** drop down.
10. To assign the task, select the support rep from **Assign to** drop down. Next, select the **Priority** and **Status** of the task from the respective drop down.
11. Enter the content of the task in the **Description** field.
12. You can be reminded of the task by selecting the number of days/hours from **Remind me before** drop down. You will be reminded of the task based on the schedule start time.
13. Click **Add**. The task is added to the existing list.

If you have enabled "**Send Email when a task is assigned to a support rep**" under Notification Rules, then an email notification is sent to the support rep assigned to the task as shown below,

Dear Jake Thomas,

Task details are

Title : Assign Logins to contacts

Associated to : Request

Start date :11-Nov-2010 11:00

Due by date : 13-Dec-2010 19:00

Created By : administrator

Description : Assign logins to the contact - Sharon Harper

Click for details : <http://localhost:8080/Activity.do?mod=viewTask&activityId=2>

Regards

administrator

Clicking on the link in the email leads to the SupportCenter Plus login page, where on entering the login credentials, the support rep can get started with the task.

Viewing Tasks

The details of the task are organized logically in the Task details page. From the View Task page you can, alter any details in the task, mark the task as complete once the task is finished and also delete the unwanted tasks.

To view the details of an task,

1. Click the **Activities** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Title** link of the task to be viewed.

Task Details

The Task details block displays the Title of the task, the user to whom the task is assigned and the name of the user who has created the task along with the created date and time. This is followed by the remaining details that was filled while creating the task such as, the Start Date and Due Date of the task, Status, Description and the request, contract, account or contact to which the task is associated to.

Activities > My Tasks > View Task

View Task

[Edit](#) [Mark as completed](#) [Delete](#)

Assign Logins to contacts
Assigned to : Jake Thomas by : administrator on : Nov 10, 2010 01:02 PM

Status : **Not Started**
Priority : **High**

Task Details

Title	Assign Logins to contacts
Associated to	Request - Need login credentials to access SupportCenter Plus
Start Date	Nov 11, 2010 11:00 AM
Due Date	Dec 13, 2010 07:00 PM (Task does not repeat)
Status	Not Started Change
Description	Assign logins to the contact - Sharon Harper
Reminder	1 day before the task starts Edit Reminder

Comments

[Add comment](#)

Added by: Jake Thomas - Nov 10, 2010 01:04 PM [Delete](#)

Login details is assigned to the contact - Sharon Harper

You can set a personalized reminder for this task using the **Add Reminder** link. Select the number of days/hours before which the reminder should be sent using **Remind me before** drop down. You can choose to be prompted by **Email** or **SMS** or both. Click to set the reminder.

If you have specified a reminder while creating the task, then the same is displayed in the task details block. You can modify the number of days/hours before which the reminder should be sent using the **Edit Reminder** link.

Comments on the progress of the task can be entered by clicking the **Add Comments** link. Enter your comment in the text field and click **Add**. You can also delete a comment using the **Delete** link.

Changing the Status of the task

To change the status of the task click Change link beside Status. The four states of the task are, Not Started, In Progress, On Hold and Complete. Select the status and click



. You can also mark a task as complete by selecting **Mark as Completed** sub tab.

Creating New Events

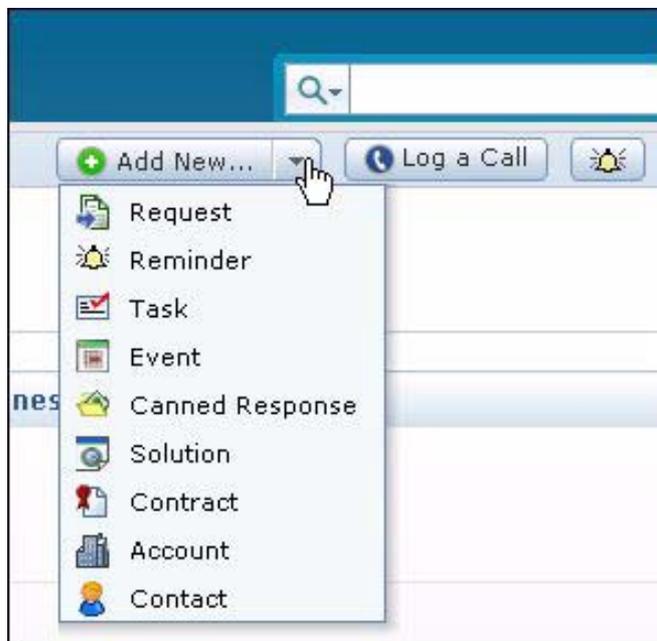
Events that take place in the organization such as team meetings, conference, seminars, product launch and so on, can be recorded and sent to the participants from the Activities Tab.

There are two ways through which Events can be created in the application,

- a. Add New.. drop down
- b. Activities Tab

Adding Events from Add New..drop down

The Add New..drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Event form from the home page.

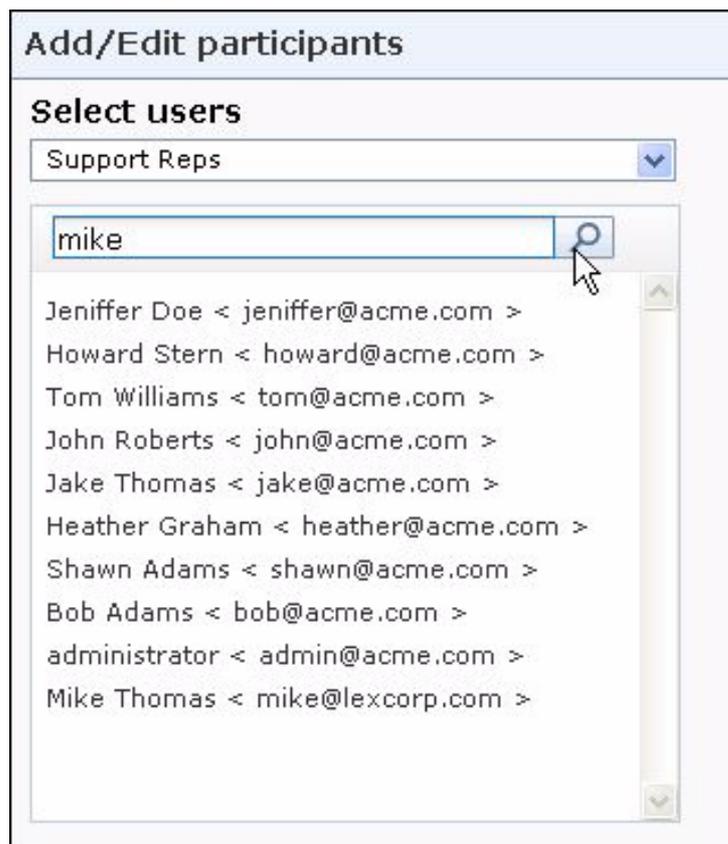


To know how to add a new event, go to Step 4 in Adding Events from Activities Tab.

Adding Events from Activities Tab

1. Click the **Activities** tab. The Activities Tab comprises of the **Tasks** and **Events** sub tabs.
2. Select the **Events** sub tab. The list of **All Events** is displayed.
3. Click **New Event** button.
4. In the New Event form, enter the **Title** of the event to be held. The Title is a mandatory field.
5. If the event is associated to a request, contract, account or contact, then select the same from the **Associate to** drop down. Also, you can associated it to a specific request, account, contact or contract using the search icon . **Note:** If you are adding the event from the Request, Account, Contact or Contract details page, then the **Associate to** option is selected automatically.

6. Select the date of commencement of the event and the end date using the calendar icon .
7. If the event is an all day event, enable the check box beside **All-day event**. Else, select the time duration of the event beside the Start date and End date drop down.
8. For repetitive event, select the duration as daily, weekly, monthly or yearly from **Repeat Task** drop down. Select the interval within which the task should be repeated from the **Repeat Every** drop down. If the event has an end date, select the date using the calendar icon . Else, enter the number of times after which the event ends in the text field.
9. If the task is non-repetitive, select **Never** from **Repeat Every** drop down.
10. Specify the location of the event in **Location** text field. Also, provide a brief **Description** of the event.
11. To select the Participants of the events, click **Add/Edit Participants** link. From the Add/Edit participants pop up, select the users i.e., Support Reps, Contacts and Account Managers from the drop down. The respective users configured in the application are listed. You can conduct a search for the participants by entering the search keyword text in the search field.



12. To move the participants to the **Selected List** block, select the user and click **>> Assign** button.

Select users

Support Reps

Jeniffer Doe < jeniffer@acme.com >
Howard Stern < howard@acme.com >
Tom Williams < tom@acme.com >
John Roberts < john@acme.com >
Jake Thomas < jake@acme.com >
Heather Graham < heather@acme.com >
Shawn Adams < shawn@acme.com >
Bob Adams < bob@acme.com >
administrator < admin@acme.com >
Mike Thomas < mike@lexcorp.com >

Selected List

Tom Williams < tom@acme.com >
John Roberts < john@acme.com >
Heather Graham < heather@acme.com >
Jeniffer Doe < jeniffer@acme.com >

13. If the Participants are not present in the users list, enter their **Email Address manually** in the text field provided. Multiple email addresses can be entered using comma as a separator. Click Add. The selected participants are listed in the Participants block of the new event form.
14. You can choose to send an email notification to all the participations by enabling the check box. Also, you have an option to notify yourself when all the participants respond to the invitation.
15. The event conducted can be made Private or Public. A Public event is visible to all the users whereas, a Private event is visible only to the selected participants and you.
16. You can set personalized reminders to prompt an email or sms for the event. To set a reminder, click **Add** and select the number of days/hours before which the reminder should be sent from **Remind me before** drop down. You can choose to be prompted by **Email** or **SMS** or both.
17. Click **Add**. The event is added to the existing list and an email notification is sent to the selected participants.

Viewing Events

The **View Event** page organizes the details of the event in a logical manner. You can view an event if you are a participant or if the event is made "Public". To view the details of an event,

1. Click the **Activities** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Title** link of the event to be viewed.

Event Details

The Event details block displays the Title of the event, privacy settings, name of the user who has created the event along with the created date and time. This is followed by the remaining details that was filled while creating the event such as, the Start Date and End Date of the event, Location, Description and the request, contract, account or contact to which the event is associated to.

Activities > All Events > View Event

View Event

[Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Team Meeting
 Private event
 Created By : administrator Created on : Nov 9, 2010 12:46 PM

Event Details

Title	Team Meeting
Associated to	Account - Acme
Start Date	Nov 1, 2010 04:00 PM
End Date	Nov 1, 2010 07:00 PM
Location	conference hall
Description	Team Meeting
Reminder	2 hours before the event starts Edit Reminder

Your Response

Will you attend ?
 Yes No Maybe

Post comment

If you wish to be reminded of this event, then you can set a personalized reminder using the Add Reminder link. Select the number of days/hours before which the reminder should be sent using **Remind me before** drop down. You can choose to be prompted by

Email or **SMS** or both. Click to set the reminder.

If you have specified a reminder while creating the event, then the same is displayed in the event details block. You can modify the number of days/hours before which the reminder should be sent using the **Edit Reminder** link.

Posting your response to the Invitation

If you are a participant of an event, then an invitation via email is sent as shown below,

Dear Jake Thomas

Event details are
 Title : Team Meeting
 Associated to : Account
 Start date :01-Nov-2010 16:00
 End date : 01-Nov-2010 19:00
 Location : conference hall
 Description : Team Meeting

Post your Response at : <http://localhost:8080/approval/EventResponse.jsp?action=responseForEvent&activityId=902&userId=603>

Regards
 administrator

This message template can be customized under Notification Rules -> Activities module -> "Notify participants by Email, when they are invited for an event".

To respond to the invitation, click on the link given in the email. You will be routed to a page displaying the event details. If you are sure to attend the event, click Yes radio button. If you are unsure of your participation, select Maybe. If you are unable to attend the meeting, select No radio button. Post your comments in the text as shown. Click Add. Your response will be saved. Click Close link to close the window.

Acme Inc Event - Your Response


Event Details

Title	Team Meeting
Associated to	Account
Start Time	Nov 1, 2010 04:00 PM
Location	conference hall
Description	Team Meeting

Will you attend ?

Yes
 Maybe
 No

Post comment

Yes will attend the meeting.

Note: Alternatively, if the participants are SupportCenter Plus users, then they can log into the application, select the event and respond to the invitation.

Recording Invited Participants

The Invited Participants block is visible to the user who has created the event. This block is to keep a track of the participants who **Will Attend** the event, **Not Attend** the event and those who **May Attend** the event. By default, the creator of the event is listed in the **Will Attend** sub tab. The participants who have not responded to the mail are listed in **Not Responded** sub tab. So with these tabs, you can keep a track of the participants attending the event.

Invited Participants

Will Attend (3)

Not Attend (8)

May Attend (8)

Not Responded (8)

Name	Comment
administrator	Attending
Jake Thomas	Will be attending the meeting
Bob Adams	Will be 10 mins late but will attend the meeting.

Requests

Helpdesk Support Reps receive requests from a variety of sources; email, phone calls, forums, web portal, from various regions across the globe. Tracking, prioritizing and resolving these requests can become a nightmare without a central point of reference for all requests.

Requests Module in ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus helps you to manage and track all the requests raised from your customer, their information and the support service offered to them. You can track all the overdue requests that requires immediate attention, thus improving the response time and resolution time of your support team.

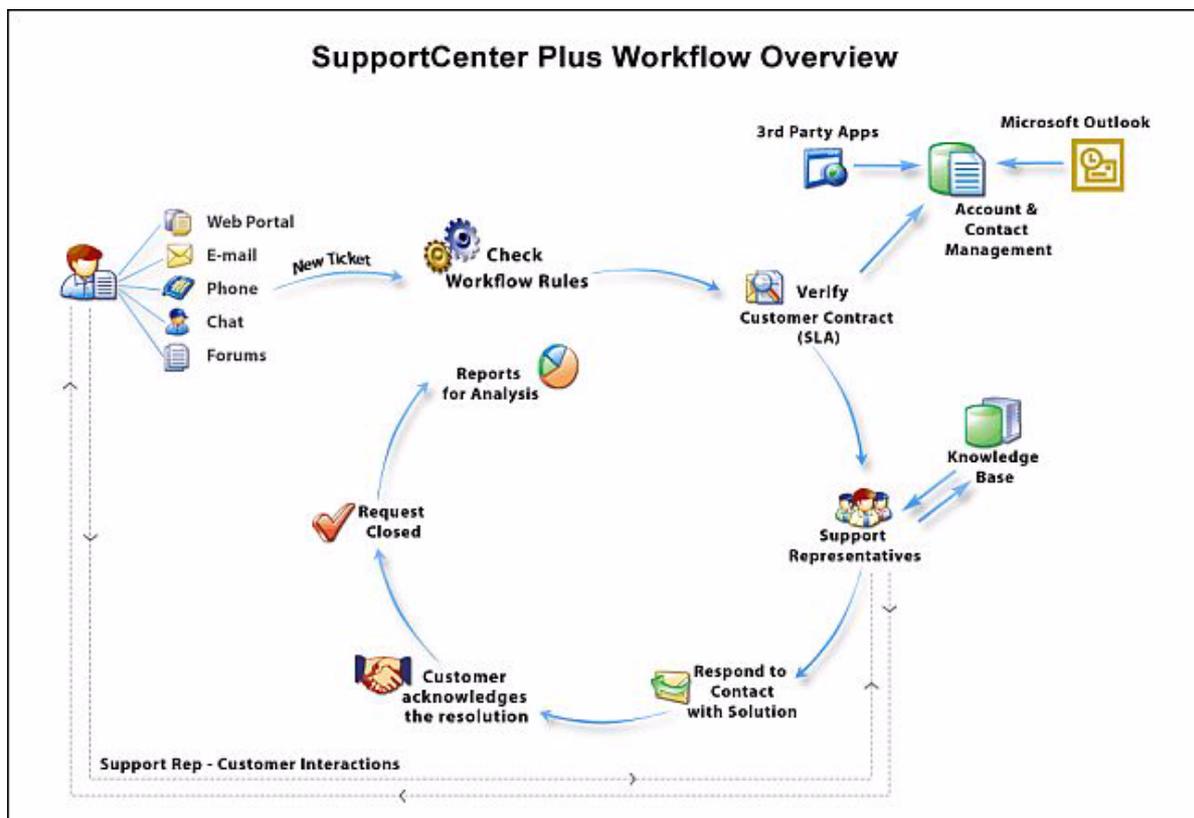
Overview of Request Workflow

- Users raise requests into SupportCenter Plus application.
- Check Business Rules
- Assign Support Reps
- Set Due by time based on Service Level Agreement
- Support Reps respond to contacts
- Customer acknowledgement for the provided resolution
- Close the request

Modes of Creating Requests

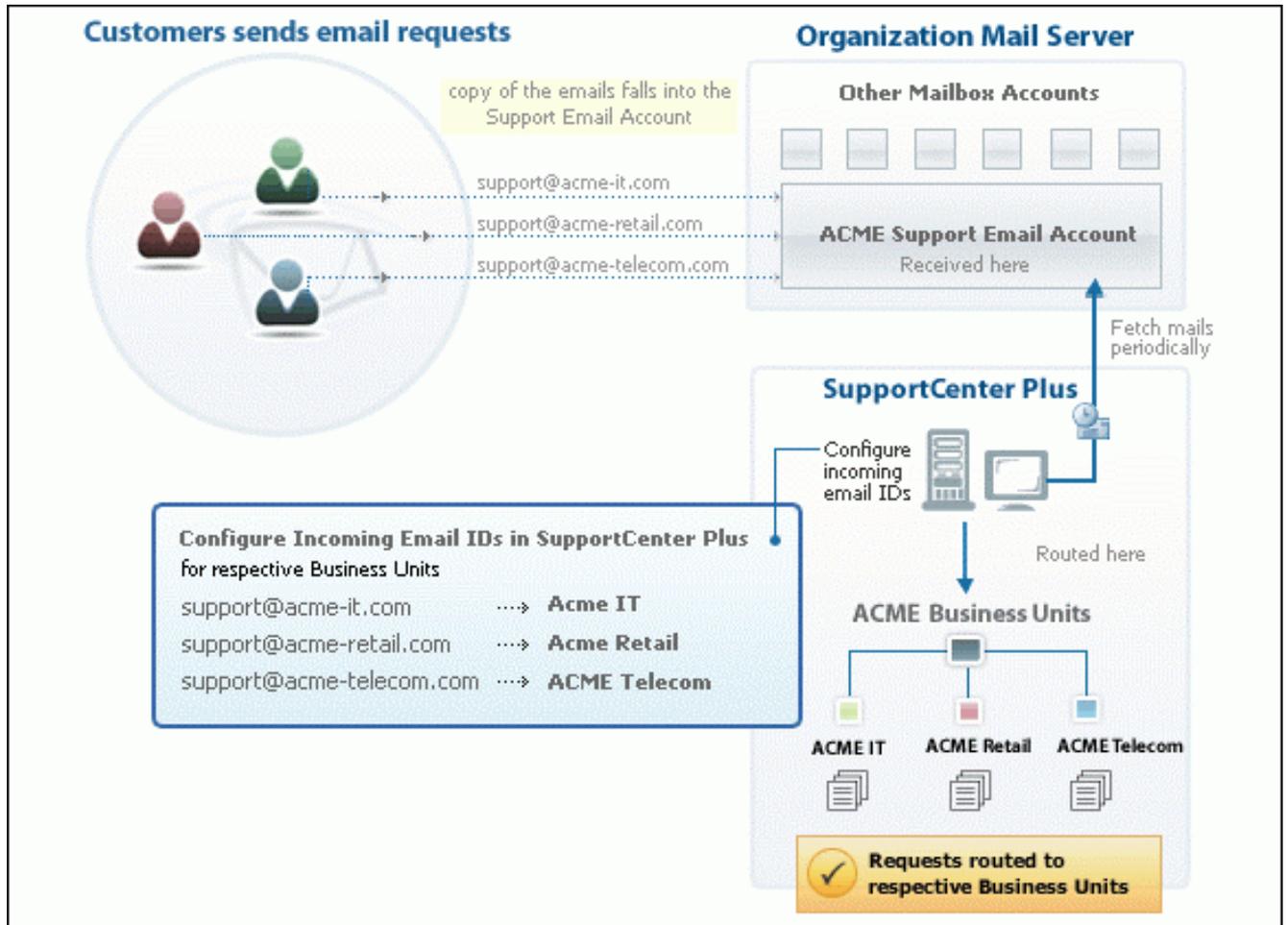
SupportCenter Plus provides 4 simple ways of creating a request.

1. **Phone** - The ticket can be created by the Support Staff
2. **Email** - Automatic Conversion of Emails to Tickets
3. **Forums** - SupportCenter Plus can be integrated with phpBB forums and forum posts can be automatically converted to tickets [Refer Forum Integration to configure phpBB forums to work with SupportCenter]
4. **Self-Service Portal** - Ticket submission thorough integrated web forms and customer self-service Portal.



Automatic Conversion of Email into Ticket

From the above mentioned modes, email is the most common mode to raise requests into the application. As soon as the contact sends an email, SupportCenter Plus effectively fetches mails from the mail server at regular intervals and routes the requests to the respective Business Units based on the configured email ID.



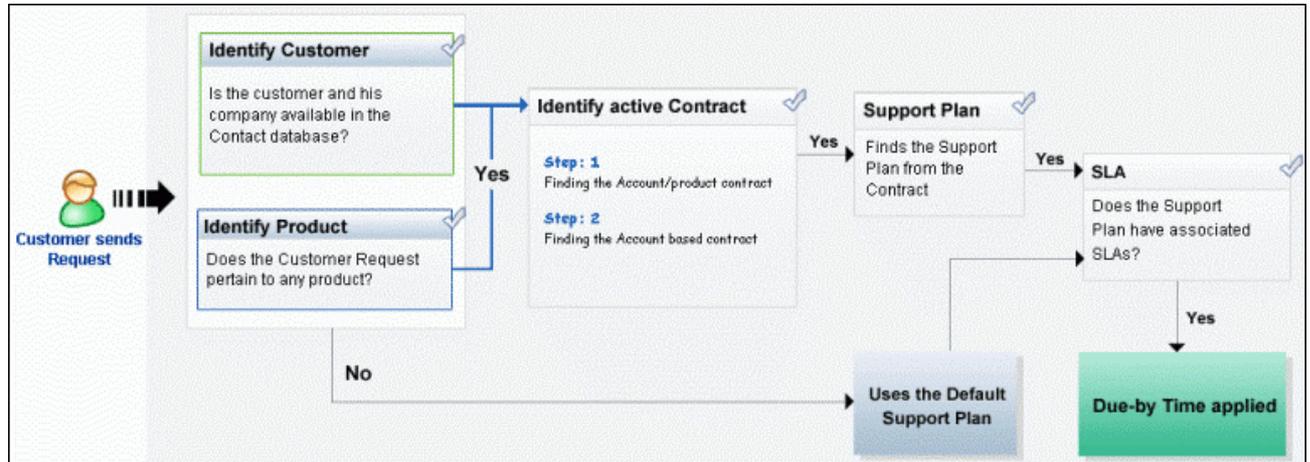
Once the request is routed to the respective Business Unit, SupportCenter Plus checks and applies the corresponding **Business Rules** for these requests.

Business rules are pre defined custom rules that help in automating requests to appropriate category, groups or support reps. Whether its placing the request to particular groups or setting the priority of the request, Business Rules enables you to organize all your incoming requests. Further, you can also enable **Notification** to your support reps either through mail or SMS when a new request is created or assigned.

Setting the due by time

The services offered is based on the Contracts and Support Plan associated to the customer's account through which the Service Level Agreement is determined and the due by time for the request is applied.

The work flow explains the application of due by time based on contracts.



Support Reps can pick requests that are left unassigned or can assign the requests to other support reps and groups. You can enter resolution or search for solutions from the Knowledge base module.

Closing Requests

Once the customer has acknowledged the resolution, he undergoes the billing process. Support Reps can then change the status of the request to closed. You can configure survey to rate your customer scarification on various parameter that you would like to measure about the support rep and the response quality.

If the customer replies back to the closed request, the status of the request is automatically set as Open and the due by time is applied again.

Request List View

The request list view page organises and displays all the tickets raised into SupportCenter Plus. This page includes various useful functionality such as,

- option to view requests based on filters.
- customize columns to be displayed in the list view.
- set the number of requests to be displayed per page.
- search for requests on entering the request ID.
- perform major operations on requests from the list view page.

On clicking the Request tab in the header pane, the page redirects to the request list view page.

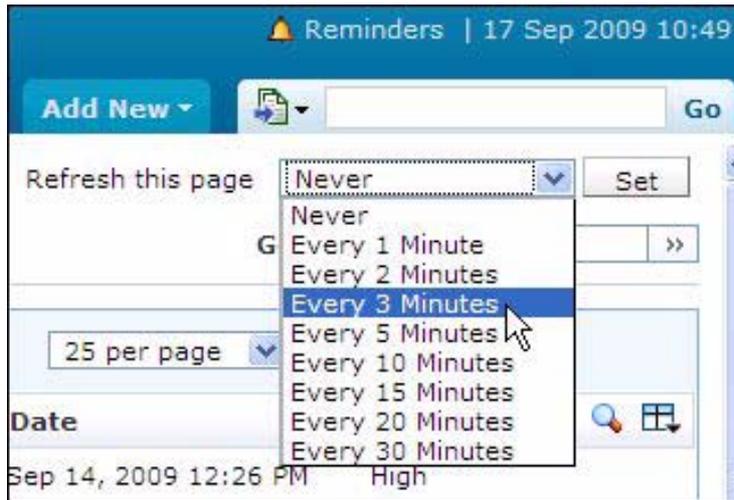
	Subject	Contact Name	Assigned To	Status	Date
	upgrade check	Mack	John Roberts	Open	Mar 23, 2010 02:13 PM
	Software Installation	Mark Anthony	Jeniffer Doe	Closed	Mar 30, 2010 02:11 PM
	Printer Problem	Andrew	Jeniffer Doe	Onhold	Mar 31, 2010 12:51 PM
	hw installation	Andrew	Unassigned	Open	Mar 31, 2010 02:12 PM

Representation of Icon in the list view:

- - A note is added to the request.
- - No reply is sent nor received for the request.
- - Reply generated by the system.
- - A reply has been sent by the support rep to the contact.
- - A reply has been sent by the contact.
- - The mail has been forwarded to a support rep.
- - Resolution time for the request is overdue
- - First Response time is overdue
- - Both Response time and Resolution time are overdue
- - edit individual requests.
- - Search for requests on entering the request id, subject, requesters name and so on.
- - select the columns to be displayed in the list view.

From the request list view page you can:

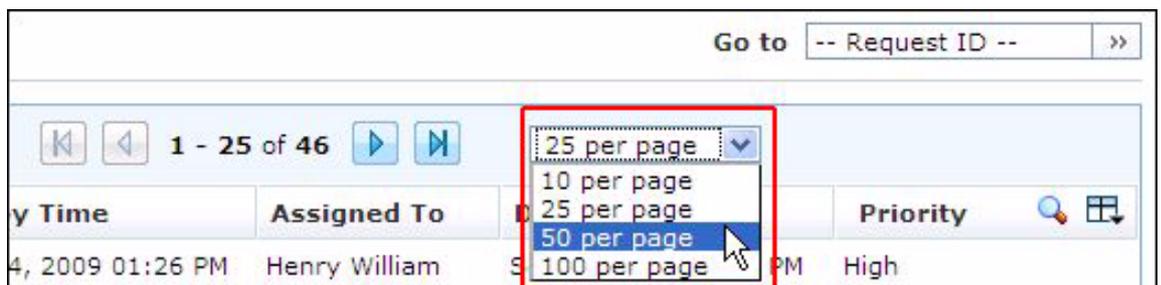
1. **Refresh this page:** Set the time frame to refresh the page from every minute to 30 minutes. On setting the refresh time in the application, the page gets refreshed automatically for the specified time frame. By default, the value is set to Never. To auto refresh list view page,
 1. Click the edit icon  beside the value **Never**.
 2. From the drop down list select the frequency of refreshing the page.
 3. Click **Set** button.



2. **Search Request:** Search for requests instantly on entering the Request ID.

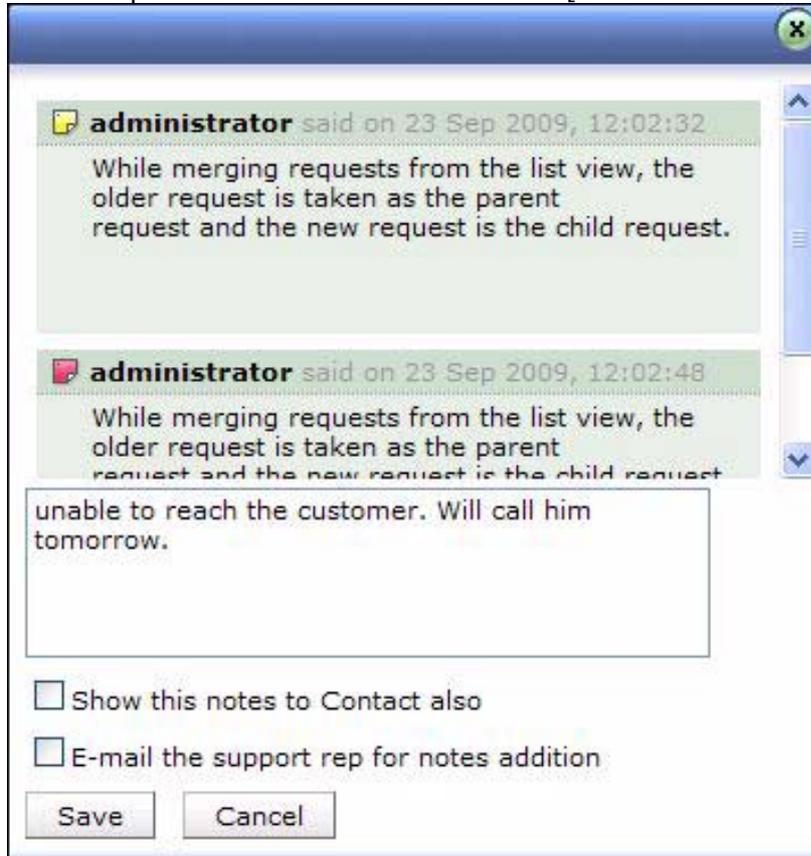


3. **Set the number of requests per page and navigation buttons:** You can set the number of requests to be displayed in the request list view page.



4. **Custom and Manage the Views:** Customize the page to display the requests using Custom View option. You can create criteria to filter requests accumulated in the request list view page. Thus sorting and viewing requests based on your requirements. [Refer Custom Views to know more]
 - - create filters to customize and organize your request list view. The filters created can be made public or private.
 - - View, edit and delete customized views.

5. **Request based on filters:** View specific group of requests through pre defined filters.
6. **View and Add Notes to a request:** Select on the notes icon to view and add notes to a request instantly from the list view page. Public notes are marked as , whereas private notes are marked in . [Refer Notes for more information].



4. **New Request:** Create new requests on specifying the detail information of the request such as, request type, priority, urgency, group, category, sub category and items. [Refer New Request to know more].
5. **Bulk Operation:**
 - **Edit Request:** Bulk edit requests with similar information. [To know more, refer Editing Request].
 - **Delete Request:** Bulk delete requests. [To know more, refer Deleting Request].
 - **Close Request:** Bulk Close of all the completed requests. [To know more, refer Closing Request].
 - **Merge Requests:** Merge two or more similar request. While merging requests, the newly added requests are taken as the child request while the older request is the parent request. [To know more, refer Merging Request].
 - **Assign To:** Assign bulk requests to support reps. [To know more, refer Assigning/Unassigning Support Reps].

Requests Based on Filters

You can view requests based on filters from the request list view page. In addition, you can also create new filters using the Custom View option to place requests in specific groups. There are some pre defined filters in SupportCenter Plus as shown,

The screenshot shows the 'All Requests' view in the ManageEngine Support Center Plus. The left sidebar has a 'Views' menu with the following options: My Open Or Unassigned, Unassigned Requests, My Open Requests, My Requests On Hold, My Overdue Requests, My Pending Requests, My Requests Due Today, My Completed Requests, Open Requests, Requests On Hold, Overdue Requests, Requests Due Today, Pending Requests, Completed Requests, and **All Requests**. The main area displays a table of requests with columns for ID, Subject, and Status. The table contains 13 rows of data, with the 8th row (ID 48) highlighted in bold.

ID	Subject	Status
43	AC not working properly	Open
40	problem with the software	Closed
51	Replace battery request	Open
46	system crashed	Open
49	Cannot restore the backup data...	Open
48	Very important and critical	Open
47	problem with the laptop	Open
45	My Laptop is not working	Open
44	daily check on server	Open
42	problem with the software	Open
41	virus scanner updation	Open
34	problem with the software	Open
33	problem with the software	Open

- **My Open or Unassigned Requests** All your open requests and the requests unassigned to the support reps are listed under this option. These requests are in bold font.
- **Unassigned Requests** Lists all the requests that is not assigned to any support rep.
- **My Open Requests** Lists all the request that are assigned to you in the open status.
- **My Requests On Hold** Lists all the requests assigned to you which is kept on hold.
- **My Overdue Requests** Displays requests assigned to you that has exceeded the due by time.
- **My Pending Requests** Lists all your unfinished and incomplete requests.
- **My Requests Due Today** Displays all requests assigned to you that are due for the current day.
- **My Completed Requests** All requests assigned to you that are completed and closed.

If the support rep has permission to view 'All' or "All in group & assigned to him" the requests raised in SupportCenter Plus then the following options is available to the support rep.

- **Open Requests** Lists all the open requests, irrespective of the support rep.
- **Requests On Hold** All the requests that are kept on hold, irrespective of the support rep is listed under this option.
- **Overdue Requests** Displays all the requests that have exceeded the due by time irrespective of the support rep.
- **Requests Due Today** Lists all the requests that are due for the day irrelevant of the support rep.
- **Pending Requests** Lists all the unfinished requests irrelevant of the support rep.
- **Completed Requests** Displays all the closed requests irrelevant of the support rep.
- **All Requests** Lists all requests on all status say closed, pending, open and so on.

Custom Views

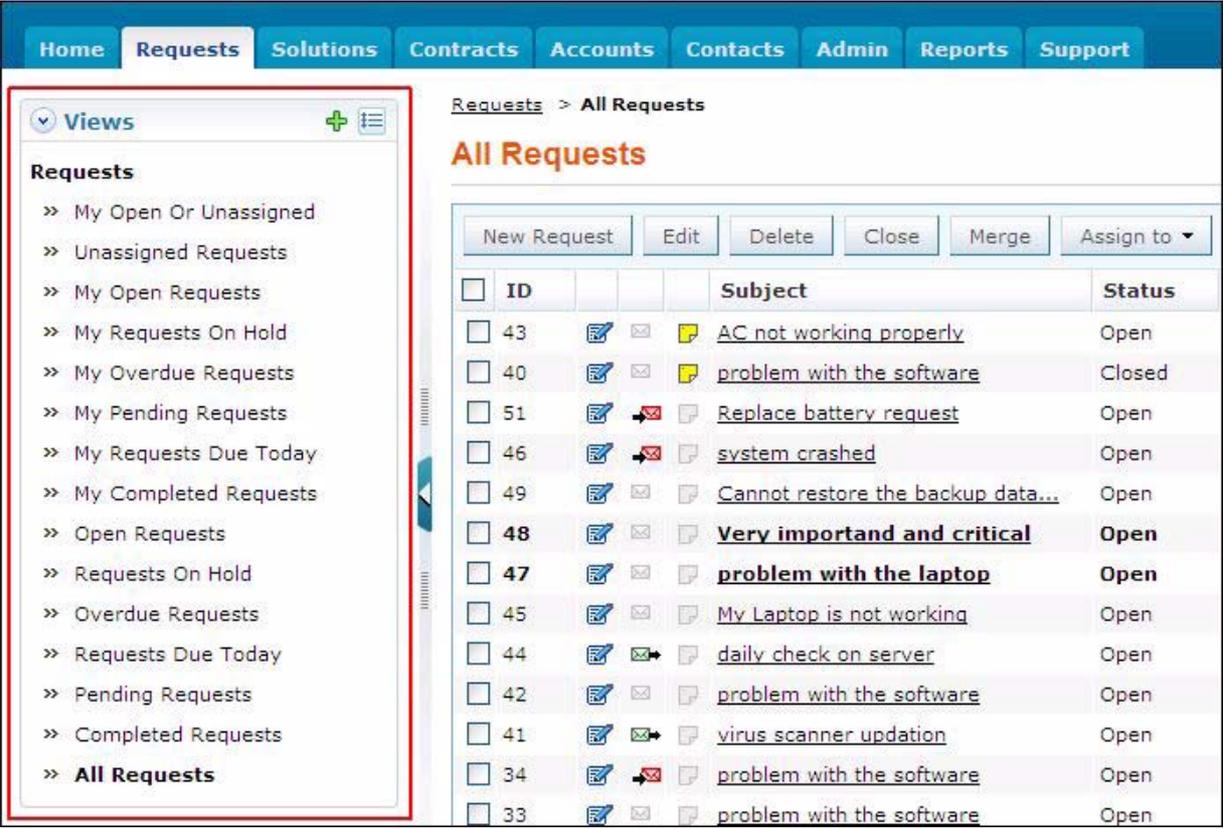
You can create your own customized page to display requests using Custom View option. You can specify the criteria to filter the requests accumulated in your requests list view page. Thus helping you to sort and view requests based on your requirement.

- Create Custom View
- Manage Views

Creating Custom View

If you want to view all the "High" priority requests in the application through Custom View.

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click on **Create Custom View** icon . The **Add Custom View** page opens.



The screenshot shows the 'All Requests' page in the ManageEngine Support Center Plus. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Requests', 'Solutions', 'Contracts', 'Accounts', 'Contacts', 'Admin', 'Reports', and 'Support'. The 'Requests' tab is selected. On the left, a 'Views' sidebar is highlighted with a red box, containing a list of request views: 'My Open Or Unassigned', 'Unassigned Requests', 'My Open Requests', 'My Requests On Hold', 'My Overdue Requests', 'My Pending Requests', 'My Requests Due Today', 'My Completed Requests', 'Open Requests', 'Requests On Hold', 'Overdue Requests', 'Requests Due Today', 'Pending Requests', 'Completed Requests', and 'All Requests'. The main content area shows a table of requests with columns for ID, Subject, and Status. The table includes a 'New Request' button and action buttons like 'Edit', 'Delete', 'Close', 'Merge', and 'Assign to'. The table data is as follows:

ID	Subject	Status
43	AC not working properly	Open
40	problem with the software	Closed
51	Replace battery request	Open
46	system crashed	Open
49	Cannot restore the backup data...	Open
48	Very important and critical	Open
47	problem with the laptop	Open
45	My Laptop is not working	Open
44	daily check on server	Open
42	problem with the software	Open
41	virus scanner updation	Open
34	problem with the software	Open
33	problem with the software	Open

3. In the Add Custom View page, specify a **View Name** like "High Priority" requests. This field is mandatory.
4. If you are the administrator and want this custom view to be available only when you log in, select the check box beside **Make this view as private custom view**. The custom view is made private. By default, the custom view for an administrator is public. If you are a support rep without administrator login privilege then by default the created custom view is private. The option to "Make

- this view as private custom view" is not available.
5. In the **Advance Filtering** block, select the criteria to be filtered from **Column** drop down along with its matching **Criteria**. For instance, select "Priority" from Column drop down and "is" from criteria.
 6. Click on **Choose** button.
 7. From **Select Column Data** pop up choose your option as "High". You can select options based on your selected column and criteria.
 8. Click **Add to Filter** button to save the filter criteria details. The filter criteria is listed in **Filter Set** block.
 9. If you wish to add more filter conditions to this view then, select the required column, criteria & conditions of the filter.
 10. If there are more than two criteria, specify **AND** or **OR** conditions by enabling either of the two radio buttons.
 11. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Add New** to save and add another custom view.

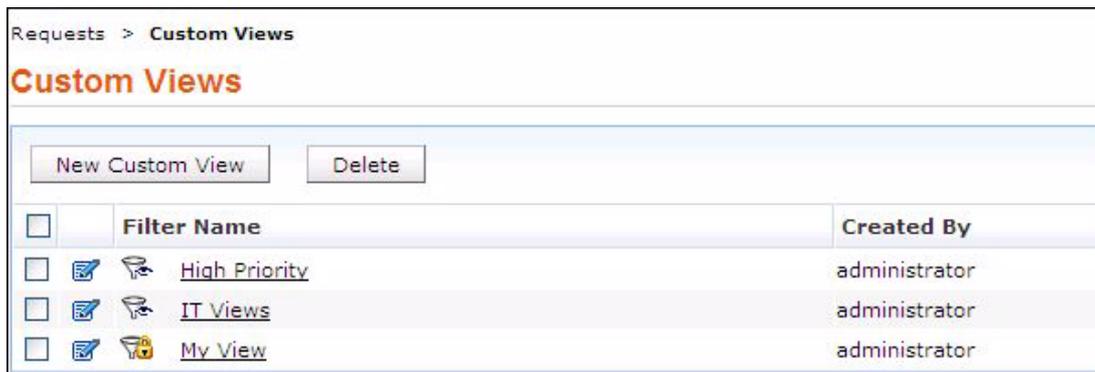
The Custom View is now displayed under Views in the request list view page. The custom view marked as private is listed under My Views and the public custom view is displayed along with the predefined filters.



Manage Custom Views

You can view all your customized view under Manage Custom Views. From this page you can add, edit and delete a custom view.

1. Click on **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click **Manage Custom View** icon . The **Custom View** page opens listing all the created custom views.
 -  - indicates the custom view is public and can be viewed by all users.
 -  - indicates the custom view is private and can be viewed only by the creator of the custom view.



Note



1. If you are the administrator then you can view all your customized private and public views.
2. If you are a support rep then you can add only private custom views.

Edit Custom Views

To edit a custom view,

1. Click the **edit** icon  beside the filter name you wish to edit.
2. From **Edit Custom View** page, edit the details.
3. Click **Save**. You can also add a new custom view by clicking **Save and Add New** button.

Delete Custom Views

To delete custom views,

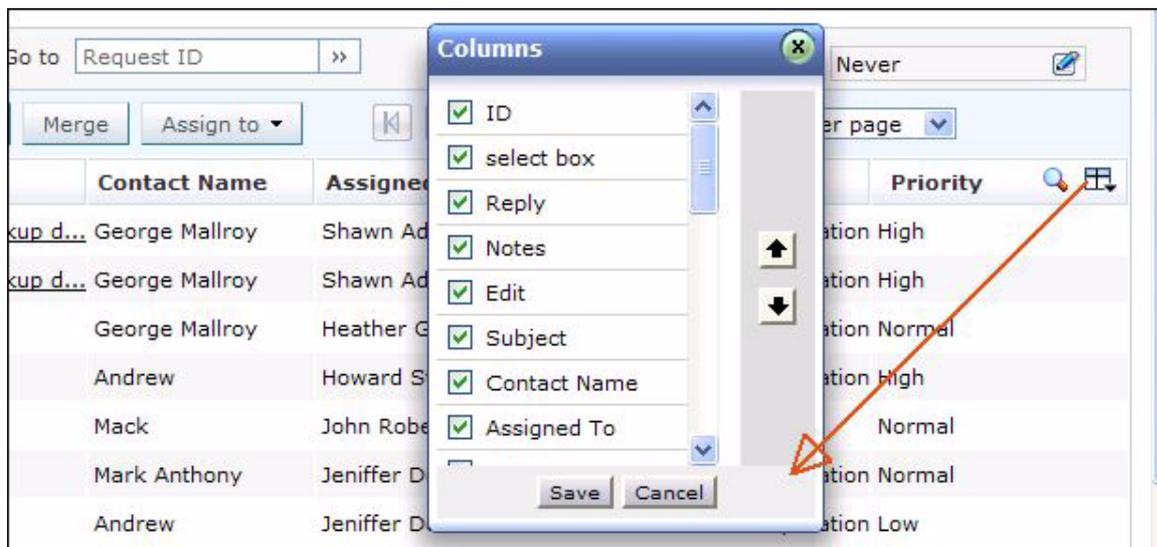
1. Select the check box beside the custom views to be deleted. The administrator has the privilege to create and delete public views.
2. Click **Delete** button. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The Custom View is deleted from the list.

Customizing Request List View

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus gives you an option to customize the request list view page by including columns of your choice.

To customize columns displayed in the list view,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click on **Column Chooser** icon . The available columns that can be displayed in the list view pops up. The columns that are currently visible in the list view is indicated with selected check box.



3. To remove a column, de-select the check box and click Save.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the check box beside the column you wish to add. Click Save.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**. Only the selected columns are added in the request list view.

Search Requests

You can search for requests based on the keywords, request ID and column wise search on entering the request details such as subject, requesters name and so on from the request list view.

Search Requests based on

- Keywords
- Request ID
- Column wise

Search Requests based on Keywords

Request tab

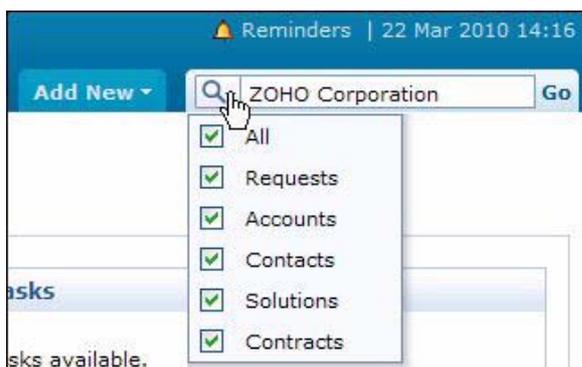
To do a keyword search for requests,

1. Click **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Enter the keyword in the search field.
3. Click **Search**. All requests that match the keyword provided by you in the search field is displayed.



Performing a Global Search

You can also perform a **Global Search** that searches the keyword in every module at one go. Advance search options such as Wildcard search, phrase search, boolean search, field specific search and much more, can be used to make the search effective. To know more, click Search Tips.



Creating New Requests

Any incident, request for service or request for information can be sent as requests to the supportdesk team. These requests can be sent to the support team in many different ways. Some of the most common modes are,

1. Contacts can call the helpdesk reporting their problem or requirement and he in turn will file it as a request. [For more information, refer Log a call]
2. They can submit their query by logging into the customer portal and filing a request.
3. Or, they can send an Email to the support team, which will automatically get logged as a service request in SupportCenter Plus.

Creating a new request from the application

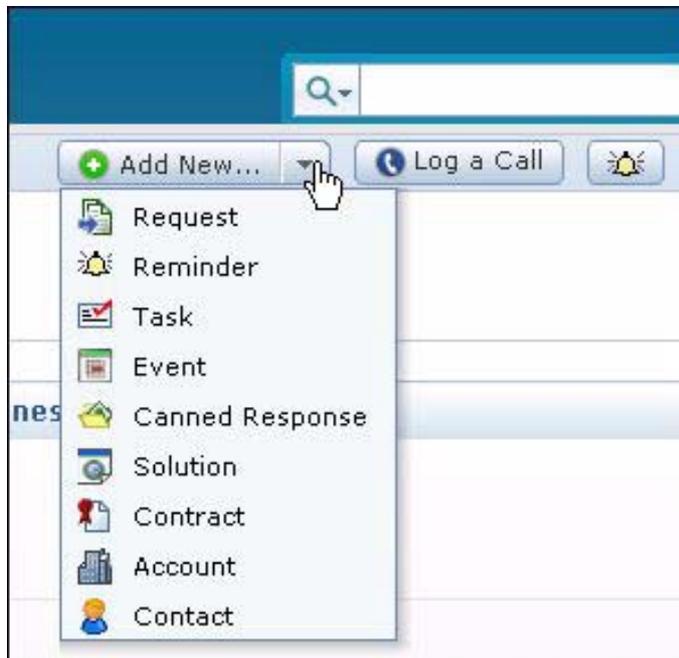
A typical example for support reps to create a new request from SupportCenter Plus application would be when a support rep is on a call with the contact. The support rep fills in the necessary details for future references.

The new request form can be accessed by two ways in SupportCenter Plus application.

- a. Add New drop down
- b. Request tab

Add New drop down

The Add New drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Request form the home page.



To configure the New Request form, go to Step 3 in Request tab.

Request Tab

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Select **New Request** button. The New Request form opens.

3. If you have specified Request Default Values for Category, Level, Mode, Priority and Group to be displayed in the New Request form, then the same are populated in the new request form.
4. You can also create a Request Template for the frequently raised requests under the Admin tab. Select the template from **Apply Template** drop down box to create a requests instantly.
5. If you have not configured the Request Default Values or the Request Template, specify the request details such as **Mode** of submission of request, **Level** of complexity of the request and **Priority**.
6. By default, the Status of the request is **Open**.
7. Support Rep assigned to the request are also known as Owner. You can either select the **Group** according to the request or choose the **Support Rep** alone. Say, if the request is for "Replacement of battery" then select the Group as Warranty. The list of support reps associated to Warranty group is listed under Support Rep drop down. To associate support reps to specific groups, refer Groups
8. If you are on a call with a known contact whose contact information is mentioned in the application, either enter the **Contact Name** or use the **Search Contact** icon to search for the contact.
 1. If you enter the contact name, SupportCenter Plus will given you options to choose the contacts relevant to the name specified.

2. You can also search for contacts using the **Search Contact** icon . The Contact List pop up window opens.

Name	Login Name	E-mail	Account	Job title
Sharon Harper	sharon	sharon@acme.com	ZOHO Corporations	Engineer
Sharon Philips	-	sharonp@acme.com	ZOHO Corporations	Engineer

3. Click on the hyper-linked name of the contact. The contact name gets

populated in the new request form. If there are any contact details associated with the contact such as, Account, Phone, Email and Mobile, then the relevant details is populated in the respective fields.

<p>Note</p> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From this page, you can Add New Contact if the contact name is not listed. 2. You can also Edit the contact information  and also View the contact information . 3. If the contact list is lengthy, you can search for contacts on entering the contact name in Search Contact List and click Go. <p>Alternatively, you can choose to view only selected group of contacts by clicking on the alphabets at the top.</p>
--	---

8. If your on a call with a first time caller then enter the **Contact Details** like, **Name**, **Phone** and **Mobile** number, and **Email** address. If the account is available then select the same from **Account** drop down box. Else enter the Account name in the field.
9. Select the **Product** to be associated with the request.
10. You can also classify the request category by selecting the **Category**, **Sub-Category** and **Item**.
11. If there are any **Additional Request details** (configured under Admin -> Helpdesk Customizer -> Request Additional Fields) then enter the same in the respective fields.
12. Specify the **Subject** of the request. This field is mandatory.
13. Provide a brief description about the request in the **Description** field.
14. If you wish to attach any relevant files to the request then click Attach a file link. The Add/Remove Attachment window pops up.



1. Click **Browse** button and select the file to be attached from the file chooser window. Click **Open** button.
2. Click **Attach** button. The selected file is listed under **Attached Files** along with size of the file.
3. If you have more than one file to attach repeat steps 1 and 2. Ensure that the total size of the attachments does not exceed 5 MB. Click **Done**. The selected files are attached to the request.
15. Enter the email address of the **CC recipients** in the field provided. The CC recipient will receive email on the conversation between the support rep and the contact. You can add more than one CC recipient separating each email ID with a comma. [Click here to know more on Auto CC.](#)
16. Click **Add request** button. If the Contact and Account information is not entered in the application, a pop up message appears confirming to add the contact and account details as part of the request. Click **Ok** to proceed. The request is added to the request list.

Auto CC Recipient

For crucial requests, it becomes utmost import to inform your higher officials on the progress and development of the request. The Auto CC recipient feature is a one time addition of the CC'ed recipients, after which, the conversations between the support rep and contact is notified to the CC recipients. The Auto CC recipient option is available while creating a new request from both, the support rep and contact login. While the CC recipients added by the contact can be viewed and modified by the support rep, the CC'ed recipients specified by the support rep are concealed from the contact view. Furthermore, there are a set of five notification rules exclusively for the CC recipients.

Adding CC Recipient

The CC recipient field is available in the new request form of the support rep login. Enter the email address of the CC recipients to be notified. If more than one email ID is specified, use comma as a separator as shown in the image.

Cc : Added Cc Recipients will get notified on this request actions
 jake@acme.com,bill@acme.com,mark@acme.com
 Enter Cc Recipients email addresses separated by commas

The entered CC recipients will be notified of the conversation between the support rep and the contact via email.

Modifying the CC Recipient

You can modify, remove or add another email address to the CC recipient from the request details page. Click the **Edit** button. Perform the corresponding operations and click on **Update**.

Cc Recipients
 jake@acme.com,bill.thomas@acme.com,sharon@acme.com
 Update Cancel
 Enter Cc Recipients email addresses separated by commas

CC Recipients Notifications

The CC recipient notification are sent via email to the CC recipients. There are five notification rules under the CC recipient notification, out of which two are mandatory and enabled automatically.

- **Alert CC Recipients on request Creation:** By default, the CC recipients are notified via email when a request is created.
- **Alert CC Recipients on Contact reply:** By default, the CC recipients are notified via email when a contact replies to the request. s
- **Alert CC Recipients on Support Rep reply:** Enable this option to alert the CC recipients via email when a support rep replies to the request.

- **Alert CC Recipients when the request is Updated:** Enable this option to alert the CC recipients via email when the request is updated.
- **Alert CC Recipients when the request is Closed:** Enable this option to alert the CC recipients via email when the request is closed.

Cc Recipients Notifications		
Notify by Email		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Alert Cc Recipients on request Creation	Customize template
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Alert Cc Recipients on Contact reply	Customize template
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Alert Cc Recipients on SupportRep reply	Customize template
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Alert Cc Recipients when the request is Updated	Customize template
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Alert Cc Recipients when the request is Closed	Customize template

Editing Requests

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus provides you with the option to modify the created request either from the request list view page or from request details page.

Edit Request from List View

To edit requests from the list view page,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click on the **Edit** icon  beside the request title to edit.
3. The request form opens in editable format with the values populated during creating the request.
4. Modify the details and specify the **Reason for Updating the Request**. This reason will be shown in the History tab of the request.
5. Click **Update** button to save the changes.

From the request list view, you have an option to edit more than one request. This comes in handy when there are a group of requests with similar issues. Instead of editing the requests one by one, you can edit the details in a single shot.

To perform bulk edit,

1. From the request list view page, select the check box beside the request you wish to edit.
2. Click on **Edit** button. The edit request page opens to display the request id of the requests that are grouped together to edit.
3. You can edit the request details, owner details, product and category details of the request.
4. Specify the **Reason for Updating the Request** in the given field. The specified reason will be shown in the History tab in request details page.
5. Click **Update** button to save the changes.

Edit Request from Details page

To edit requests from the request details page,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request you wish to edit.
3. From the request details page, click on **Edit** tab.
4. The request form opens in editable format with the values populated during creating the request.
5. Modify the details and specify the **Reason for Updating the Request**. This reason will be shown in the History tab of the request.
6. Click **Update** button to save the changes.

You are also provided with an **Edit** button or the **Inline Edit** option to edit certain request properties.

Deleting Requests

You can delete individual requests as well as group of requests in SupportCenter Plus.

To delete individual requests,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be deleted.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions** drop down menu -> **Delete** option.
4. A dialog box pops up asking your confirmation on the delete operation.
5. Click **Ok** to proceed deleting. The request is deleted from the list.
6. Click **Cancel** to abort deletion.

To delete more than one request at a time,

1. From the request list view page, select the requests to be deleted from the list by enabling the check box.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A dialog box pops up asking your confirmation on the delete process.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The requests are deleted from the list.
4. Click **Cancel** to abort deletion.

Closing Requests

When the contact is completely satisfied that his/her request has been completely attended to and the reported problem has been resolved by the support rep, then the request can be closed by the support rep.

On closing the request a survey form is sent to the contact to rate customer satisfaction. You can also close a request without sending the survey using **Close without Notification** option. To know more on how to define a survey, refer Survey.

To close completed request,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click on **Subject** link of the request to be closed.
3. From request details page, click **Close drop down** menu -> select **Close** option.
4. If you have enabled the option to send survey on completion of request, a survey form is sent to the contact via mail.

Alternatively, you can also change the status field to **Closed** while editing the request. Refer Editing Request to know more.

 <p>Note</p>	<p>You can reopen a request from the closed state. To do this, open the closed request in editable mode and change the status field from Closed to Open. The completed date is removed on reopening the request. When this request is finally closed, the completed date is updated and the Time taken to close is recalculated taking the reopened period into account.</p>
--	--

To close more than one request,

You can close all the completed requests in bulk from the request list view page,

1. Select the requests to be closed by enabling the check box in the request list view page.
2. Click on **Close** button. The selected requests are closed.

Close without Notification

You also have an option to close the request without sending the survey form to the contact even though Enable Survey option is enabled.

Say, On closing a request and sending a survey form to the contact via email, if the contact has enabled auto reply system then a reply mail is generated and sent to SupportCenter Plus. This reply mail in turn opens the closed request automatically.

Similar process continues even on closing this request. To stop this chain process, you can choose to close a request without sending a notification to contact.

To close without notification,

1. From the request list view page, click on the **Subject** link of the request to be closed.
2. Click on **Close drop down** menu -> select **Close without Notification** option. Even if you have survey, the survey form will not be sent to the contact.

Merging Requests

You can merge two or more requests if the requests are related to each other, say two requests are raised from a single contact regarding a similar product. These two requests can be merged as one and a support rep can be assigned to this merged request.

Note



1. The merge operation requires special permission that can be enabled under **Roles**.
2. If two different support reps had been assigned to the requests before the merging process, then the support rep assigned to the parent request is the owner of the merged request.
3. The **due by time** for the merged request is similar to the due by time of the parent request.
4. All the **notes** and **conversation thread** for the child request is merged with the parent requests.

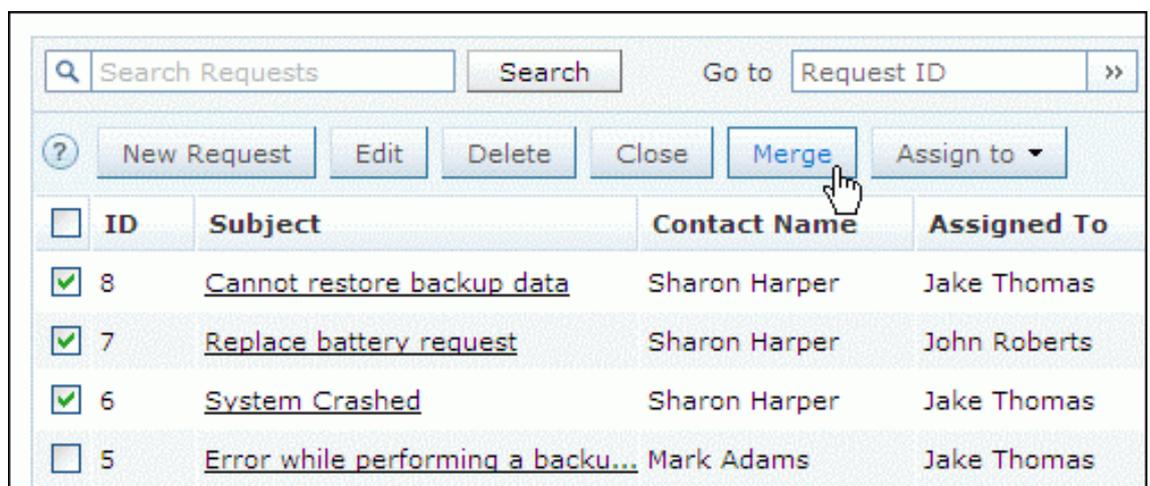
SupportCenter Plus gives you an option to merge requests from the **Request List View** or from the **Request Details Page**.

Merge Request from List View

You can merge two or more requests from the list view. While merging requests from the list view, the oldest request becomes the parent and the other requests become the child.

To merge requests,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Select the list of requests to be merged by enabling the check box.
3. Click **Merge** button. A confirmation dialog appears.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The selected requests are merged.



In the above image, the oldest request (Request ID 6) is the Parent request while the other requests become the child (Request ID 7, 8).

Merge Request from Details Page

To perform merge operation from the request details page,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** of the request to be merged. This request is the parent request.
3. From the request details page, click the **Actions** drop down menu -> select **Merge Request** option. **Merge this Request** page opens,

Merge this Request

Search for Request Search Show All Requests

All Requests Showing 1- 25 of 43 Show 25 per page

ID	Subject	Contact	Assigned To
56	Cannot restore the backup data...	Sharon Harper	Jake Thomas
54	Replace battery request	Sharon Harper	Jake Thomas
53	Replace battery request	Sharon Harper	Jake Thomas
51	Replace battery request	Sharon Harper	Jake Thomas
40	problem with the software	Radhika	Jake Thomas
49	Cannot restore the backup data...	Sharon Harper	Ruth Hinks
42	problem with the software	Radhika	George Mallory
43	AC not working properly	Radhika	administrator
46	system crashed	Sharon Harper	administrator
48	Very important and critical	Mark Adams	Unassigned

Choose a request to merge Cancel

4. You can search for specific request by providing a search string in **Search for Request** field.
5. You can also select request based on filters from the **Show** combo box.
6. To confirm if the request to be merged is the correct one, you can view the request by clicking the subject of the request. This request becomes the parent request.
7. Click on **Merge Request** icon  to merge both the requests.
8. A confirmation dialog box opens asking your confirmation on the merge request operation.
9. Click **OK** to proceed. The selected request is merged and becomes the parent request.

Say for instance, you are in the request details page of Request ID 7 and you choose "Merge Request" option under the Actions drop down to merge this request with Request ID 10. Request ID 10 becomes the parent request while Request ID 7 becomes the child.

Splitting Conversation as Requests

The conversation thread from the contact can be split into a new request. To split a conversation into a new request,

1. In the request details page under Conversation block, click **Expand All**  radio button beside the contact conversation thread .



The screenshot shows a web interface for viewing contact conversations. At the top, there are links for 'View Contact Conversations' and '[View All Conversations.]'. Below this, there are two conversation entries. The first entry is from 'Jake Thomas' on 'Sep 25, 2009 10:35 AM'. The second entry is from 'Sharon Harper' on 'Sep 25, 2009 10:36 AM'. The email content is visible, starting with 'Hi Jake,' and mentioning an iPhone purchase. At the bottom of the email view, there are several action buttons: 'Reply', 'Forward', 'View History', 'Split as New request' (which is highlighted with a red box), and 'Delete'.

2. Click **Split as New Request** link. The request is split as a new request with consecutive request id.

Note



1. Due by time is not mentioned for the split request.
2. Notes, tasks, conversation thread will not be available in the split request.

Assigning Requests to Support Rep

All the unassigned requests raised in SupportCenter Plus can be assigned to Groups and Support Reps. This increases the efficiency and turn around time of the support desk team. Hence reducing the waiting period of the request as they are assigned and answered sooner by the support reps.

You can either pickup the request or assign it to support reps.

- Assigning request to Support Rep
- Picking up request
- Bulk assigning request
- Unassigning requests

Assigning request to Support Rep

Each request is owned by a support rep, who are responsible for handling the request until it is closed. To assign a support rep,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be assigned a support rep.
3. From the request details page, click **Assign** drop down menu -> select **Assign** option. The **Assign Group and Support Rep** page opens.

You can either assign the request to a Group or to a Support Rep, or to a Group and Support Rep.

4. Choose the **Group** of the request from the combo box.
5. Select the **Support Rep** under the selected Group to assign the request .
6. Click **Assign** button.

Picking up Request

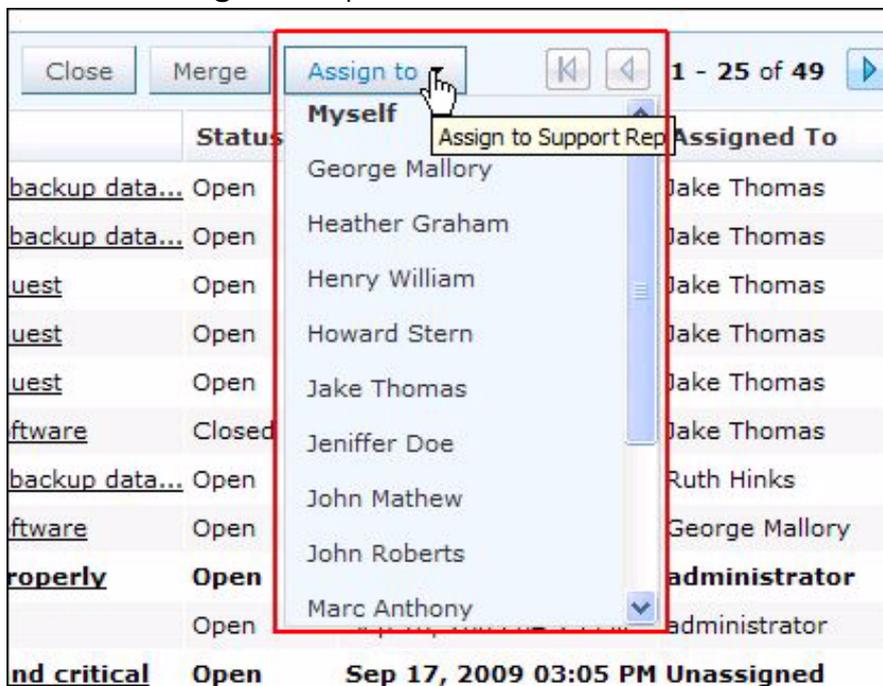
You can self-pick up all the unassigned requests and assign the requests in your name. To pick up requests,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Select the **Subject** link of the request you wish to pick up.
3. From the request details page, click on **Assign** drop down menu -> select **Pickup** option. The request gets assigned to you.

Bulk Assign Request

You can also assign more than one request to the support rep or to yourself. To assign requests in bulk,

1. From the Requests list view page, select the requests to be assigned to a support rep by enabling the check box.
2. Click the **Assign to** drop down menu.



3. Select the name of the **Support Rep** from the list. You can also assign the requests to yourself on selecting **Myself** from the list.
4. The requests gets assigned to the selected support rep.

Unassigning Support Rep

You can unassign a request from the support rep and move it back to unassigned status. To unassign a support rep,

1. From the request list view page, click the **Subject** link of the request to be unassigned a support rep.
2. From the request details page, click **Assign drop down** menu and select **Assign** option. The **Assign Group and Support Rep** pop-up page opens .
3. Click the **Choose Support Rep** combo box and select **NONE**.
4. Click on **Assign** button. The request gets unassigned.

Request Details Page

The **View Request** page organizes the details of the request in a logical manner. To view the details of a request,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click on the **Subject** link of the request to be viewed. The View Request page opens.

Contact Details

This block displays the Request id and Subject of the request, Contact details such as the Contact Name, the Account, Phone and Mobile number, Status, Priority and Due Date for the request.



Requests > View request

Edit Close ▾ Assign ▾ Actions ▾ Reply ▾

ID : 2 - Replacement of battery

Created On : Nov 11, 2010 03:19 PM

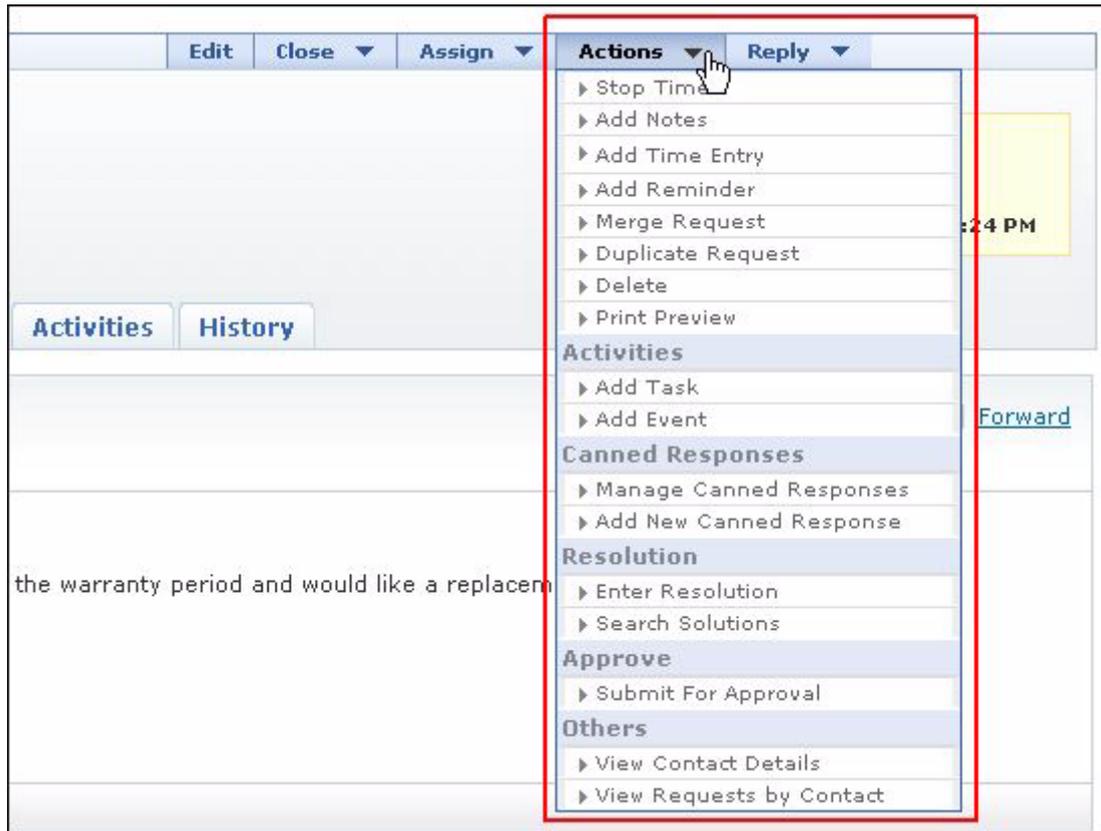
Contact :  Sharon Harper (Acme)

 984-763-7432  984-763-7432  Send Invite

Status : **Open**
Priority : **High**
Due Date : Nov 30, 2010 03:24 PM

Request Account Info Resolution Time Entry Activities History

You can also perform basic operations on the request like editing a request, closing a request and replying to a request. From the **Actions drop down** you can perform further operations on the request such as adding notes, tasks, events, reminders, duplicating and merging requests and so on.



With CTI integration in SupportCenter Plus, you can call your customers, saving time and effort in replying to mails. [Refer Computer Telephony Integration]



If you have a Zoho Account, then you can avail the remote assistance feature and access your customers machine from your desk.[Refer Remote Assistance]

The block contains tabs to view **Request** details, **Account Information**, View and Add **Resolution**, View and Add **Time Entry** and **History** to keep a track on all the actions performed on a request. If tasks are added to the request then a **Task** tab appears beside Time Entry tab.

Viewing Request Details

The request tab displays the **Subject** and **Description** of the request. The **Conversation** button appears if there are any conversation threads to the request. Clicking on Conversation button scrolls down to view the conversation threads. You have an option to view all conversations or only the conversation shown to contacts. To know more, refer Conversation.

In addition, the request details block also displays request properties like Status, Group, Category, Sub Category, Item, Support Rep, Priority, Mode, Level, Created Date, Due Date, Product, Created By and additional fields (if available).

You can edit the request properties using **Edit** button or the **Inline edit** option to edit a specific request property. Say, you want to change the support rep from Jake Thomas to Jennifer Doe, then click on the name of the support rep and select the name from the drop down list.

If you have added any Notes to the request then the same can be viewed under **Discussion Notes** block. The notes are displayed in descending order of their date of creation. You have options to edit and delete the notes.

Viewing Account Information

The account info tab displays the **Contact Details** along with the **Contract Details** associated with the Account. Contract details such as Support Type, Support Plan, Contract Covered and cost per hour is listed under this block.

Request	Account Info	Resolution	Time Entry	Activities	History
Contact Details Edit					
Contact Name	Sharon Harper		Email Address	sharon@acme.com	
Contact number	984-763-7432		Mobile number	984-763-7432	
Twitter Screen Name	sharon		Account	Acme [Check Now]	
Sub Account	-				
Contract Details					
Contract Covered	Maintenance Contract		Support Plan	Gold	
Support Type	Incident Based		Cost per Incident (\$)	10.00	

You can check to see if the contact is still associated to the account using the **Check Now** link. You have an option to edit the contact details. Except for the account information, you can edit the remaining fields.

Viewing Resolution

Resolution is a documented information on how the issue was resolved. This documented information is very useful to resolve similar issue and can be saved in the knowledge

base. You also have an option to search for resolutions from the solutions database using the **Search Solutions** link.

Time Entry Details

You can view the Time Spent details for the request under this block. You are also provided with an option to Add Time Entry for the request.

1. Click on the **Add Time Entry** button to open the Add Time Entry page.
2. The **Subject** and **Contract details** is displayed at the top of the page.
3. By default, the support rep assigned to the request is displayed in **Support Rep** drop down box. If required, you can choose the support rep from the drop down list. This field is mandatory.
4. Select the **Time Entry Type**. Say, If the support rep has provided necessary information on the product to the requester then the support rep can specify the Time Entry Type as **Product Consulting**. You have an option to also **Add New Time Entry Type**.

Add Time Entry

Subject : Replace battery request

Contract Covered : Maintenance Contract renewed

Support Plan : Gold

Support Type : Incident Based

Cost per Incident (\$): 2.00

Support Rep *

Time Entry Type [Add New Type](#)

Executed Time *

Time Taken To Resolve Hours Minutes

Additional Cost (\$)

Total Cost (\$)

Description

5. Select the date and time when the request was **Executed** using the calendar icon. This field is mandatory.
6. Specify the total **Time Taken to Resolve** the request in Hours and Minutes.
7. If there are any **Additional Cost**, then the same can be provided in the field.
8. The **Total Cost** in \$ is automatically populated on entering the above two fields.
9. Specify the **Description** about the time spent details in the given text box.
10. Click **Save**.

Viewing Activities for the request

The Activities tab appears if there are any tasks or events associated to the request.

Request	Account Info	Resolution	Time Entry	Activities	History
-------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

Tasks New Task					
Title	Associated to	Assigned To	Due Date	Status	Priority
Replace the battery	Request	Jake Thomas	Nov 30, 2010 06:00 PM	Not Started	High

Events New Event					
Title	Associated to	Created By	Start Date	End Date	Location
Team Meeting	Request	administrator	Nov 11, 2010 04:00 PM	Nov 11, 2010 07:00 PM	Conference Hall

You also have an option to add new tasks and events from this page. To view the details of the tasks and events, click on the **Title** link. The page redirects to the **Activities** tab, from where you can perform edit and delete operations. To know more on adding new tasks and events, refer Add Tasks and Add Events.

Viewing Approvals for the request

The Approvals tab appears if the request is submitted for approval to the manager. All mails sent for approval is listed in descending order with details like Sent On, Sent by and Status of approval.

Request	Account Info	Resolution	Time Entry	Activities	Approvals	History
-------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------	------------------	-------------------------

<input type="button" value="Send For Approval"/> <input type="button" value="Show All"/> <input type="button" value="Hide All"/>
Sent On : 29 Sep 2009, 12:27:14 Status : Pending Approval(1/1) Collapse
Sent To : shawn@acme.com Status : Pending Approval
1. Pending Approval on 29 Sep 2009, 12:27:14
Sent On : 29 Sep 2009, 12:26:05 Status : Denied(1/1) Expand
Sent On : 29 Sep 2009, 10:56:56 Status : Approved(1/1) Expand

Viewing History

Every action performed on a request from the time of its creation can be viewed in the History tab. The details displayed in the history tab are in the ascending order with the earliest performed action shown at the top of the page and the latest action at the bottom of the page.

Request Conversations

All the mail transactions between the support rep handling the request and the contact can be viewed as Conversations in the request details page. The conversation are thread in ascending order of time as and when a reply is received for the request.

You have an option to either **View all the Conversations** (both private and public conversations) or only **View Contact Conversation** (public conversation). The conversation thread between the support rep and contact are public conversations whereas the conversation thread between two support reps fall under private conversation.

View All Conversations [View Contact Conversations]		▲ TOP
	From : <u>Jake Thomas</u>	On : Sep 30, 2009 10:11 AM
	From : <u>Jake Thomas</u>	On : Sep 30, 2009 10:12 AM
	From : <u>Jake Thomas</u>	On : Sep 30, 2009 10:13 AM
	From : <u>System</u>	On : Sep 30, 2009 10:14 AM
	From : <u>Sharon Harper</u>	On : Sep 30, 2009 10:27 AM
	From : <u>System</u>	On : Sep 30, 2009 10:27 AM

Representation of Icons in the Conversation block.

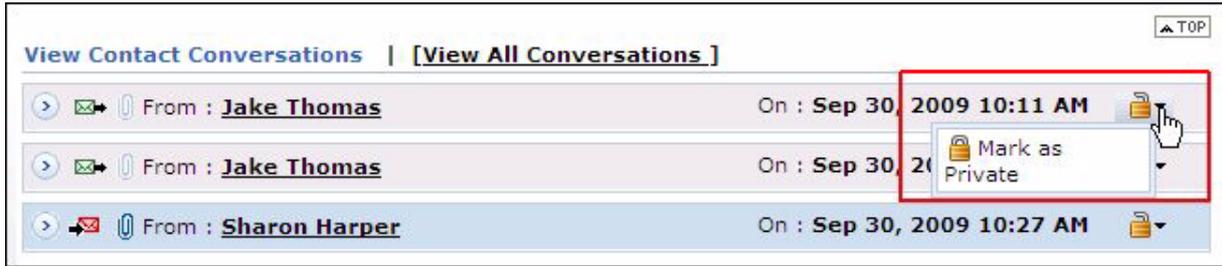
- - select this icon to view the details of a conversation.
- - reply sent by the support rep to the contact.
- - response sent by the contact.
- - no file attachments in the conversation.
- - file is attached in the conversation thread.
- - Conversations between the support reps. These are private conversations and cannot be viewed by the contact.
- - Conversation between the support rep and the contact. These are public conversation and can be viewed by the contact.

Making a Public conversation as Private

Public Conversations by default are conversations between the support rep and the contact, and can be viewed under View Contact Conversation

You also have an option to make the public conversations as private,

1. Click on the **Public** icon .
2. Select **Mark as Private** link.



3. A dialog box appears stating the conversation status has been changed.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The conversation is made private and is indicated with the **Private** icon .

Making a Private conversation as Public

If the support rep is unable to resolve a request and requires further assistance, then the support rep has an option to forward the request to other support reps. By default, the forward sent by the support rep are made private in the conversation thread. Hence the conversation thread between the support reps cannot be viewed by the contact.

If the conversation thread between the support reps involve a solution to the request then you have an option to mark a private conversation as public,

1. Click on the **Private** icon .
2. Select **Mark as Public** link
3. A dialog box appears stating the conversation status has been changed.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The conversation is made Public and is indicated with the icon .

Split As New Request

The conversation thread from the contact can be split into a new request. To split a conversation into a new request,

1. Click **Expand All**  radio button beside the contact conversation thread .



2. Click **Split as New Request** link. The request is split as a new request with consecutive request id.

Note

1. Due by time is not mentioned for the split request.
2. Notes, tasks, conversation thread will not be available in the split request.

Delete a Conversation

You can delete a specific conversation from the contact. To delete a conversation

1. Click **Expand All**  radio button beside the contact conversation thread .
2. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog box appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The conversation is removed from the conversation thread.

You also have an option to View the Child Request History by clicking on the **View History** link.

Start/Stop Request Timer

If a support rep is unable to close a request due to lack of necessary information and resources or if the support rep is unable to identify the problem, then the support rep can move the request to On Hold Status.

On moving a request to On Hold status, the timer for the request is put to a halt. So if the due by time is specified for a request, the time interval for which the request is put On Hold is added to the due by time of the request, on starting the request timer. This avoids unnecessary SLA violation which reflects the efficiency of the support team.

Note



1. You can add Status which reflects the request timer under Admin -> Helpdesk Customizer -> Status
2. You can also change the status of a request to On Hold/Open by performing Inline edit or Edit operation.
3. You cannot stop and start timer for requests that are overdue.

Stop Request Timer

To stop the request timer for a request,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be moved to On Hold status.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions** drop down menu -> **Stop Timer** option. The **Add Reason** pop up window opens.

Add Reason for stopping timer

[[Close](#)]

Request ID - 54

lack of necessary information and resources

5. Enter the relevant reason for stopping the timer in the given text field.
6. Click **Add**.

The request is moved to On Hold status. The reason for stopping the timer is appended to the request history.

Start Request Timer

To restart the request timer for a request,

1. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Start Timer** option. The Add Reason for start timer pop up window opens
2. Enter the relevant reason to stop the timer in the given text field.
3. Click **Add**.

The request is moved to Open Status. The reason for starting the request timer is appended to the request history.

Adding Notes

You can add additional information which includes technical information based on your observations or information to support reps for a particular request using the Add Notes option. You can also add notes to update the status of the request.

Notes can be added either from the request list view or from the request details page. To add notes from the request list view, refer Request List View.

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** of the request to which you would like to add a note.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Add Notes** option. The **Add Note** window pops up displaying the Request Id.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Add Note" with a close button in the top right corner. Inside the window, the text "Request ID - 46" is displayed above a text input field. The input field contains the text "unable to reach the customer. will call him tomorrow". Below the input field, there are two checkboxes: "Show this notes to Contact also" and "E-mail the support rep for notes addition". At the bottom of the window is a button labeled "Add Note".

5. Enter the content in the text box as show above.
6. The note added can be made public or private.
 - **Public Notes:** Public notes can be viewed by the contact and support reps
 - **Private Notes:** Private notes can be viewed only by the Support reps.
7. By default, the notes are private, but can be made public on selecting **Show this notes to Contact also** check box.
8. You can also notify the support rep assigned to the request about the addition of note on selecting **E-mail the support rep for notes addition** check box.
9. Click **Add Note** button. The note is added at the bottom of the request along with a date and time stamp. The name of the person who added the note is also displayed.

You can add any number of notes to a request. The added notes is displayed in the descending order with recently added note first. You also have options to edit and delete the notes.

Adding Reminders

You have an option to add reminders for a request using Add Reminders option. All the pending tasks specific to the request can be added as reminders. On adding, these reminders get displayed under My Reminders in the Home page.

To add new task to the reminder list,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to add reminder.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Add Reminder** option. The Reminders page opens.

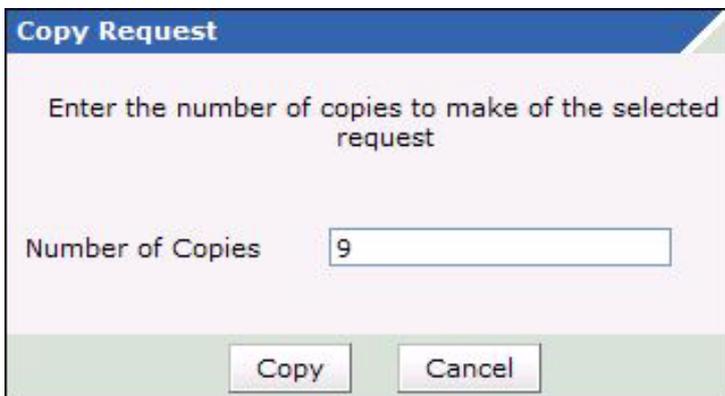
3. Specify the summary in the provided text field.
4. Select the **Date** and **Time** for the reminder. The date field is set to today's date and the time is set by default as 11:00 AM. Change the date and time settings. To change the **date**, select the calendar icon and choose the date of your choice. From the time drop down box, choose the time at which the task is scheduled.
5. Select the reminder duration say before 1 hr or 2 hr from the **Remind me before** combo box. By default the message would be **Never**.
6. Click **Add**. The new reminder is added to the Reminders list in the home page.

To know how to perform further actions on the reminder such as changing the status and deleting the reminders, refer Reminders.

Duplicate Requests

If a single request involves multiple issues and to solve the issues it requires more than a single support rep then the request can be duplicated and each duplicated request can be assigned to different support reps. Unlike tasks, where the owner of the request assigns tasks to different support reps, duplicating the request makes it easier for the support rep to take ownership and complete the tasks independently.

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request details page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be duplicated.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Duplicate Request** option. The **Copy Request** window pops up,



4. Enter the **Number of Copies** in the given text field. The maximum value you can enter is 9. If you need more than 9 copies of the request, then you need to invoke **Copy Request** again.
5. Click **Copy** button. The copies of the request is assigned with a new request ID that uniquely identifies them. The rest of the information such as the Subject, Description and the request parameters, is retained as it is.

<p>Note</p> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Any Notes, Tasks or Conversation thread added in the original request will not be present in the duplicated request. 2. The Created Date and Due by Date is different from that of the original request. 3. You can edit the content to specify only necessary information and assign the request to appropriate support reps.
--	---

Printing Requests

You can print and preview the entire request content using Print Preview option. To print a request,

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be printed.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Print Preview** option. The pop up of the request in printable format opens. The page displays request details, resolution and request history of the request.
4. Click Ctrl + p to print the request.

Canned Responses

Canned Response are pre defined email notification for frequent replies, with which the support reps can reply to emails with ease. Other than customized template for individual mails [refer notification rules], canned response can be sent to the frequently raised requests. It reduces the response time and also provides a personal touch to the request. The response can be made private or public according to your convenience. You can add, manage and share a canned response.

Manage Canned Response

Manage Canned Response gives the list view of all the available canned response along with its template name and access ability. From the this page you can add, edit and delete the canned response.

1. Click on the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of a request.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions** drop down menu -> **Manage Canned Responses** option under Canned Responses block. The page opens to view the list of available canned response. From this page, you can add, edit and delete a canned response.

Add New Canned Response

To add a new canned response,

1. Click on **Add New Canned Response** link available on the right hand side of the page. The New Canned Response page opens.

 Note	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. You can also add a New Canned Response from Add New drop down link. 2. Alternatively, you can also add a new canned response from Actions drop down menu -> Add New Canned Response option.
---	--

2. Specify a unique **Name** for the canned response. This field is mandatory.
3. Enter a brief **Description** of the canned response in the field provided.
4. You can customize the **Subject** and **Message** content by typing the text of your choice and also adding other variables that you wish to display as a part of the subject or message content.
5. Click the corresponding variable from the list box beside the respective field to add variables.

New Canned Response

Name *

Description

Customize Subject and Message

Subject *

Choose Subject variables

- Choose Option --
- Request ID
- Created Date
- Due By Date
- Subject

Message

Dear \$ContactName,

This is an acknowledgment mail for your request. Your request has been created with id \$RequestId. The subject of the request is : \$Title. As this is an automated response, you need not reply to this mail.

Please get back to us for any further clarifications.

regards,
Support team.

Choose content variables

- Description
- Status
- Priority
- Mode
- Level
- Category
- Sub Category
- Item
- Group
- Contact Name
- Contact Mobile
- Contact Phone
- Contact Email

Allow all Support Reps to access this template

- The response can be made either private or public accordingly to your convenience. You can share the canned response with other support reps by enabling **Allow all Support Reps to access this template** check box.
- Click **Save**. If you do not wish to add a canned response then click **Cancel**.

Editing Canned Response

You can edit the canned response from the manage canned response list view page. To edit a canned response,

- Click the **Edit** icon  beside the Template name you wish to edit.
- From the Edit Canned Response form, edit the details and **Save** the changes.

Deleting Canned Response

You can delete the canned response from the manage canned response list view page. To delete a canned response,

- Click the **Delete** icon  beside the Template Name you wish to delete. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears.
- Click **Ok** to proceed. The template is deleted from the available list.

Replying via Canned Response

You can reply to a request (frequently raised) using canned response by,

1. From the request details page, click **Reply** button to open the **Reply To Contact** pop up.
2. By default, the **Subject** and the **Description** fields are pre populated with the specified values.
3. If the email address of the contact is specified in the application then the same is populated in the **To** field.
4. You can also send the same information to more than one person by specifying the mail address in **CC** field.
5. If you do not wish to disclose the recipient then specify the mail address in the **BCC** field.
6. Click **Attach a file** button to attach relevant files.
7. Select **Canned Responses** drop down to open the list of available canned response.
8. Select the canned response you wish to use from the list. A alert message stating that the Subject and description field will be overwritten appears.
9. Click **Ok** to proceed.
10. The customized subject and message content is displayed.
11. Click **Send** to send the mail to the concern person. Click **Save** if you wish to save the mail to edit it in future.
12. Click **Save and Send for review** if you wish to save the mail and send it for review to the concern authority. Enter the mail address of the concern authority to review the reply in the **To** field. If you do not wish to reply to the request, click **Cancel**.

Adding Resolution

Resolution is a documented information on how the issue was resolved. This documented information is very useful to resolve similar issue and can be saved in the knowledge base. You also have an option to search for resolutions from the solutions database using the **Search Solutions** link.

To add resolution for a request,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to add the resolution.
3. From the request details page, click on the **Resolution** tab [OR] Select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Enter Resolution** option.
4. Check if resolution already exists for the request, if not specify the resolution in the text field.

The screenshot displays the 'Resolution' tab for a request with ID 74, titled 'Iphone display is not working'. The interface includes a header with 'Edit', 'Close', 'Assign', 'Actions', and 'Reply' buttons. The 'Actions' dropdown menu is open, showing options like 'Stop Timer', 'Add Notes', 'Add Task', 'Add Reminder', 'Merge Request', 'Duplicate Request', 'Delete', and 'Print Preview'. The 'Resolution' section is highlighted with a red box, and the 'Enter Resolution' option is also highlighted with a red box and a mouse cursor. Below the 'Resolution' tab, there is a rich text editor with a toolbar containing various formatting options. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Save', 'Save and Add To Solutions', 'Save And Close', and 'Cancel'. A checkbox labeled 'Add Time Entry' is also visible.

5. You can also search for solutions that might help you resolve the issue described in the request using **Search Solution** link. To know more refer Search Solutions.
6. You can also add the Time Spent Entry for the request by enabling **Add Time Entry** check box. To know more on adding a Time Entry, refer Time Entry.
7. **Save** the resolution. You can see the resolution getting displayed in this page else click **Save and Close** button.
8. If you wish to add the resolution to the solutions database, then click **Save and Add to Solutions**.

1. The page navigates to the **New Solution** form where the **Subject** and **Content** fields are populated automatically.
2. You can **Attach** relevant files to the solution.
3. Select the relevant parent topic from **Topic** drop down menu.
4. If required enter keywords for the solution in **Keywords** text box.
5. You can also publish this solution in Self-Service Portal on enabling the check box.

Edit Resolution

You can edit the existing solution using Edit Resolution option.

1. From the request details page, click the **Resolution** tab.
2. Click **Edit link** on the right hand side of the page. The resolution page opens in editable format.
3. Modify the details and **Save** the changes.

Alternatively,

1. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Edit Resolution** option.
2. The resolution page opens in editable format.
3. Modify the details and **Save** the changes.

Search Solutions

From the request, you can search for solutions that might help you solve the issue described in the request.

To search for solutions,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request for which you want to search for solution.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Search Solutions** option. The search solutions page with a Search text box opens as shown below.

Solutions > All Solutions > Search Solutions "how do i reset the admin password"

All Solutions

Request ID : 75
Category : Not Assigned
Level : Not Assigned

Status : Open
Priority : High

reset the admin password Search

Browse by Topics ▼ Cancel

Copy to resolution 0 - 0 of 0 25 per page

Subject	Topic Name	Views	Created On	Public	Created By
No Solutions Available					

4. Provide a search string in the **Search** text field and click **Search** or press **Enter**. The solutions that match the search string is displayed.

Submit For Approval

If a request requires formal approval from the manager before you act upon it, you can submit the request for approval using this option. On submitting a request for approval, an Approval tab appears in the request details page. Your manager will receive a Request for Approval mail with a link to approve or reject the request.

To submit the request for approval,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to send for approval.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **Submit for Approval** option. The **Submit For Approval** page.
4. Specify the **To** address. This field is mandatory.
5. If required you can edit the **Subject** and specify relevant subject text in the given field. This field is also mandatory.
6. Specify the relevant **Description** in the given text field. The **\$ApprovalLink** is a variable and should be available in the mail to replace the variable with the link where you have the request details.
7. **Send** the mail for approval.

Submit For Approval [Close]

* To

* Subject

Description

Hi Shawn,

I got a request from Ruth Hinks for Extended Warranty Card. Your approval is required for a Request to act upon.

The details of the Request can be found at [\\$ApprovalLink](#)

Regards,
Bill Thomas

On sending the mail, the manager receives a **Request for approval** mail with a link. Clicking on the link opens a form with Approve and Reject option along with the request details.

The manager has to **Approve or Reject** the request based on the requirement. And save the details.

Action Approve Reject

Comments

Request Details

Sub Category	Not Assigned	Priority	High
Item	Not Assigned	Mode	Not Assigned
Level	Not Assigned	Created Date	Sep 28, 2009 05:32 PM
Due Date	Sep 29, 2009 09:32 AM	Product	Facilities Desk
Created By	administrator		

An **Approvals** tab appears in the request details page beside the History tab. All the mails sent for approval is listed in descending order with details like **Sent On**, **Sent To** and **Status** of approval.

Once the request is approved by the manager the status of the request changes to **Approved**. If rejected by the manager the status of the request changes to **Denied** as shown below,

Request	Account Info	Resolution	Time Entry	Activities	Approvals	History
<input type="button" value="Send For Approval"/> <input type="button" value="Show All"/> <input type="button" value="Hide All"/>						
Sent On : 29 Sep 2009, 12:27:14		Status :  Pending Approval(1/1)			Collapse	
Sent To : shawn@acme.com		Status : Pending Approval				
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Pending Approval on 29 Sep 2009, 12:27:14 						
Sent On : 29 Sep 2009, 12:26:05		Status :  Denied(1/1)			Expand	
Sent On : 29 Sep 2009, 10:56:56		Status :  Approved(1/1)			Expand	

View Contact Details

While attending to a request, you might want to contact the customer for additional information. To view the contact details,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request for which you want to view the contact details.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **View Contact Details** option. The Contact Details page pops up.

	Sharon Harper Engineer
E-mail	sharon@acme.com
Phone	925-852-2588
Mobile	925-852-2592
Account Name	Acme Corporations
Description	Engineer

Contact Details pop up contains details such as, name of the contact, job title, email address, phone and mobile number of the contact, Account to which the contact belongs and Description.

Alternatively you can also view the contact details by clicking on the contact name in the request details page as shown,

Edit Close ▼ Assign ▼		
ID : 77 - Iphone display is not working		
Created On : Sep 29, 2009 12:55 PM		
Contact :  Sharon Harper (Acme Corporations)		
 925-852-2588	 925-852-2592	 Send Invite
Request	Account Info	Resolution
Time Entry	History	
Subject : Iphone display is not working		

View Requests by Contact

You can view all the requests raised by a contact from the request details page. Say, you are resolving a request raised by Sharon Harper and would like to view all the request she has raised into SupportCenter Plus application then,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click on the **Subject** link of the request.
3. From the request details page, select **Actions drop down** menu -> **View Requests by Contact** option. All requests raised by Sharon Harper is listed.

Open Requests by Sharon Harper				
Showing <input type="text" value="Open Requests"/>		Showing 1- 17 of 17		Showing <input type="text" value="17"/> per page
Subject	Assigned To	Due By	Status	Date
Iphone display is not workin...	administrator	Sep 29, 2009 01:55 PM	Open	Sep 29, 2009 12:55 PM
Iphone display is not workin...	administrator	Sep 29, 2009 01:18 PM	Open	Sep 29, 2009 12:18 PM
how do i reset the admin passw...	Jake Thomas	Sep 29, 2009 09:32 AM	Open	Sep 28, 2009 05:32 PM
Iphone display is not working	Jake Thomas	Sep 28, 2009 05:35 PM	Open	Sep 28, 2009 04:35 PM
Cannot restore the backup data...	Ruth Hinks	Sep 29, 2009 11:26 AM	Open	Sep 28, 2009 03:26 PM
Cannot restore the backup data...	Ruth Hinks	Sep 29, 2009 11:26 AM	Open	Sep 28, 2009 03:26 PM
Iphone display is not workin...	administrator	Sep 25, 2009 12:16 PM	Open	Sep 25, 2009 11:16 AM
Re: [Request ID :##65##] : I...	administrator	-	Open	Sep 25, 2009 11:19 AM
Iphone display is not working	Jake Thomas	-	Open	Sep 25, 2009 10:32 AM

From this page, you can view the requests list based on filters and also view the details of a request by clicking on the Subject link.

Replying to the Contact

Sending a response to the contact is required when a new request is received. Also, when a support rep is ready to close a request, the same can be notified to the contact so that if the contact has any concerns about the same, he/she can raise the issue. The support rep can then address the issue and close the request after the contact is completely satisfied.

To respond to the contact,

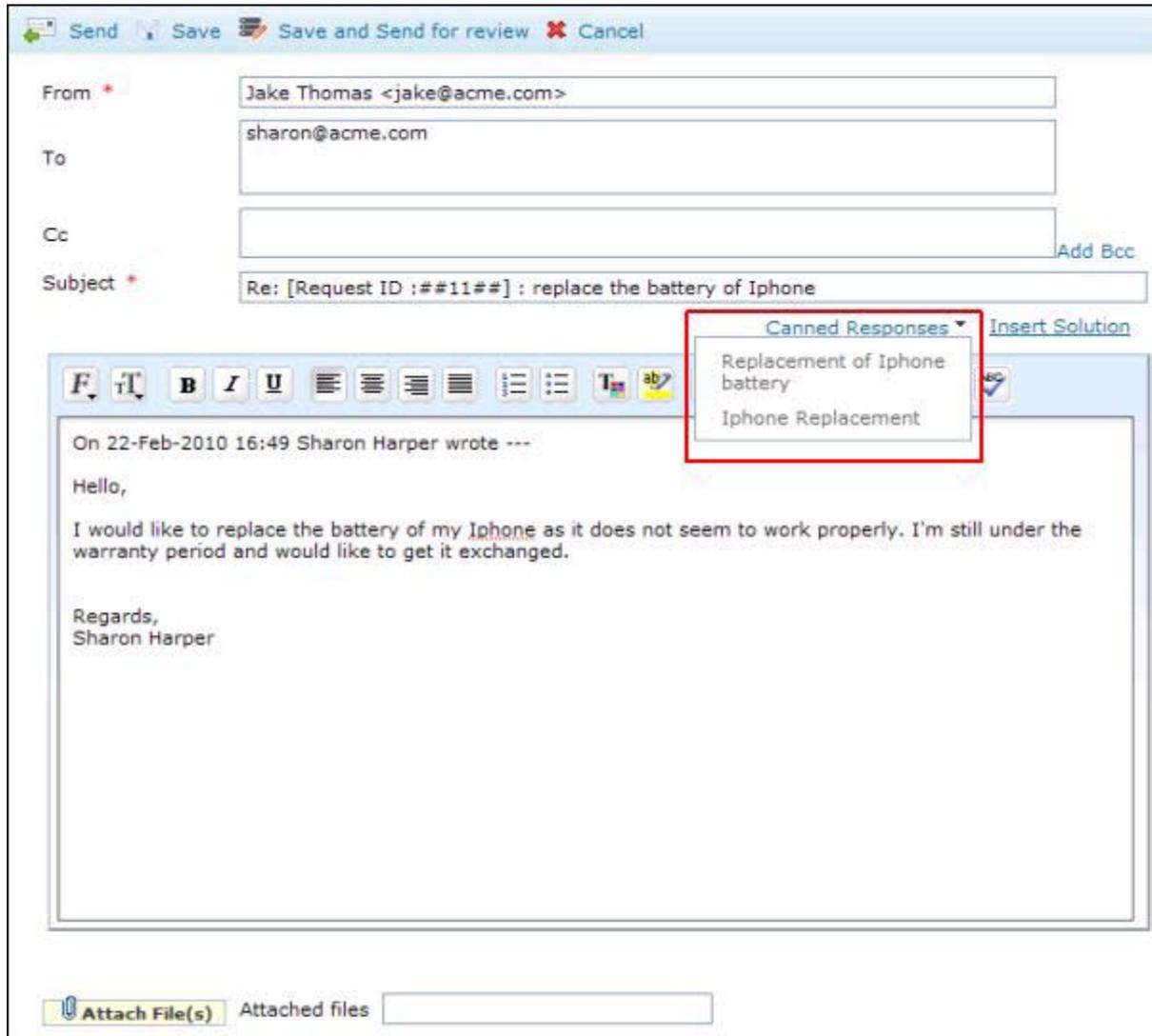
1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be replied.
3. From the request details page, select **Reply drop down** menu -> **Reply** option. The **Mail to Contact** form pops up. Alternatively, you can click the **Reply** link below the Description from the request details page.
4. The **From** address is pre populated with the Reply-To mail address configured under Mail Configurations under Admin module.
5. If the email address of the contact is specified in the application then the same is populated in the **To** field.
6. You can also send the same information to more than one person by specifying the mail address in **CC** field.
7. If you do not wish to disclose the recipient then specify the mail address in the **BCC** field.
8. By default, the **Subject** and **Description** fields are pre populated with the specified data.

Warning

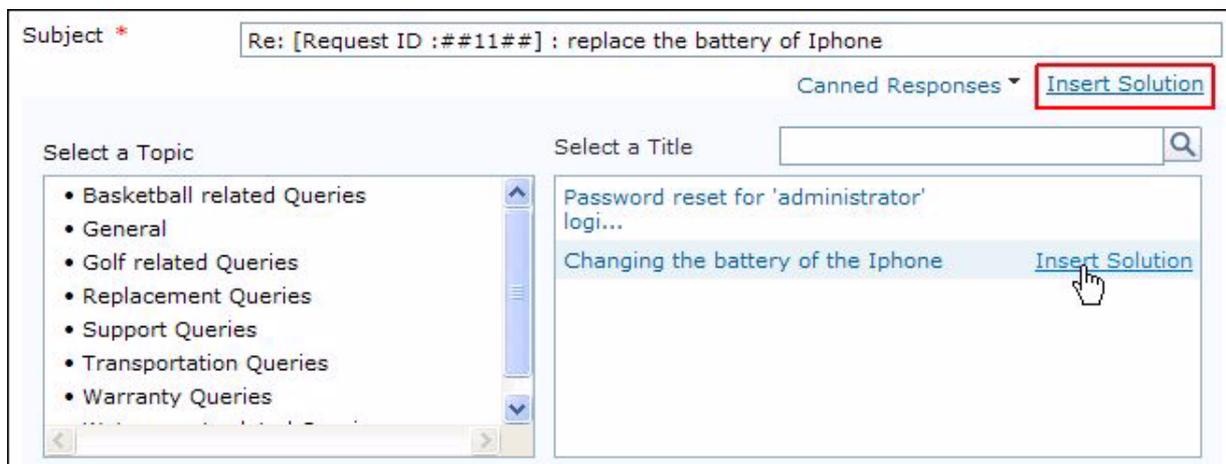


While editing the subject of the email, ensure that the request ID value remains intact with the # symbols beside it.

9. You can customize the message and content using Canned Response. Select the **Canned Response** from the available list. A message alert stating that the Subject and Description fields will be overwritten appears. Click **Ok** to proceed. To know more refer Canned Response.

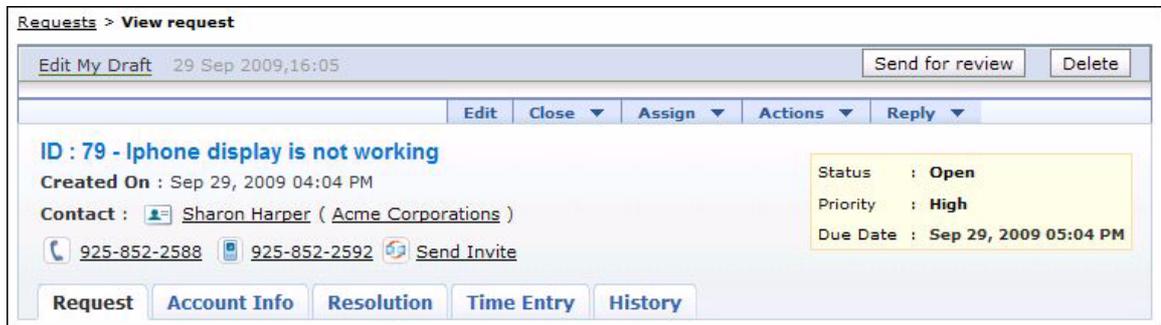


10. You can insert solutions directly into the application using **Insert Solution** link. Select a Topic. The corresponding solutions title under the topic is displayed. Click **Insert Solution** link beside the specific topic. The solution is added automatically as the message content.



11. Click **Attach File(s)** to add files as attachments to the mail.
12. Click **Send** to send the mail to the concern person.

13. You have an option to **Save** the request as draft. The email saved as drafts can be viewed, edited, deleted and sent for review from the request details page as shown below,



13. Click **Save and Send the request for review** if you wish to save the mail and send it for review to the concern authority. Enter the mail address of the concern authority to review the reply in the **To** field.

The responses that have been sent to the contact can be viewed as **conversations** in the request details view.

Forwarding Requests to Support Reps

If the support rep is unable to resolve a request and requires further assistance, then the support rep has an option to forward the request to other support reps. The conversation thread between the support reps are private and hence cannot be viewed by the contact. To know more, refer Request Conversations.

To forward a request,

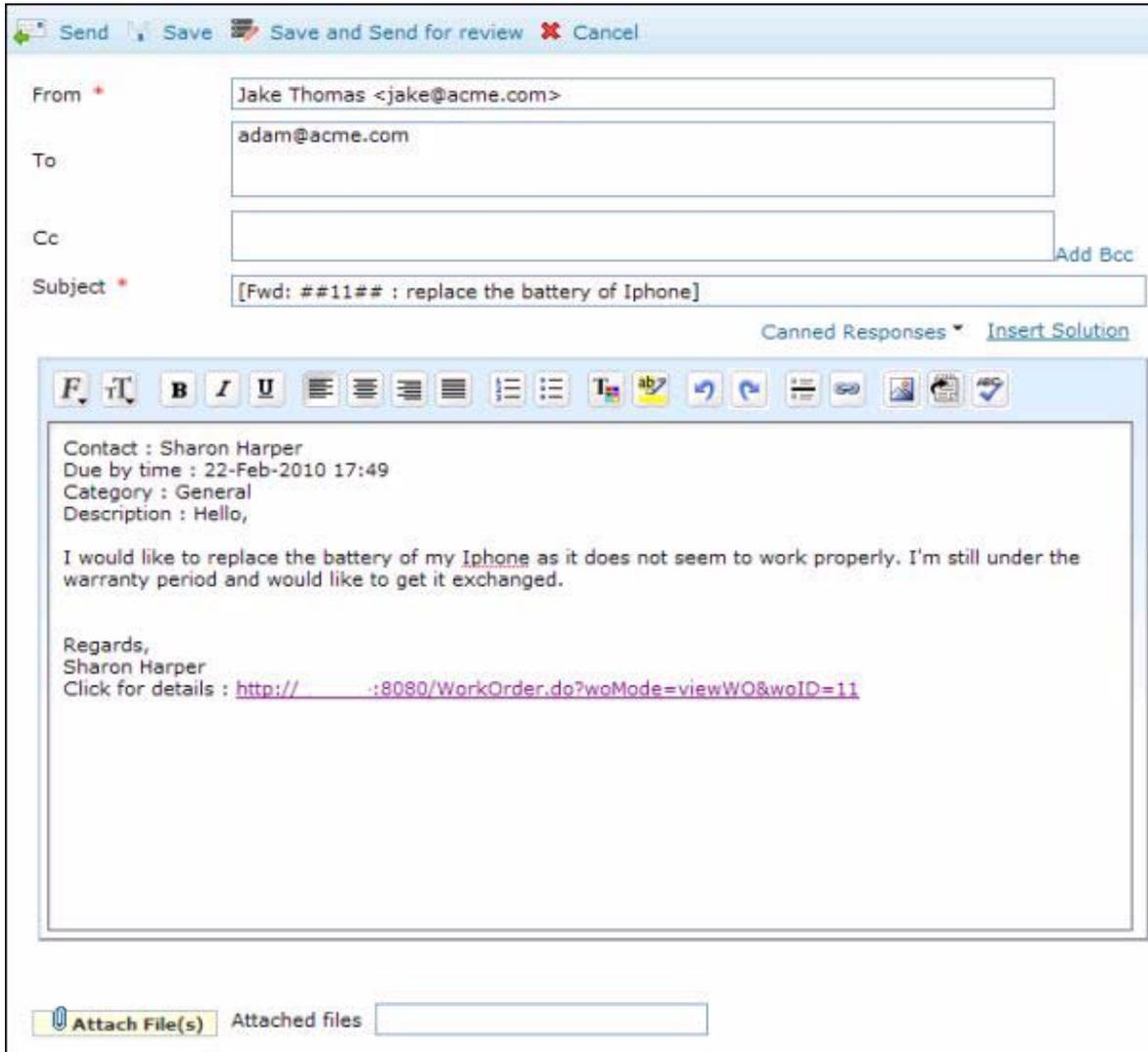
1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the Request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be forwarded.
3. From the request details page, select **Reply drop down** menu -> **Forward the Request** option. The **Forward Request** page pops up.
4. The **From** address is pre populated with the Reply-To mail address configured under Mail Configurations under Admin module.
5. If the email address of the contact is specified in the application then the same is populated in the **To** field.
6. You can also send the same information to more than one person by specifying the mail address in **CC** field.
7. If you do not wish to disclose the recipient then specify the mail address in the **BCC** field.
8. By default, the **Subject** and **Description** fields are pre populated with the specified data.

Warning

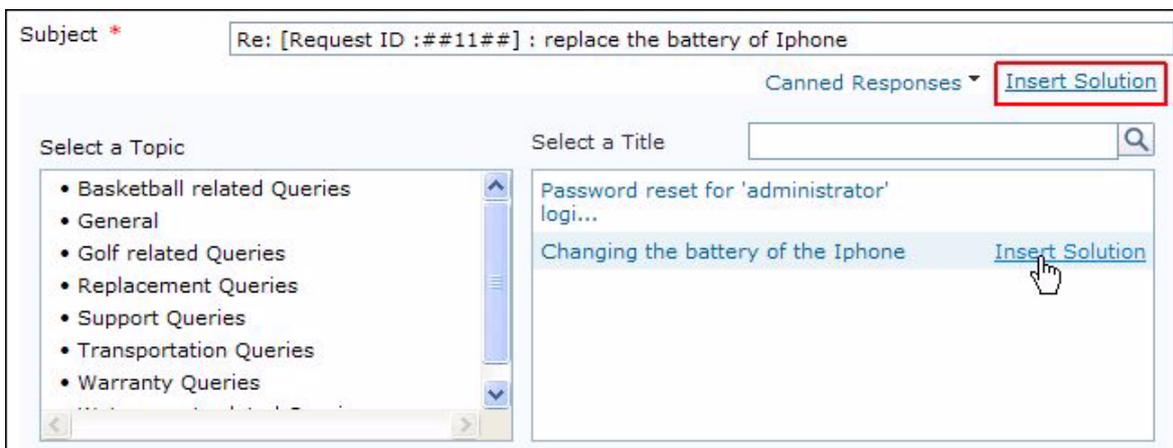


While editing the subject of the email, ensure that the request ID value remains intact with the # symbols beside it.

9. You can customize the message and content using Canned Response. Select the **Canned Response** from the available list. A message alert stating that the Subject and Description fields will be overwritten appears. Click **Ok** to proceed. To know more refer Canned Response.



10. You can insert solutions directly into the application using **Insert Solution** link. Select a Topic. The corresponding solutions title under the topic is displayed. Click **Insert Solution** link beside the specific topic. The solution is added automatically as the message content.



11. Click **Attach File(s)** button to add files as attachments to the mail.
12. Click **Send** to send the mail to the concern support rep.
13. You also have an option to **Save** the request as draft. The email saved as drafts

can be viewed, edited, deleted and sent for review from the request details page as shown below,

Requests > View request

Edit My Draft 29 Sep 2009,16:05 Send for review Delete

Edit Close Assign Actions Reply

ID : 79 - Iphone display is not working

Created On : Sep 29, 2009 04:04 PM

Contact : Sharon Harper (Acme Corporations)

925-852-2588 925-852-2592 Send Invite

Status : **Open**
 Priority : **High**
 Due Date : **Sep 29, 2009 05:04 PM**

Request Account Info Resolution Time Entry History

13. Click **Save and Send the request for review** if you wish to save the mail and send it for review to the concern authority. Enter the mail address of the concern authority to review the reply in the **To** field.

E-mail the Support Rep

A support rep can be notified when a new request is assigned or an already existing request is reassigned to him/her using this option.

To email a support rep,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be replied.
3. From the request details page, select **Reply drop down** menu -> **E-mail the Support Rep** option. The **Mail to Support Rep** form pops up.
4. The **From** address is pre populated with the Reply-To mail address configured under Mail Configurations under Admin module.
5. If the email address of the contact is specified in the application then the same is populated in the **To** field.
6. You can also send the same information to more than one person by specifying the mail address in **CC** field.
7. If you do not wish to disclose the recipient then specify the mail address in the **BCC** field.
8. By default, the **Subject** and **Description** fields are pre populated with the specified data.

	<p>Warning While editing the subject of the email, ensure that the request ID value remains intact with the # symbols beside it.</p>
---	---

9. You can customize the message and content using Canned Response. Select the **Canned Response** from the available list. A message alert stating that the Subject and Description fields will be overwritten appears. Click **Ok** to proceed. To know more refer Canned Response.
10. You can insert solutions directly into the application using **Insert Solution** link. Select a Topic. The corresponding solutions title under the topic is displayed. Click **Insert Solution** link beside the specific topic. The solution is added automatically as the message content.
11. Click **Attach File(s)** button to add files as attachments to the mail.
12. Click **Send** to send the mail to the concern support rep.
13. You have an option to **Save** the request as draft. The email saved as drafts can be viewed, edited, deleted and sent for review from the request details page as shown below,

Requests > View request

Edit My Draft 29 Sep 2009,16:05 Send for review Delete

Edit Close Assign Actions Reply

ID : 79 - Iphone display is not working

Created On : Sep 29, 2009 04:04 PM Status : **Open**

Contact : Sharon Harper (Acme Corporations) Priority : **High**

925-852-2588 925-852-2592 Send Invite Due Date : Sep 29, 2009 05:04 PM

Request Account Info Resolution Time Entry History

- Click **Save and Send the request for review** if you wish to save the mail and send it for review to the concern authority. Enter the mail address of the concern authority to review the reply in the **To** field.

SMS the Support Rep

You can also notify the support rep through SMS when a new request or an already existing request is assigned to him/her using this option.

To send an SMS to a support rep,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to be replied.
3. From the request details page, select **Reply drop down** menu -> **SMS the Support Rep** option. The **Mail to Support Rep** form pops up.
4. The **From** address is pre populated with the Reply-To mail address configured under Mail Configurations under Admin module.
5. If the SMS Id of the contact is specified in the application then the same is populated in the **To** field.
6. You can also send the same information to more than one person by specifying the SMS Ids in **CC** field.
7. If you do not wish to disclose the recipient then specify the SMS Ids in the **BCC** field.
8. The **Subject** field is pre populated with the request Id.
9. The **Description** contains the contact name, due by date and title of the request. You can modify the Subject and Description as required.
10. Click **Attach File(s)** to add files as attachments to the mail.
11. Click **Send**. You have an option to **Save** the request as draft and **Save and Send the request for review**. The email saved as drafts can be viewed, edited, deleted and sent for review from the request details page.

Solutions

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus application provides a facility to record solutions of the frequently (common) raised requests. The recorded solutions function as a knowledge base of solutions. Thus, when you receive a request, refer to the recorded solutions and solve it. This reduces the turnaround time in attending to the requests generated by the contacts and closing the same.

All contacts and support reps who have permissions to view the solutions knowledge base can access this section of the application. The SupportCenter Plus administrator can assign access privileges to the various support reps for the solutions section. This access privilege can vary from just view only privilege to full control privilege. For setting the access privileges to support reps, refer to the Configuring Support Reps and Configuring Roles sections.

You can access the solutions even without logging into the application, but will be able to view only those solutions that are published in the Self Service Portal. These solutions have to be approved by the concern support reps. The contacts can be restricted from viewing all the solutions in Self Service Portal using the Topics Template. To access the knowledge base directly without having to login to the application, type the URL provided below in the address bar of the browser:

`http://<server name>:<port number>/portal (OR)`

`http://<server name>:<port number>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd`

where, the <server name> is the name of the server where SupportCenter Plus is installed and <port number> is the port where the application is running.

Solution List View

The solution list view page displays all the solution configured in SupportCenter Plus application. The page includes various useful functionality such as,

- option to view solution based on filters.
- customize columns to be displayed in the list view.
- set the number of solutions to be displayed per page.
- search for solutions using search string or solution ID.
- adding and managing topics.

On clicking to the Solutions tab in the header pane, the page re-directs to the solution list view page,



Representation of icons in the list view,

- - solutions is approved by the concern support rep.
- - solutions that are submitted for approval to the concern support rep.
- - solutions that are not submitted for approval.
- - solutions that are rejected by the concern support rep.
- - file is attached to the solution.
- - no file is attached to the solution.
- - column-wise search option to search for solutions based on subject, topic name and so on.
- - select the columns to be displayed in the list view.

From the solutions list view page you can,

1. **Manage Topics:** Organize your solutions in a logical manner by grouping them under specific topics and sub-topics. You can add, rename and move topics and sub-topics to different parent topics. [Refer Managing Topics]

Solutions > Manage Topics << Back

Manage Topics

[Add New Topic](#)

	Topic name	Solutions	Actions		
• Basketball related Queries	0		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• General	2		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Golf related Queries	0		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Replacement Queries	0		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Support Queries	2		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Transportation Queries	0		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Warranty Queries	0		Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Water-sport related Queries	0		Rename	Change Parent	Delete

- Topics Template:** Create topic template by grouping specific topics and assigning it to an account. The account can view solutions pertaining to the topics under the assigned topic template. [Refer Topics Template]
- Search Solutions:** Search for requests instantly on entering the solution ID and search keywords. [Refer Search Solutions]

- Browse by Topics:** Browse for solution under each topic specified under Manage Topics. [Refer Browsing Solutions by Topics]
- Set the number of solutions per page and navigation button:** You can set the number of solutions to be displayed in the solution list view.

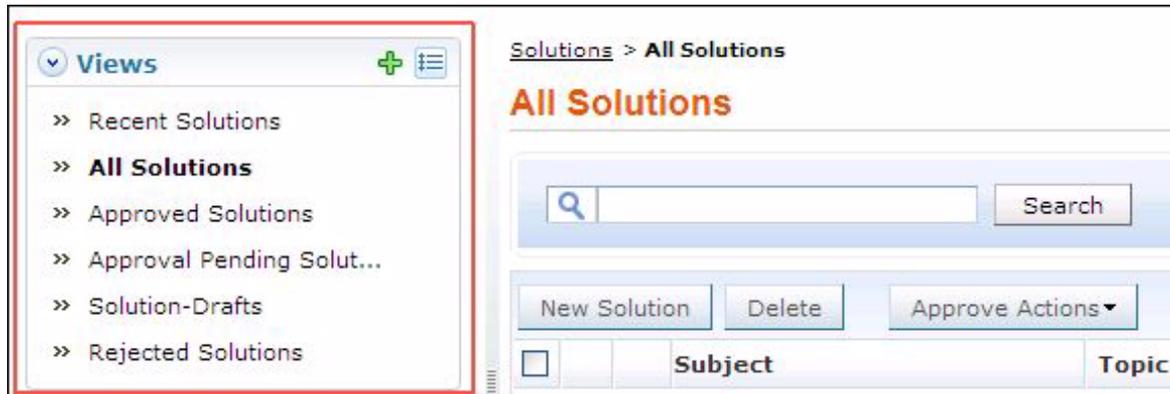
Name	Created On	Pub	By
Queries	Sep 28, 2009 05:32 PM	Yes	administrator
Queries	Oct 5, 2009 04:35 PM	Yes	administrator

- Custom and Manage Views:** Customize the page to display solutions using Custom View option. You can create criteria to filter solutions accumulated in the solution list view page. Thus sorting and viewing solutions based on your requirements. [Refer Custom Views]

- - create filters to customize and organize your solution list view. The filters created can be made public or private.
 - - View, edit and delete customized views.
7. **Solution based on filters:** View specific group of solution through pre defined filters. [Refer Solutions Based on Filters]
 8. **New Solution:** Create new solution and group them to a specific topics. [Refer Adding New Solutions]
 9. **Bulk Operation:**
 - **Delete:** Delete bulk solutions. [Refer Deleting Solutions]
 - **Approval Actions drop down:** Options to approve and reject bulk solutions. [Refer Approve/Reject solutions]

Solutions based on filters

You can view solutions based on filter from the solution list view page. In addition, you can also create new filters using the **Custom View** option to place solutions in specific groups. There are some pre defined filters in SupportCenter Plus as shown,



- **Recent Solutions** Lists all the recently added solution.
- **All Solutions** Lists all the solutions irrespective of the status.
- **Approved Solutions** Lists all the solution which have been approved by the concern support rep.
- **Approval Pending Solutions** Lists the solutions that are yet to be approved by the concern support rep on submitting for approval.
- **Solution - Drafts** Displays all the solutions which are not approved and has to be sent for approval.
- **Rejected Solutions** Displays all the solutions rejected by the concern support rep.

Custom Views

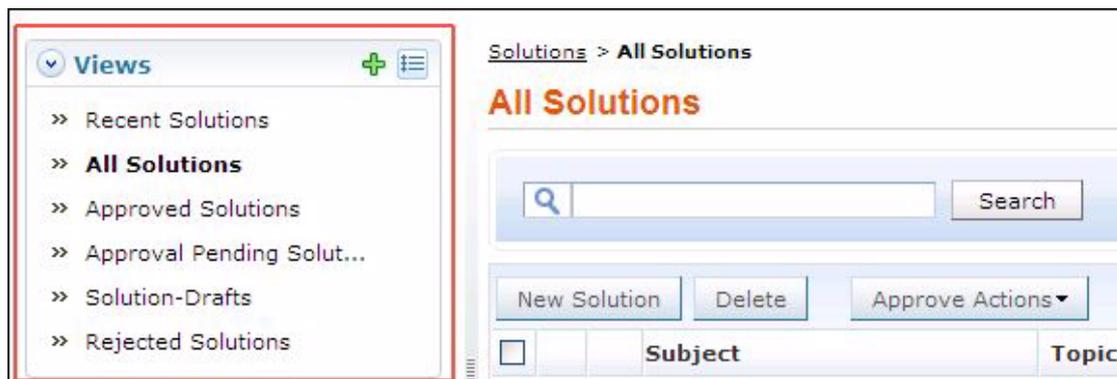
You can create your own customized page to display solutions using Custom View option. You can specify the criteria to filter the solutions accumulated in your solution list view page. Thus helping you to sort and view solutions based on your requirement.

- Create Custom View
- Manage View

Creating Custom View

If you want to view all the solutions under "General" topic in the application through Custom View.

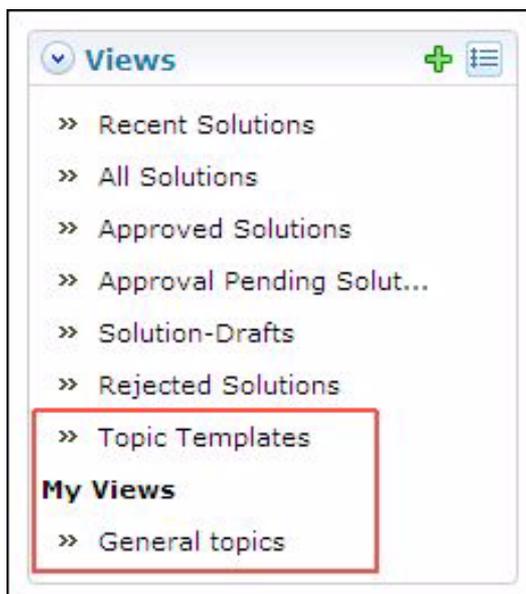
1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solution list view page.
2. Click on **Create Custom View** icon . The **Add Custom View** page opens.



3. In the Add Custom View page, specify a **View Name** like "General topics" solutions. This field is mandatory.
4. If you are the administrator and want this custom view to be available only when you log in, select the check box beside **Make this view as private custom view**. The custom view is made private. By default, the custom view for an administrator is public. If you are a support rep without administrator login privilege then by default the created custom view is private. The option to "Make this view as private custom view" is not available.
5. In the **Advance Filtering** block, select the criteria to be filtered from **Column** drop down along with its matching **Criteria**. For instance, select "Topic" from Column drop down and "is" from criteria.
6. Click on **Choose** button.
7. From **Select Column Data** pop up enter "General" in the text field. You can select options based on your selected column and criteria.

8. Click **Add to Filter** button to save the filter criteria details. The filter criteria is listed in **Filter Set** block.
9. If you wish to add more filter conditions to this view then, select the required column, criteria & conditions of the filter.
10. If there are more than two criteria, specify **AND** or **OR** conditions by enabling either of the two radio buttons.
11. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Add New** to save and add another custom view.

The Custom View is now displayed under **Views** in the solution list view page. The custom view marked as private is listed under My Views and the public custom view is displayed along with the predefined filters.



Manage Custom Views

You can view all your customized view under Manage Custom Views. From this page you can add, edit and delete a custom view.

1. Click on **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solution list view page.
2. Click **Manage Custom View** icon . The **Custom View** page opens listing all the created custom views.
 -  - indicates the custom view is public and can be viewed by all users.
 -  - indicates the custom view is private and can be viewed only by the creator of the custom view.

Solutions > Custom Views

Custom Views

New Custom View Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter Name	Created By
<input type="checkbox"/> 	 General topics	administrator
<input type="checkbox"/> 	 Topic Templates	administrator

Note

1. If you are the administrator then you can view all your customized private and public views.
2. If you are a support rep then you can add only private custom views.

Edit Custom Views

To edit a custom view,

1. Click the **edit** icon  beside the filter name you wish to edit.
2. From **Edit Custom View** page, edit the details.
3. Click **Save**. You can also add a new custom view by clicking **Save and Add New** button.

Delete Custom Views

To delete custom views,

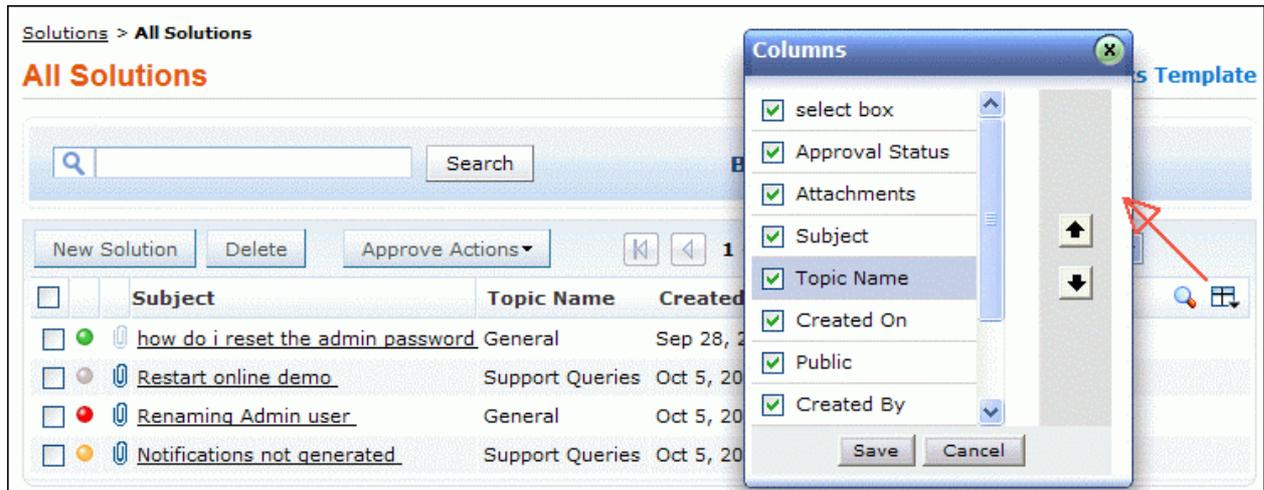
1. Select the check box beside the custom views to be deleted. The administrator has the privilege to create and delete public views.
2. Click **Delete** button. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The Custom View is deleted from the list.

Customizing Solution List View

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus gives you an option to customize the solution list view page by including columns of your choice.

To customize columns displayed in the list view,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solution list view page.
2. Click on **Column Chooser** icon . The available columns that can be displayed in the list view pops up. The columns that are currently visible in the list view is indicated with selected check box.



3. To remove a column, de-select the check box and click Save.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the check box beside the column you wish to add. Click Save.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**. Only the selected columns are added in the solution list view.

Search Solutions

You can search for solutions based on the keywords, solution ID and column wise search based on solution parameters such as subject, topic name, view status and so on from the solutions list view.

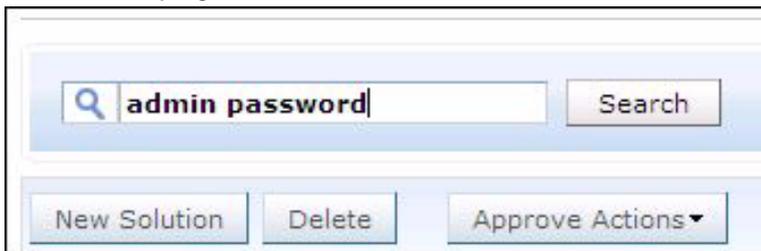
Search Solutions based on

- Keywords and Search Strings
- Column-wise search

Search solutions based on Keywords and Search String

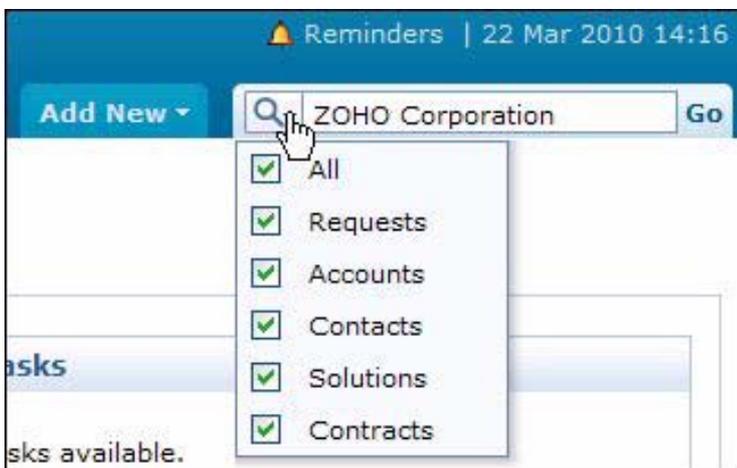
Solutions tab

1. Click **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solution list view page.
2. Enter the keyword in the search field provided.
3. Click **Search**. All solutions that match the keyword provided by you in the search field is displayed.



Performing a Global Search

You can also perform a **Global Search** that searches the keyword in every module at one go. Advance search options such as, Wildcard search, phrase search, boolean search, field specific search and much more, can be used to make the search effective. To know more, click Search Tips.



Column-wise search of solutions

You can also perform column-wise search of solutions if you know any of the solution detail such as subject, topic name and so on. To perform a column-wise search,

1. From the solution list view page, click on **Search** icon . The search field opens just below every column that is visible in the list view.
2. Enter the search string in the column of your choice. You can enter keywords in more than one column to perform a combined column search.
3. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.

Note

1. The search would return the results for any of the text fields of the solution.
2. You cannot search for a solution based on any of the date fields of the solution.

Adding New Solution

The solutions module is a knowledge base with resolutions for various problems encountered by your help desk team. You can also document useful information while resolving an issue and save in the knowledge base. The solutions can be grouped under various topics to organize and locate the solutions easily.

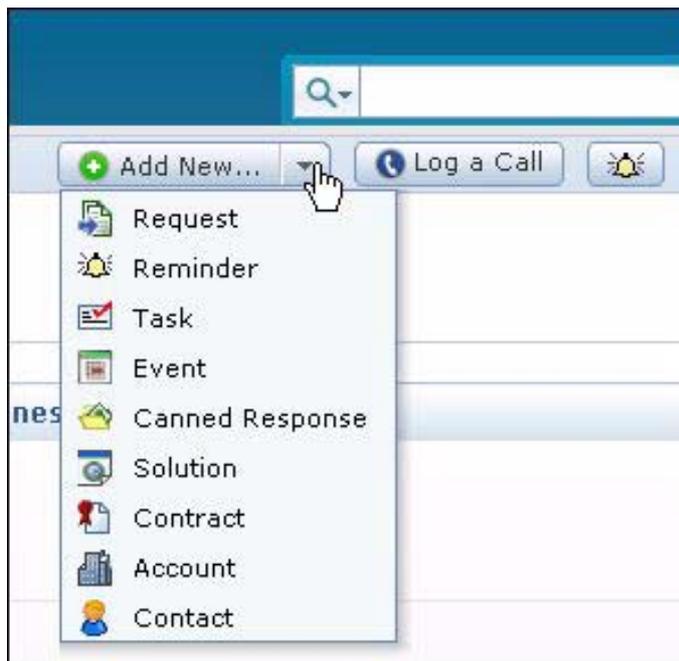
Adding new solutions

The new solution form can be accessed by two ways in SupportCenter Plus application.

- a. Add New drop down.
- b. Solutions tab

Add New drop down

The Add New drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Solution form the home page.



To configure the New Solution form, go to Step 3 in Solution tab.

Solution Tab

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click on **New Solution** button.
3. From the New Solution form, specify the **Subject** of the solution. The subject can be a summary of the complete solution in one line that will exactly tell what the solution is all about. This field is mandatory.
4. Specify the complete solution in the **Contents** text field. This field is also mandatory.

5. If the solution requires any additional files to support the article, then you can attach the same by clicking **Attach File(s)** link.
6. The list of available topics and sub-topics is listed under Topics drop down. You can group this solution to a topic by selecting the Topic from the drop down. This field is mandatory.
7. You can specify keywords which will help in improving the search capability by provide accurate search result. While entering multiple keywords, separate them with comma.
8. Select **Publish this solution in Self-Service Portal also** check box to make this solution available in the customer portal.
9. Click **Add**. If you do not wish to add the solution then click **Cancel**.
10. If you permission to approve the solution while creating, the **Add and Approve** button appears. Click this button to add and approve the solution.

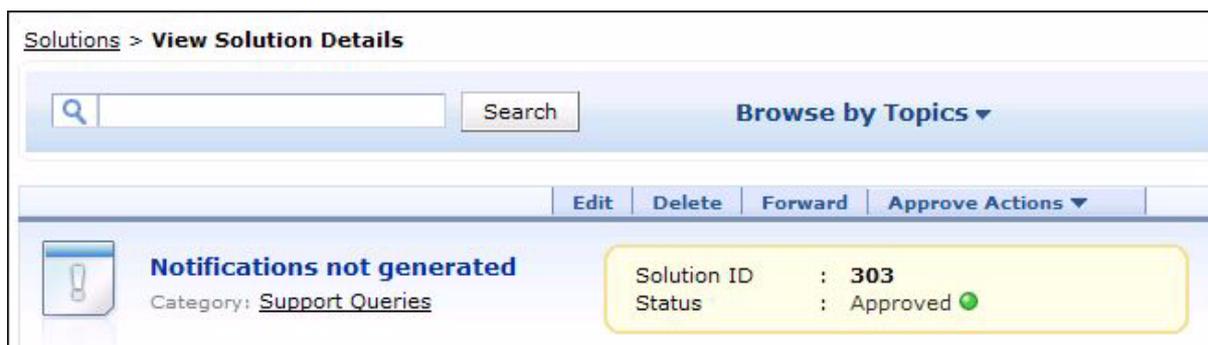
Solution Details Page

The **View Solution Details** page organizes the details of the solution in a logical manner. From this page, you can perform operations on a solution such as edit, delete and approve/reject solutions. To view the details of a solution,

1. Click on the **Solution** tab in the header pane to open the solution list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the solution to be viewed. The View Solution Details page opens to view the **Solution content**, **Solution Details** and the **Comments History** block.

Solution Content

Solution content block displays the Solution ID, status of the solution, subject, description and the category to which the solution belongs. This block also contains the **Search** field to search for requests using specific keywords mentioned while adding a solution. In addition, you are also provided with options to perform various operations on a solution such as delete, edit and approve/reject solutions from the **Actions** drop down.



Solutions > View Solution Details

Search [] Search

Browse by Topics ▾

Edit Delete Forward Approve Actions ▾

 **Notifications not generated**
Category: [Support Queries](#)

Solution ID : 303
Status : Approved 

While viewing solutions, you can identify if the solution is private or public.



- Private solutions that can be viewed only by the support reps.



- Public solutions viewed by both the support reps and contacts.

Solution Details

The solution details block displays the name of the support rep who added the solution, the created time and date, number of views for the solution, status of the solution, last updated time and date and the view type. In addition, you can also view the details of the support rep who added and updated the solution by clicking on their name.

Solution Details

Created By	Jake Thomas	Last Updated By	Jake Thomas
Created On	Oct 5, 2009 04:42 PM	Last Updated On	Oct 8, 2009 10:28 AM
Views	8	View Type	Public
Status	Approved		

Comment History

Every action performed on the solution from the time of its creation can be viewed in the History tab. The details displayed in the history tab are in the descending order with the latest performed action shown at the top and the earliest action at the bottom of the page.



Comments History


Approved by [Jake Thomas](#) | Oct 8, 2009 12:23 PM | ● **Approved**
 solution is approved [Collapse all](#)


Edited by [Jake Thomas](#) | Oct 8, 2009 12:22 PM | ● **Draft**


Created by [administrator](#) | Oct 5, 2009 04:35 PM | ● **Draft**

Editing Solutions

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus provides you with the option to modify the existing solution provided you have the corresponding access permission. The solutions once sent for approval cannot be edited or deleted by support reps without approval permissions.

Edit Solution

To edit solution from the list view,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the solution to edit.
3. From the Solution details page, select the **Edit** button.
4. The solution opens in an editable format with the values populated during creating the solution.
5. Make the necessary changes by changing title, modifying the contents/keywords and so on.
6. Click **Save**. To save the changes and approve the solution click **Save and Approve**.

Note

1. Solutions with the status as **Approval Pending** can only be edited by support reps with the permission to approve the solution.
2. On editing an approved solution, the solution should be sent for approval to the concern support rep again.

Deleting Solutions

You can delete individual solutions or delete a selected group of solutions from the list view page in SupportCenter Plus.

To delete a specific solution,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click on the **Subject** link of the solution you wish to delete.
3. From the Solution Details page, select **Delete** button.
4. A dialog box pops up asking your confirmation on the delete process.
5. Click **Ok** to proceed. The solution gets deleted from the list.

To delete multiple solutions,

1. From the Solution Details page, select the solutions to be deleted from the list by enabling the check box.
2. Click the **Delete** button.
3. A dialog box pops up asking your confirmation on the delete process.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The solutions gets deleted from the list.
5. Click **Cancel** to abort the deletion.

Forward Solution

Support reps can forward solutions for review to the concern support rep before it is submitting for approval.

To forward a solution,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click on the **Subject** link of the solution you wish to forward.
3. From the Solutions details page, click the **Forward** button. The Solution Forward form pops up.
4. Specify the **To** mail address in the given text field. This field is mandatory.
5. You can also send the same information to more than one person by specifying the mail address in **CC** field with comma as a separator.
6. By default, the **Subject** and **Description** fields are pre filled with the existing data. If required, you can edit the Subject and description.
7. You can also attach relevant files to the solution from **Attach File** link.
8. Click **Send**. If you do not wish to forward the solution then click **Cancel**.

Submit for Approval

In order to view the solution in customer portal, the solution needs to be sent for approval to the support reps with the permission to approve solutions [Refer Configuring Roles].

To submit solutions for approval,

1. Click on the Solutions tab in the header pane to open the solution list view page.
2. From the solution filter, select **Solution-Draft** to view the list of solutions that need to be sent for approval.
3. Click on the **Subject** link of the solution to be submitted for approval.
4. From the solutions details page, click on **Actions drop down** -> select **Submit for Approval** option. The Submit for Approval form pops up.

Submit For Approval

To: henry@acme.com,john@acme.com

Subject *: Approve request for the Solution : 301 under Support Queries.

Attach File(s) Attached files

Description

Dear Support Rep,
Your approval is required. The solution to be found at
<http://radhika:8082/AddSolution.do?solID=301>

Send Cancel

Add Users for Approval

- Henry William [henry@acme.com]
- John Mathew [john@acme.com]
- administrator [Mailid not configured]

5. Invoke the icon  to specify the **To** address. The **Add Users for Approval** pop up listing the name and email address of the support reps with the role to approve solutions.
 - Enable the check box beside support rep whom you want to submit the solution for approval.

- The **To** text field gets filled with the email address of the corresponding administrator. If the email address is not specified for a support rep, the check box beside that support rep cannot be enabled.
- 5. The **Subject** and **Description** is entered as given in Notification Rules email template. If required, you can modify the subject and description content manually, else you can change the same from the Notification Rules email template.
- 6. You can attach relevant files by selecting **Attach File** button.
- 7. Click **Send** to submit the solution for approval.

The mail notification is sent to the person addressed in the To field of the notification. The mail contains the link to the specific solution which needs approval. On clicking the link, it leads you to the login screen, where on providing proper credentials, the solution awaiting approval opens. To approve/reject solutions refer Approve/Reject Solutions.

Approve/Reject Solution

Once the solution is submitted for approval to the concern support rep, a mail notification is sent to the support rep requesting the approval of the solution along with the solution link.

On clicking the solution link and logging into the application with proper credentials, the support rep can either approve or reject the solution. Refer Configuring Roles for solutions approval permission.

1. Click on the solution link to approve the solution.
2. Login to the SupportCenter Plus application using your **user name** and **password**.
3. The view solution details page of the solution pending for approval opens. The status of the solution shows as Approval Pending.
4. Select **Approve Actions** drop down -> **Approve Solution** option.
 1. The **Approve Comments** pops up.
 2. Specify any related **Comments** in the field provided.
 3. Click **Approve**.
5. If you wish to reject the solution, select **Reject Solution** under **Approve Actions**.
 1. The **Reject Comments** pops up.
 2. Specify comments, such as reason to reject the solution in the **Comments** field.
 3. Click **Reject**.

You can also approve/reject bulk solutions from the list view page. To approve/reject bulk solutions,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Select **Approval Pending Solutions** from the filters. All the solutions with the status as approval pending is listed,
3. Enable the check box beside the solutions which you want to approve/reject.
4. Select **Approve Actions** drop down -> **Approve Solutions**.
 - i. The **Approve Comments** pops up.
 - ii. Specify any related **Comments** in the field provided.
 - iii. Click **Approve**.
5. If you wish to reject the solution, select **Reject Solutions** under **Approve Actions**.
 - i. The **Reject Comments** pops up.
 - ii. Specify comments, such as reason to reject the solution in the **Comments** field.
 - iii. Click **Reject**.

The approved solutions can be viewed by the users in the customer portal. The rejected solutions can be edited and sent for approval to the concerned support rep. Thus the solution is not completely deleted from the list.

Managing Topics

You can view all your customized topics under Manage Topics. From this page, you can add new topics, rename an existing topic, and move topics and sub-topics to a different parent topic. This provides you the ability to organize your solutions in a logical manner that would meet your organization's needs.

To manage topics,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click on **Manage Topics** link. The manage topics page opens with the available topics and their subtopics listed in the hierarchy.

Available Topics		Topic name	Solutions	Actions
• Basketball related Queries	0	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• General	2	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Golf related Queries	0	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Replacement Queries	0	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Support Queries	2	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Transportation Queries	0	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Warranty Queries	0	Rename	Change Parent	Delete
• Water-sport related Queries	0	Rename	Change Parent	Delete

- Add a New Topic
- Rename a Topic
- Change Parent for a topic
- Delete Topic

Add a New Topic

1. From the **Manage Topics** page, select **Add New Topic** button.
2. You have two columns such as, **Topic Name** field and **Parent Topic** list.
3. You can either **Add New Topic** or **Create a sub-topic for a parent topic**.

Topic Name: Specify either a parent topic or a sub topic

Parent Topics: This is the main or root topics, under which you can have 'n' number of subtopics and its related contents. The newly added parent topic or sub topic is added to this list.

- If you are creating a New Topic, specify the **Topic Name** and select **/Topics Root** under parent topic.
- If you are creating a sub-topic, specify the Topic Name and select the parent topic as shown below,

- Click **Add** button. The newly added subtopic or parent topic is displayed under the available topic name list.

Rename a Topic

- From the **Manage Topics** page, click on **Rename** link beside the topic you want to rename. The **Rename Topic** page opens.
- Modify the existing name or specify the new topic name in given text field.
- Click **Save** button. The changes made to the topic name are displayed in the available topics list.

Change a Parent topic

Say, you have created a Child Topic "Replacement of battery" for the Parent Topic "Replacement Queries". Now, you want to change the child topic as a separate parent topic.

- From the **Manage Topics** page, select **Change Parent** link beside the topic or sub-topic you wish to move say, Replacement of battery. The **Change Parent Topic** form opens.
- Choose the Parent Topic as **/Topics Root** and click **Save**. The child topic is not an individual parent topic.

If you want to move the child topic "Replacement of battery" as a sub-topic of the parent topic "General", then choose the parent topic as General and click Save.

Note	You cannot move a topic as a subtopic to its current child topic.
-------------	---

Delete a Topic

- In the **Manage Topics** page, click on **Delete** link beside the topic to be deleted.
- If solutions are present under the topic the confirmation page consists of options to either move the solution to a different parent or move the sub-topics to **/Topics Root**.

Delete Topic

Confirm Delete Topic - Warrantly and Support

Warrantly and Support contains **1** solutions and **3** sub-topics



Deleting Topic **Warrantly and Support** will

1. Delete the 1 solutions present in it

No, I want to change the reference of the underlying solutions to a **different parent topic**

Choose a parent topic

- Basketball related Queries
- **General**
- Golf related Queries
- Replacement Queries
- Support Queries
- Transportation Queries
- Warrantly and Support
 - warranty 1

2. Move the 3 Sub-Topics of **Warrantly and Support** to the **/Topics Root**

No, I want to change the reference of the underlying sub-topics to a **different parent topic**

Choose a parent topic

- Basketball related Queries
- General
- Golf related Queries
- Replacement Queries
- **Support Queries**
- Transportation Queries
- Warrantly and Support
 - warranty 1

Additional Info : Solutions present in the sub-topics will not be deleted

Selecting on the check box brings the **Choose a parent topic** list box from where you can move the solution to a different topic or move sub-topic to a different parent topic accordingly. Click **Confirm**. The topic is deleted from the available list.

Note

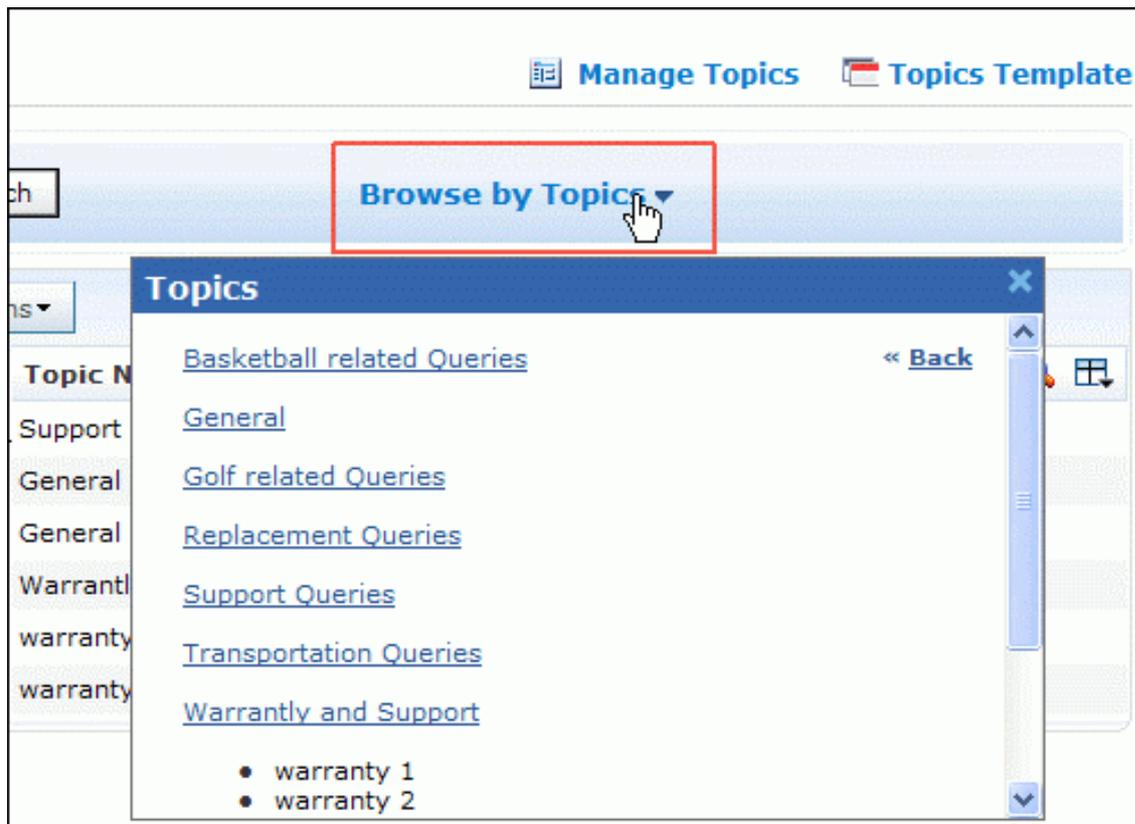


You cannot move a subtopic of the topic that is going to be deleted.

Browsing Solutions by Topic

You can view the list of solutions for a topic using this option. To browse solutions under individual topics,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click on **Browse by Topics** drop down. The **Topics** window drops down listing all the available topics and their sub topics.
3. To view all the sub topics, click >> **Show All** link. This lists out the topics and sub topics in logical manner as shown below,



4. On clicking the topic, the solutions of the topics and its corresponding sub-topics gets listed.
5. Click the sub-topic to view the solutions only in the sub topic.

Topics Template

Using Topics Template, you can group specific topics under a template and assign this template to an account. The contacts associated to the account can view solutions pertaining to the topics grouped under this template.

For instance, you have grouped the topics - warranty queries and replacement queries, under the template "Warranty" and assigned this topics template to an account say, Acme. The contacts associated to Acme can view the solutions based on the topics warranty and replacement queries alone. Thus restricting the contact to view all the solutions in the application.

On adding a topics template, the template can be shared by other accounts in the application but a single account cannot have multiple templates. To assign topics template to an account refer Assign Templates under **Accounts** module.

Note



1. Topics Template can be shared by other accounts.
2. A single account can be assigned to one topics template.
3. For users without accounts, configure the options in Settings -> Solution View under Admin module.

To view the list of available topics templates,

1. Click on the **Solutions** tab in the header pane to open the solutions list view page.
2. Click on **Topics Template** option. The list of available topics template is displayed. From this page you can add, edit and delete a topics template.

Adding Topics Template

1. Click **Add New Template** button. The Add Topics Template page opens.
2. Specify a unique name **Template Name** in the field provided. This field is mandatory.
3. Enter a brief **Description** about the template.
4. Tick the **Topics** to be grouped under the template. Say, Support Queries, General and so on. This field is also mandatory.
5. Click **Save**. The newly added template is listed along with the available templates.

Editing Topics Template

1. From the available templates page, select the **Edit** icon  beside the template you wish to edit.
2. The **Edit Topics Template** page opens with the fields pre populated with the values configured during adding the template.
3. Make the necessary changes and click **Save**.

Deleting Topics Template

1. From the available templates page, select the **Delete** icon  beside the template you wish to delete. A pop-up window confirming the delete action appears.
2. Click **Ok** to confirm the delete operation. The template gets deleted from the list of available templates.

Contracts

Contracts in SupportCenter Plus are the services offered to an account and their associated products for a specific time period. These support services are grouped under a Support Plan which determines the due by time for requests raised for the account/product.

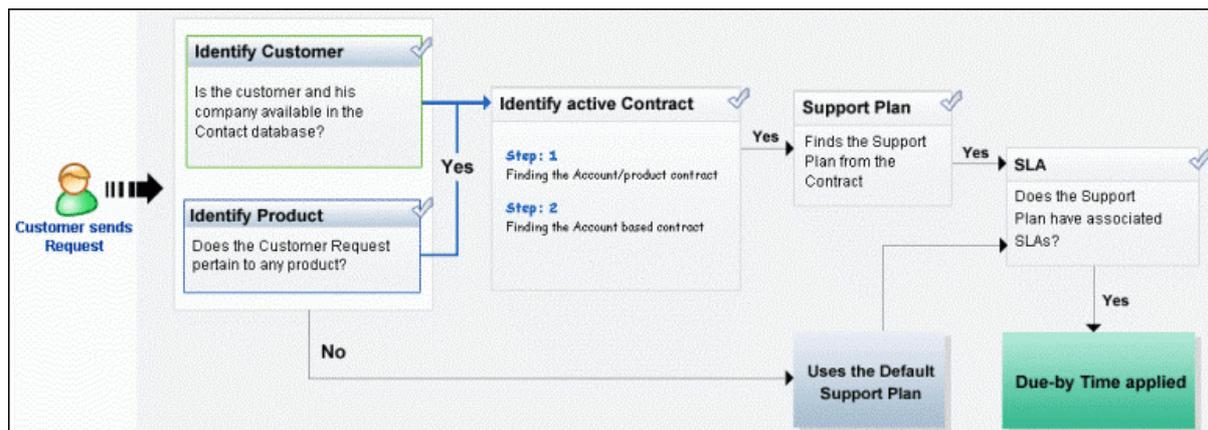
For accounts with multiple products, each product can be associated with a service contract for a definite active period or multiple contracts can be associated to a single product provided the time period does not overlap. Apart from associating service contracts to products, contracts can be associated to accounts alone. Thus based on the associated contracts, any request raised for the account/product should be resolved based on the support plan and applied due by time.

<p>Note</p> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Contracts plays a vital role in setting the due by time for a request. 2. Only one service contract can be associated to a account/product for a given time period. 3. The time period of two different contracts associated to a product/account should not overlap.
--	--

Resolving requests based on Contracts

Users raise requests into SupportCenter Plus and these requests are resolved based on contracts, provided the user has an account in the SupportCenter Plus database. If the user has an valid account, then the contract associated to the product/account is identified after which, the due by time for the request is applied.

The work flow explains how contracts are involved for resolving requests.



Identify the Customer/Product

On receiving request from a customer in the application,

- A search is conducted for the customer and his company in the available list of contacts in the database, i.e., if the customer has an existing **Account** in the database, and
- If the customer's request pertains to any **Product** that is associated to the account.

If the customer and his company details are not available in the list of contacts in SupportCenter Plus database, then the **Default Support Plan** is applied for that request.

Identify the Active Contract

Identify the associated contracts and analyze if the product/account has an active contract,

- If the customer's account is available in the database, and if the request pertains to a product then the **contract associated for the product** is identified.
- If the customer's account is available in the database, and the request does not pertain to any product then the **contract associated for the account** is identified.

Service Level Agreement and Support Plan

The support services offered for an account/product is listed in the corresponding contract details. Based on the products/account, the Support Plan has associated Service Level Agreement with certain SLA rules. Using these SLA rules the due by time for a request is applied.

Contracts List View

The contract list view page displays all the active and expired contract configured in SupportCenter Plus application. The page includes various useful functionality such as,

- option to view contracts based on pre-filters
- customize columns to be displayed in the list view
- set the number of contracts to be displayed per page
- search for contracts using search string
- adding and managing topics

On clicking to the **Contracts** tab in the header pane, the page re-directs to the contract list view page,



Representation of Icons in the Contract List View,

- modify or edit contracts.

- column-wise search option to search for contracts based on contract name, support plan and so on.

- select the columns to be displayed in the list view.

From the Contract List View page you can,

1. **Custom and Manage Views:** Customize the page to display contracts using Custom View option. You can create criteria to filter contracts accumulated in the contract list view page. Thus sorting and viewing contracts based on your requirements. [Refer Custom Views]
 - - create filters to customize and organize your contract list view. The filters created can be made public or private.
 - - View, edit and delete customized views.
2. **Set the number of Contracts per page and navigation buttons:** You can set the number of contracts to be displayed in the contract list view page.

Account Name	Support Type	Status
Contract... Acme Corporations	Gold	Incident Based Active
Naukari	Support Plan 3	Incident Based Active

3. **Recent Items:** All the recent items viewed by you is displayed under this block. You can navigate back to those pages on clicking on the item link.

Recent Items

- Sharon Harper
- Acme Corporations
- Resolution for iphon...
- Maintenance
- Restart online demo

4. **Request based on filters:** View specific group of contracts through pre defined filters. [Refer Contracts based on filters]
5. **New Contract:** Create New Contract for an account/product. [Refer Adding New Contract]
6. **Delete:** Bulk Delete of contracts. [Refer Deleting Contracts]

Contracts based on filters

You can view contracts based on filters from the contract list view page. In addition, you can also create new filters using the Custom View option to place contracts in specific groups. There are some pre defined filters in SupportCenter Plus as shown,

The screenshot displays the 'Contracts > All Active Contracts' page. On the left, a sidebar titled 'Views' contains a list of contract views: 'All Active Contracts', 'All Expired Contracts', 'Created in the last 7 ...', 'Created in the last 30...', 'Created in the last 3 ...', 'Expired in the last 30...', 'Expiring in next 7 day...', 'Expiring in next 30 da...', and 'Expiring in next 3 mon...'. The main area shows the 'All Active Contracts' list with a 'New Contract' and 'Delete' button, and a table of contracts including 'FacilitiesDesk Maintenance Contract...', 'Service & Sales Contract', 'Contract for ZOHO', 'Maintenance', 'Support', and 'Contract for Acme'.

- **All Active Contracts** Lists all the contracts that are active and yet to get expired.
- **All Expired Contracts** Lists all the contracts with expired active period.
- **Created in the last 7 days** All the contracts created in the last 7 days is displayed.
- **Created in the last 30 days** Lists of contracts created in the last 30 days.
- **Created in the last 3 months** Lists all the contracts created in the last 3 months.
- **Expired in last 30 days** Lists all the contracts expired in the last 30 days.
- **Expiring in next 7 days** Lists all contracts expiring in next 7 days.
- **Expiring in next 30 days** Lists all contracts expiring in next 30 days.
- **Expiring in the next 3 months** Lists all contracts expiring in the next 3 months.

Custom Views

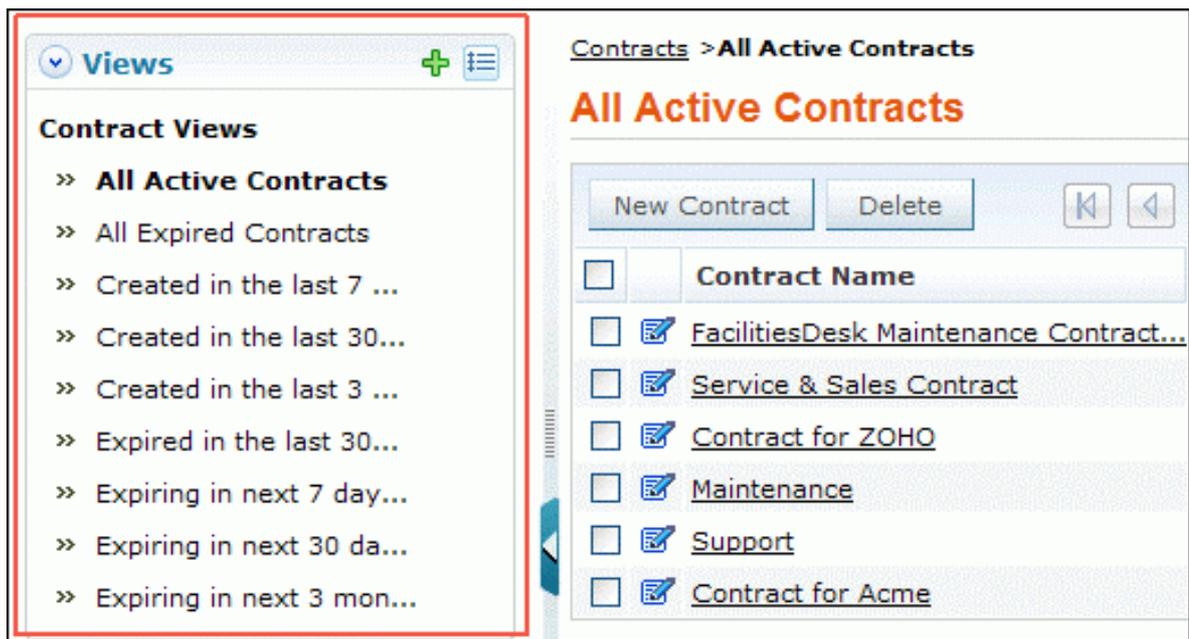
You can create your own customized page to display contracts using Custom View option. You can specify the criteria to filter the contracts accumulated in your Contract list view page. Thus helping you to sort and view contracts based on your requirement.

- Create Custom View
- Manage View

Creating Custom View

Using Custom Views, you can create filters to view all contracts of an "Account Manager" or contracts beginning from a particular date.

1. Click on the **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the Contract list view page.
2. Click on **Create Custom View** icon . The **Add Custom View** page opens.



3. In the Add Custom View page, specify a **View Name** like "Account Manager Filter". This field is mandatory.
4. If you are the administrator and want this custom view to be available only when you log in, select the check box beside **Make this view as private custom view**. The custom view is made private. By default, the custom view for an administrator is public. If you are a support rep without administrator login privilege then by default the created custom view is private. The option to "Make this view as private custom view" is not available.
5. In the **Advance Filtering** block, select the criteria to be filtered from **Column** drop down along with its matching **Criteria**. For instance, select "Account Manager" from Column drop down and "is" from criteria.
6. Click on **Choose** button.

7. From **Select Column Data** pop up, choose the account manager from the list.
8. Click **Add to Filter** button to save the filter criteria details. The filter criteria is listed in **Filter Set** block.
9. If you wish to add more filter conditions to this view then, select the required column, criteria & conditions of the filter.
10. If there are more than two criteria, specify **AND** or **OR** conditions by enabling either of the two radio buttons.
11. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Add New** to save and add another custom view.

The Custom View is now displayed under **Views** in the Contract list view page. The custom view marked as private is listed under My Views and the public custom view is displayed along with the predefined filters.



Manage Custom Views

You can view all your customized view under Manage Custom Views. From this page you can add, edit and delete a custom view.

1. Click on **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the Contract list view page.
2. Click **Manage Custom View** icon . The **Custom View** page opens listing all the created custom views.
 -  - indicates the custom view is public and can be viewed by all users.
 -  - indicates the custom view is private and can be viewed only by the creator of the custom view.

Contracts > Custom Views

Custom Views

New Custom View Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter Name	Created By
<input type="checkbox"/>	  Account Manager Filter	administrator
<input type="checkbox"/>	  Contracts based on Support Plan	administrator

Note 

1. If you are the administrator then you can view all your customized private and public views.
2. If you are a support rep then you can add only private custom views.

Edit Custom Views

To edit a custom view,

1. Click the **edit** icon  beside the filter name you wish to edit.
2. From **Edit Custom View** page, edit the details.
3. Click **Save**. You can also add a new custom view by clicking **Save and Add New** button.

Delete Custom Views

To delete custom views,

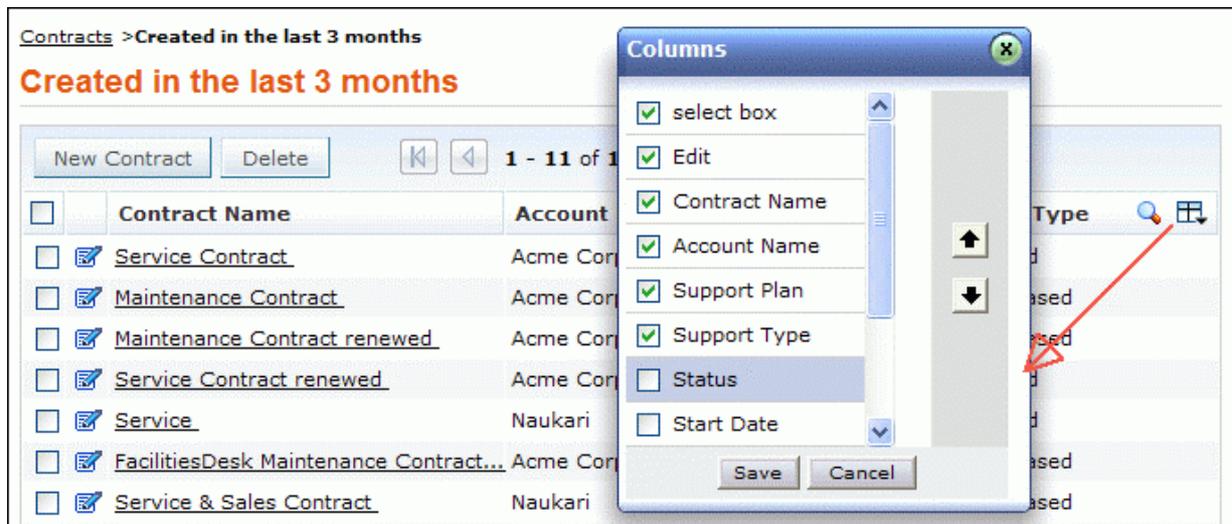
1. Select the check box beside the custom views to be deleted. The administrator has the privilege to create and delete public views.
2. Click **Delete** button. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The Custom View is deleted from the list.

Customizing Contract List View

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus gives you an option to customize the contract list view page by including columns of your choice.

To customize columns displayed in the list view,

1. Click on the **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the contract list view page.
2. Click on **Column Chooser** icon . The available columns that can be displayed in the list view pops up. The columns that are currently visible in the list view is indicated with selected check box.



3. To remove a column, de-select the check box and click Save.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the check box beside the column you wish to add. Click Save.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**. Only the selected columns are added in the contract list view.

Search Contracts

You can also perform column-wise search of contracts based on contract parameters like contract name, account name, support plan and so on.

To perform a column-wise search,

1. From the contract list view page, click on **Search** icon . The search field opens just below every column that is visible in the list view.
2. Enter the search string in the column of your choice. You can enter keywords in more than one column to perform a combined column search.
3. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.

New Contract		Delete		1 - 11 of 11		25 per page	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contract Name	Account Name	Support Plan	Support Type	Status		
	<input type="text" value="Maintenance"/>	<input type="text" value="Acme"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="active"/>	<input type="button" value="Go"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Service Contract	Acme Corporations	Platinum	Hour Based	Expired		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Maintenance Contract	Acme Corporations	Gold	Incident Based	Expired		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Maintenance Contract renewed	Acme Corporations	Gold	Incident Based	Expired		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Service Contract renewed	Acme Corporations	Platinum	Hour Based	Expired		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Service	Naukari	Support Plan 2	Hour Based	Expired		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FacilitiesDesk Maintenance Contract...	Acme Corporations	Gold	Incident Based	Active		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Service & Sales Contract	Naukari	Support Plan 3	Incident Based	Active		

Note



1. The search would return the results for any of the text fields of the contract.
2. You cannot search for contracts based on any of the date fields.

Creating New Contract

Contracts are services offered to an account and their associated products for a definite time period. You can create a service contract for either an account or the products associated to the account. For products associated to the account, you can associate multiple contracts provided the active period of the contract does not overlap.

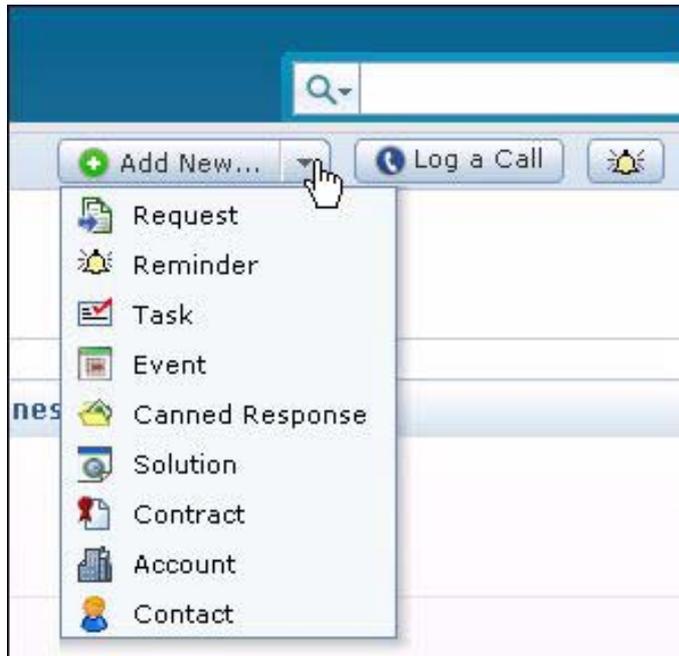
Adding new contracts

The new contract form can be accessed by two ways in SupportCenter Plus application.

- a. Add New drop down.
- b. Contracts tab

Add New drop down

The Add New drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Contract form the home page.



To configure the New Contracts form, go to Step 3 in Contracts tab.

Contracts Tab

1. Click **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the Contract list view page.
2. Click **New Contracts** button.
3. From the New Contract form, specify the **Contract Name**. This field is mandatory.
4. Specify the **Contract Number**.
5. All the accounts configured in SupportCenter Plus are listed in **Account Name** drop down list from which you can select the account to associate this contract. If the account name is not listed then, you can add a new account by clicking **Add New** link beside account name field. This field is also mandatory.

6. On selecting the account, if there are any products associated to the account, then the same is listed under **Products** drop down list. If you are creating contracts for products then choose the product from the drop down.

Note

1. Only one service contract can be associated to a account/product for a given time period.
2. If an account does not have associated products then the product text field is not populated.

8. Enter a brief **Description** about the contract.
9. Choose a **Support Plan** from the drop down list. While configuring a support plan, if you have specified the Support Type as 'Incident Based' and filled in the values such as **No of Incidents**, **Cost per Incident** and **Total Cost**, the same is populated in the new contract form. If you have selected the Support Type as 'Hour Based' and filled in values like **No of Hours**, **Cost per hour** and **Total Cost**, the same is populated in the new contract form. Refer Support Plan to know more.
10. Specify the **Active Period** (Start date and End date) of the contract using the calendar icon . If the End date is not specified then the contract is active for ever. This field is mandatory.
11. All the available support services configured are listed and the services offered by the selected Support Plan are automatically enabled. If required, you can **Add New Service** to the list.
12. To attach any relevant file to the contract,
 1. Click **Attach** to open Add/Remove attachment window.
 2. Click **Browse** to locate the file.
 3. Click **Attach**. The file is attached along with its size.
 4. Click **Done** to close the page. The **File attached** field consists of the name of the file attached.
12. You can notify users before the contract expires by select **Enable Notification** check box. The **Available Users** list is displayed from which you need to select users and move them to **Selected Users** list by clicking >> button.
13. Specify the **days** before which the user has to be notified of the contract expiry in the **Notify before** field.
14. According to your support plan, you can specify the **hours** and **incidents** before which the user has to be notified of the contract expiry in the **Notify before** field
15. **Save** the details.

Contract Details Page

The details of the contract added by you, while creating the contract are displayed under Contract Details page. From this page, you can renew the contract when the expires and also print the contract details.

To view the contract details page,

1. Click the **Contract** tab in the header pane.
2. From the List View, select **Contract Name** link of the contract to be viewed. The View Contract details page opens.

Contract Details

This block displays details of the contract that was entered at the time of creation. The details include, the name of the contract, contract number, name of the user who has created the contract along with the date and time, the status of the contract and the date when the contract is going to expire. The details also include the services offered in the contract, the support plan and the support type.

Contract Details	
Contract Name	Maintenance Contract
Account Name	Acme
Created On	Nov 11, 2010 03:19 PM
Created By	administrator
Active Period	Thu, 11 Nov 2010 - Sat, 11 Dec 2010
Services Covered	Maintenance, Service, Support
Description	Maintenance Contract for the account - Acme
Attachments	maintenance_contract.txt
Contract Number	56282
Created On	Nov 11, 2010 03:19 PM
Created By	administrator
Status	Active
Valid Till	Sat, 11 Dec 2010
Support Plan	Gold
Support Type	Incident Based
No. of Incidents	100 Incidents
Cost per Incident	\$ 10.00
Total Cost	\$ 0.00
Incidents Used	0 Incidents
Incidents Remaining	0 Incidents
Product	-

If you have enabled notifications to be sent to users before the contract expires, then the Notification block appears. The contract expiry notification can be customized in Admin -> Notification Rules -> Contract sub tab.

Adding Tasks

The Tasks associated to the account are listed under the **Task** block. Click the **Title** link of the task to view the task details. The page redirects to the **Activities** tab, from where you can perform edit and delete operations. You also have an option to add new tasks from this page. Refer Add New Task to know more.

Adding Events

The Events associated to the account are listed under the **Events** block. Click the **Title** link of the event to view the event details. The page redirects to the **Activities** tab, from where you can perform edit and delete operations. You also have an option to add new event from this page. Refer Add New Event to know more.

Editing and Deleting Contracts

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus provides you with the option to modify and delete the existing contracts provided you have the corresponding access permission.

Note



If a request raised is resolved based on a particular contract then that contract cannot be deleted.

Edit Contracts

You can edit contracts either from the list view or from the contracts details page. To edit contracts from the list view,

1. Click on the **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the contract list view page.
2. Select the **Edit** icon  beside the contract you wish to edit. The Edit Contract form opens with values populated while adding the contract.
3. **Edit** the contract details and **Update** the changes.

To edit contracts from the contract details page,

1. Click on the **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the contract list view page.
2. Click on the **Contract Name** to be edited.
3. From the contract details page, click the **Edit** button. The Edit Contract form opens with values populated while adding the contract.
4. **Edit** the contract details and **Update** the changes.

Delete Contracts

1. Click on the **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the contract list view page.
2. Enable the check box beside the **Contracts Name** to be deleted.
3. Click on **Delete**.
4. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears. Click **Yes** to proceed. The contracts is deleted from the list.

Renew Contract

You can renew a service contract once the active period has expired. To renew a service contract,

The active period needs to be specified in order to renew the contract.

1. Click **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the Contract list view page.
2. Select the filter option from Contract Views block say, all expired contracts or contracts expiring in next 30 days.
3. Click the **Contract Name** you wish to renew.
4. From the contract details page, click **Renew** button to open the edit contract page containing the original contract rules.
5. The contract name is appended with the word **renewed**. You can edit the name but ensure that the contract name is unique and does not have the old name.
6. Specify the **Contract Number** in the given text field.
7. All the accounts configured in SupportCenter Plus are listed in **Account Name** drop down list from which you can select the account to associate this contract. If the account name is not listed then, you can add a new account by clicking **Add New** link beside account name field. This field is also mandatory.
8. On selecting the account, if there are any products associated to the account, then the same is listed under **Products** drop down list. If you are creating contracts for products then choose the product from the drop down.
9. Enter a brief **Description** about the contract.
10. Choose a **Support Plan** from the drop down list. While configuring a support plan, if you have specified the Support Type as 'Incident Based' and filled in the values such as **No of Incidents**, **Cost per Incident** and **Total Cost**, the same is populated in the new contract form. If you have selected the Support Type as 'Hour Based' and filled in values like **No of Hours**, **Cost per hour** and **Total Cost**, the same is populated in the new contract form. Refer Support Plan to know more.
11. Specify the **Active Period** (Start date and End date) of the contract using the calendar icon . If the End date is not specified then the contract is active for ever. This field is mandatory.
12. All the available support services configured are listed and the services offered by the selected Support Plan are automatically enabled. If required, you can **Add New Service** to the list.
13. To attach any file to the contract,
 1. Click **Attach** to open Add/Remove attachment window.
 2. Click **Browse** to locate the file.

3. Click **Attach**. The file is attached along with its size.
4. Click **Done** to close the window.
10. You can notify users before the contract expires by select **Enable Notification** check box. The **Available Users** list is displayed from which you need to select users and move them to **Selected Users** list by clicking >> button.
11. Specify the **days** before which the user has to be notified of the contract expiry in the **Notify before** field.
12. You also have an option to specify the **hours** before which the user has to be notified of the contract expiry in the **Notify before** field.
13. **Save** the details. The new contract is created and list in the Open Contract list.

Printing Contracts

You can print and preview the entire contract content using Print Preview option.

To print a contract,

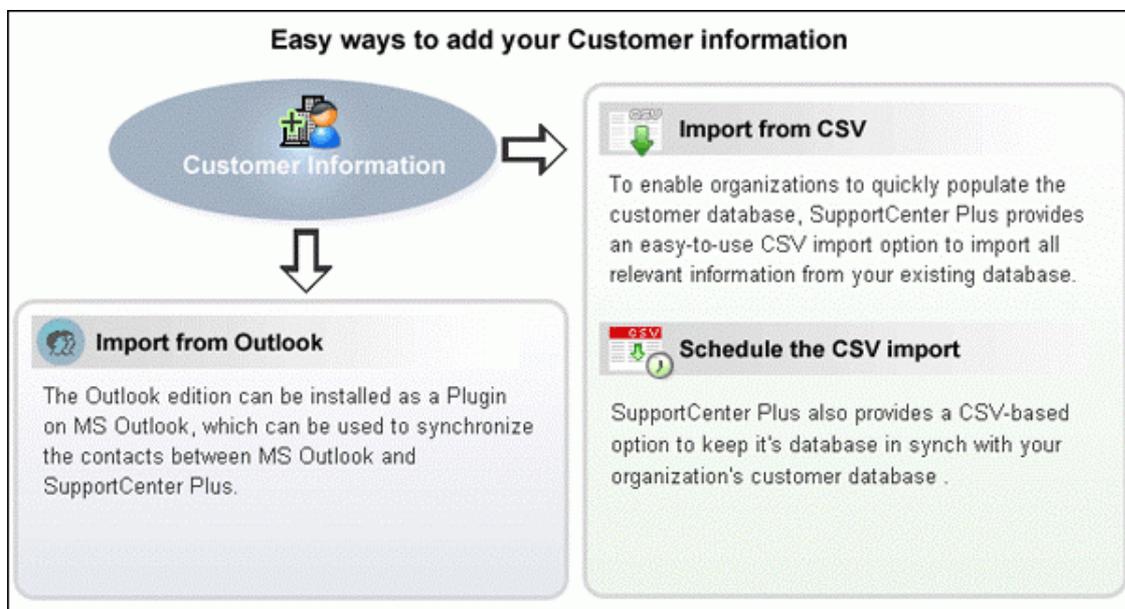
1. Click **Contracts** tab in the header pane to open the contracts list view page.
2. Click the **Contract Name** link of the contract you wish to print.
3. From the Contract details page, click **Print Preview** button. The contract details is displayed in a printable format.
4. Click **Ctrl + p** keys to print the contract details.
5. Set the required options and click **Ok**.

Accounts

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus allows you to maintain valuable customer information and keep it up-to-date. The account information gives you details of the contacts, products and contracts associated to an account. Furthermore, for accounts with branches in different locations, each branch is added as a sub account of the account. Thus maintaining information of the branches of an account too.

Adding each and every account manually and keeping it up-to-date can be tedious and wearisome. Hence SupportCenter Plus provides two easy ways to add your Customer information.

- a. Importing from Outlook
- b. Importing from CSV and schedule a CSV import.



Importing from Outlook

The SupportCenter Plus Outlook edition is productivity-enhancement software that can be used with SupportCenter Plus system and Microsoft Outlook. The Outlook edition can be installed on user's MS Outlook as a plugin, which can be used to synchronize the contacts in between Microsoft Outlook and the SupportCenter Plus. [To know more refer, Import from Outlook]

Importing from CSV & Scheduling CSV Import

The easy-to-use CSV import option quickly imports all the relevant information from the existing database and also provides an option to keep the database in sync with the organization's customer database.

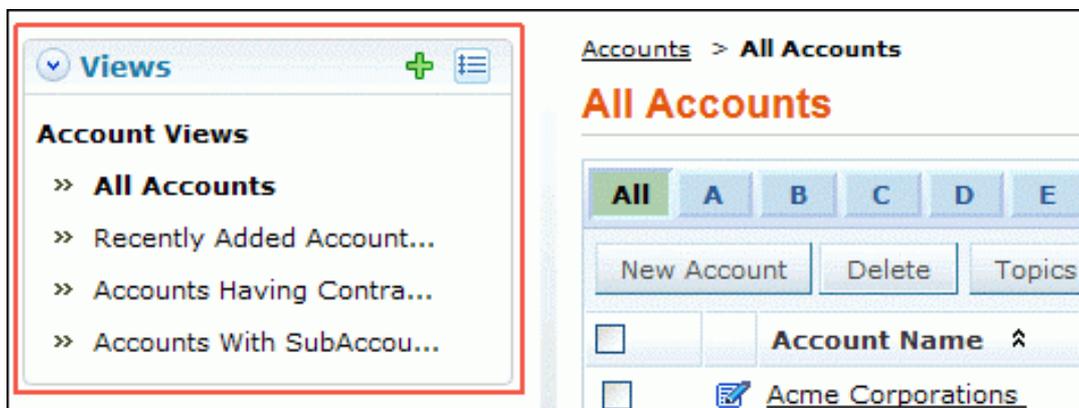
Accounts List View

On clicking the Accounts tab, the page redirects you to the Accounts List View page where you can maintain and organize all the accounts created in SupportCenter Plus. You have the facility to,

- Customize the page to display the accounts
- Option to view accounts based on filters
- Import Sales details, Accounts/Contacts from CSV
- Effective Search option through keywords and alphabets.
- Assigning Topic Template to Account.
- Set the number of accounts to be displayed per page
- Perform operations such as creating new account, editing, deleting and converting into Accounts into Sub Account.

From the Accounts List View, you can:

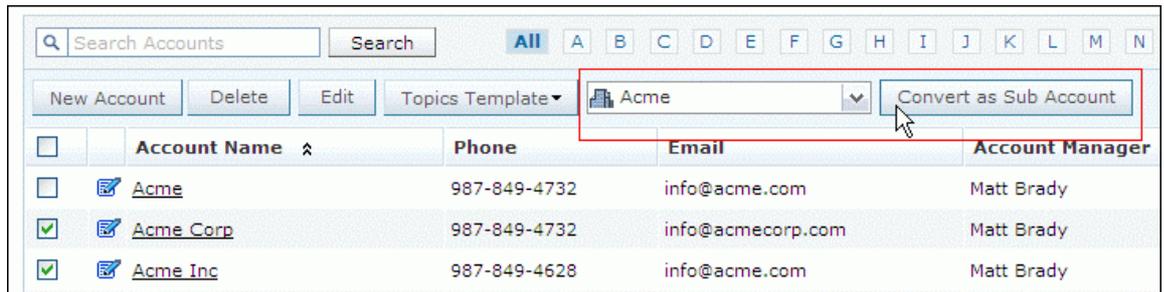
1. Custom Views - Customize the page to display the accounts using Custom Views option. The accounts is sorted based on the filter criteria you specify while creating the custom view.
 -  - create new custom filter.
 -  - view, edit and delete the filters.



2. Import Sales Details from CSV : Quick and easy to import all the sales details from other applications into SupportCenter Plus.
3. Import Accounts/Contact from CSV : Import relevant data of account and contact information from the existing database as well as from other applications.
4. Creating New Account : Create New Accounts in the application.
5. **Bulk Operations**
 1. Deleting Accounts : Delete bulk accounts from the list view. Deleting accounts will automatically delete all the contacts associated to the account.
 2. Editing Accounts : Perform bulk edit of the fields such as, Industry, Account Manager and Time Zone from the accounts list view.
 3. Assigning Topic Templates to accounts : Assign solutions on particular topics to accounts through Topic Template.

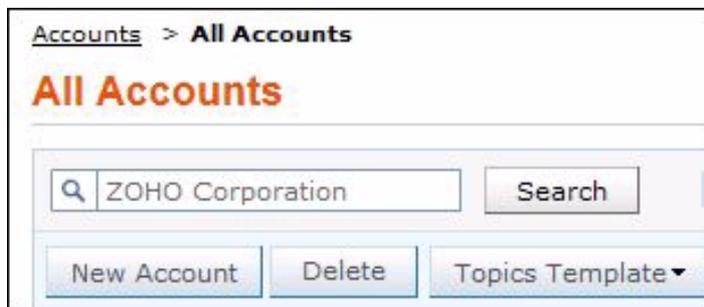
4. **Convert Account into Sub Account** : Convert existing Accounts into a Sub Accounts from the list view.
 1. Select the check box beside the accounts to convert as sub account from the list view.
 2. Select the **Account** to which the sub accounts should be added from the drop down beside Convert as Sub Account button.
 3. Click **Convert as Sub Account** button. A confirmation dialog appears.
 4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The selected accounts are converted as Sub Accounts.

In the image below, "Acme Corp" and "Acme Inc" are selected as the Sub Account for the Account "Acme".

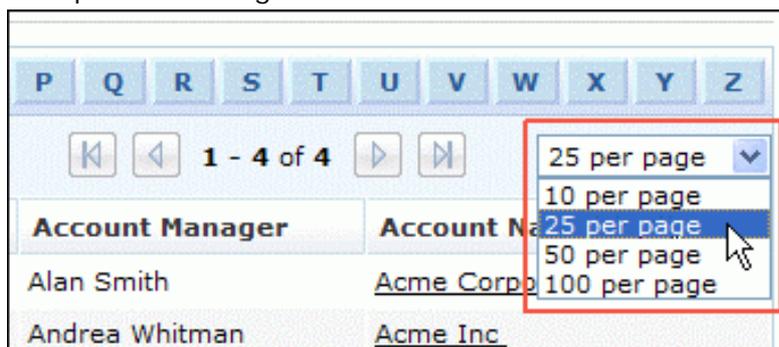


In addition, you can add new Sub Accounts to accounts and also convert accounts into sub accounts from the accounts details page. Refer Sub Accounts to know more.

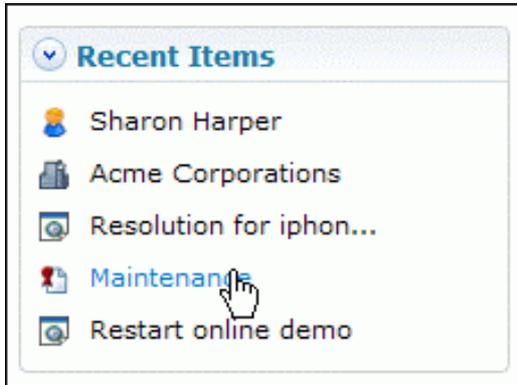
6. Search : Conduct a search for accounts either through keywords, alphabets or column-wise search option.



7. **Set the number of accounts per page and navigation buttons** : View the entire list of accounts configured in SupportCenter Plus application by settings the number of accounts to be viewed per page. Navigate through the pages using the next and previous navigation buttons.

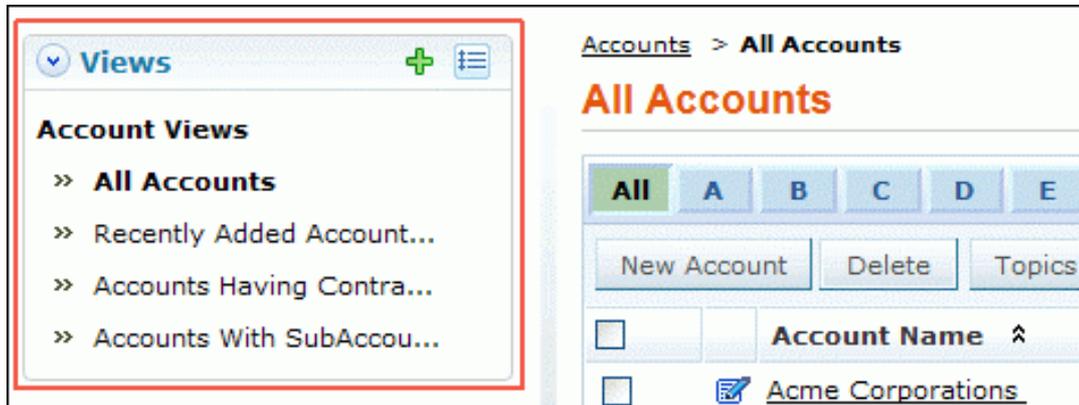


8. **Recent Items:** All the recent items viewed by you is displayed under the Recent Items block. You can also navigate back to the pages on clicking on the item link.



Accounts based on Filters

You can view accounts based on filters from the accounts list view page. In addition, you can also create new filters using the Custom View option to place accounts in specific groups. There are some pre defined filters in SupportCenter Plus as shown,



- **All Accounts** Lists all the accounts available in SupportCenter Plus
- **Recently Added Accounts** Lists the most recently added accounts.
- **Accounts Having Contracts** Lists all the accounts associated to a contract
- **Accounts With SubAccounts** Lists all the accounts with sub accounts.

Custom Views

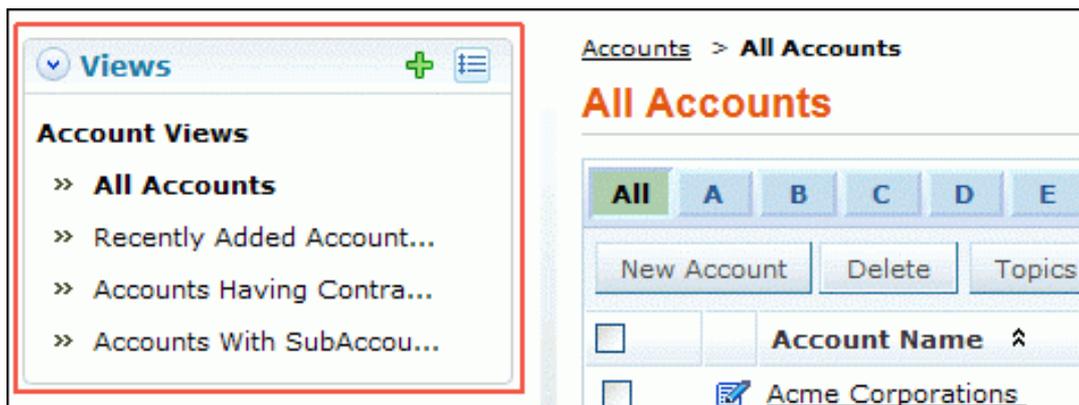
You can create your own customized accounts list view page. The accounts is sorted based on the filter criteria you specify while creating the custom view. Thus helping you to sort and view the accounts based on your requirement.

- Create Custom View
- Manage View

Creating Custom View

If you want to view all the accounts with similar "Topics Template",

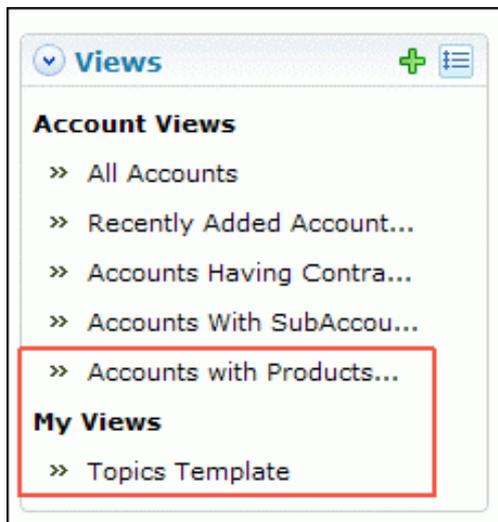
1. Click on the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Click on Create **Custom View** icon . The **Add Custom View** page opens.



3. In the Add Custom View page, specify a **View Name** like "Topics Template". This field is mandatory.
4. If you are the administrator and want this custom view to be available only when you log in, select the check box beside **Make this view as private custom view**. The custom view is made private. By default, the custom view for an administrator is public. If you are a support rep without administrator login privilege then by default the created custom view is private. The option to "Make this view as private custom view" is not available.
5. In the **Advance Filtering** block, select the criteria to be filtered from **Column** drop down along with its matching **Criteria**. For instance, select "Topics Template" from Column drop down and "is" from criteria.
6. Click on **Choose** button.
7. From **Select Column Data** pop up choose your option. You can select options based on your selected column and criteria.
8. Click **Add to Filter** button to save the filter criteria details. The filter criteria is listed in **Filter Set** block.

9. If you wish to add more filter conditions to this view then, select the required column, criteria & conditions of the filter.
10. If there are more than two criteria, specify **AND** or **OR** conditions by enabling either of the two radio buttons.
11. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Add New** to save and add another custom view.

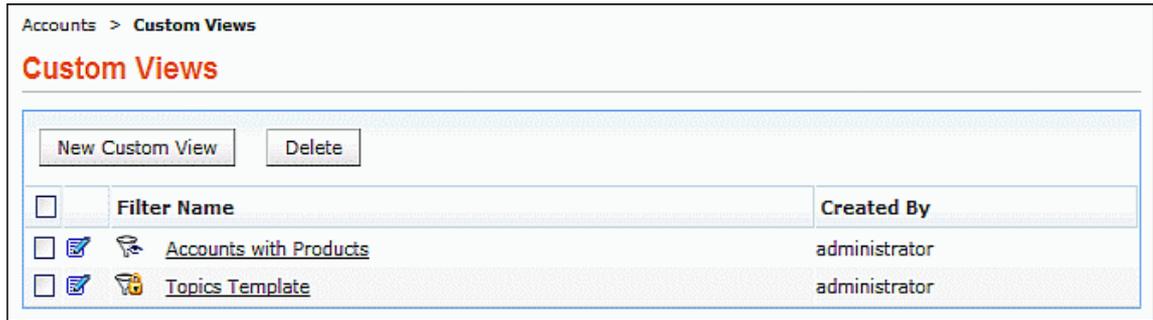
The Custom View is now displayed under **Views** in the Accounts list view page. The custom view marked as private is listed under My Views and the public custom view is displayed along with the predefined filters.



Manage Custom Views

You can view all your customized view under Manage Custom Views. From this page you can add, edit and delete a custom view.

1. Click on the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Click **Manage Custom View** icon . The **Custom View** page opens listing all the created custom views.
 -  - indicates the custom view is public and can be viewed by all users.
 -  - indicates the custom view is private and can be viewed only by the creator of the custom view.

**Note**

1. If you are the administrator then you can view all your customized private and public views.
2. If you are a support rep then you can add only private custom views.

Edit Custom Views

To edit a custom view,

1. Click the **edit** icon beside the filter name you wish to edit.
2. From **Edit Custom View** page, edit the details.
3. Click **Save**. You can also add a new custom view by clicking **Save and Add New** button.

Delete Custom Views

To delete custom views,

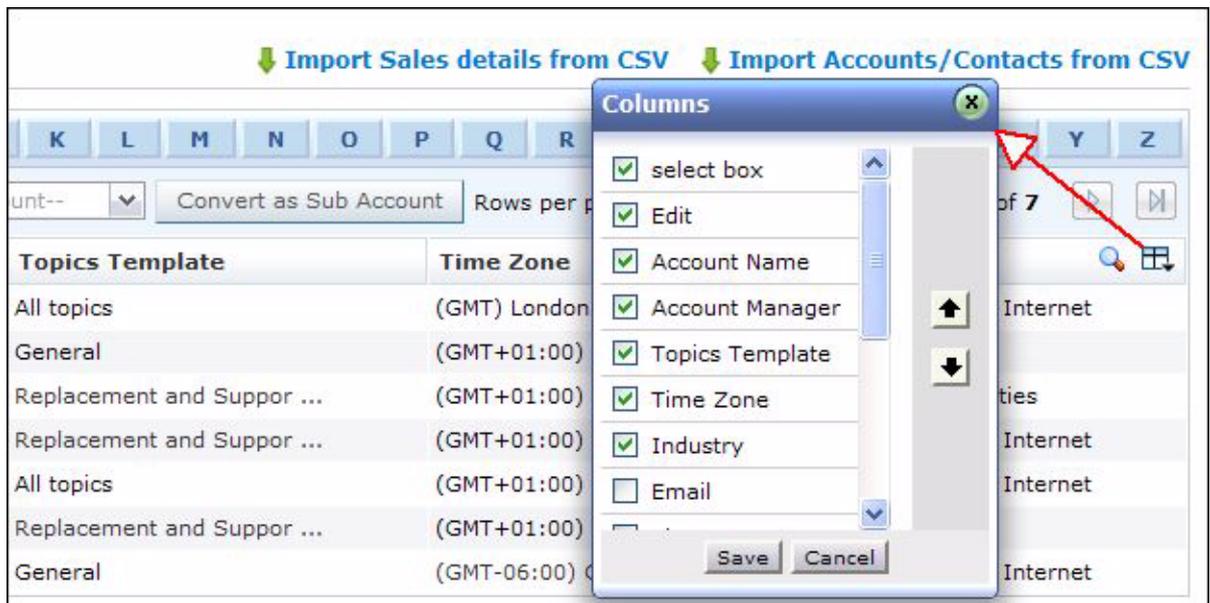
1. Select the check box beside the custom views to be deleted. The administrator has the privilege to create and delete public views.
2. Click **Delete** button. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The Custom View is deleted from the list.

Customizing Accounts List View

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus gives you an option to customize the accounts list view page by including columns of your choice.

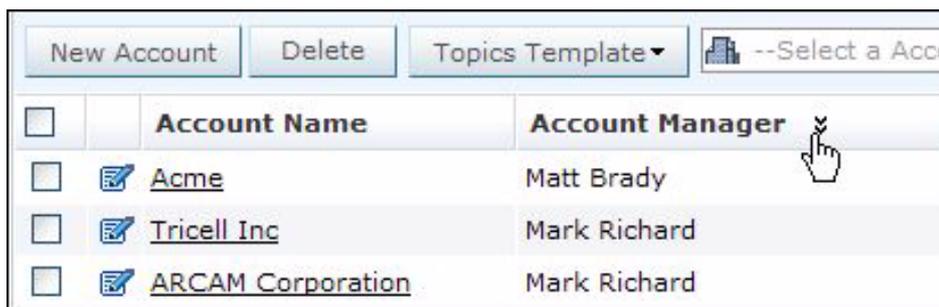
To customize the accounts list view,

1. Click on the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Click on **Column Chooser** icon . The available columns that can be displayed in the list view pops up. The columns that are currently visible in the list view is indicated with selected check box.



3. To remove a column, de-select the check box and click Save.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the check box beside the column you wish to add. Click Save.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**. Only the selected columns are added in the accounts list view.

Any Additional fields added for the account will also be displayed in the column list view. You can also sort the list view in ascending or descending order. Click Account Manager column header once to sort it in ascending order. Clicking twice will sort the column in descending order.



Searching Accounts

You can search for accounts based on the keywords and column wise search based on account parameters such as account name, account manager, topics template and so on from the accounts list view.

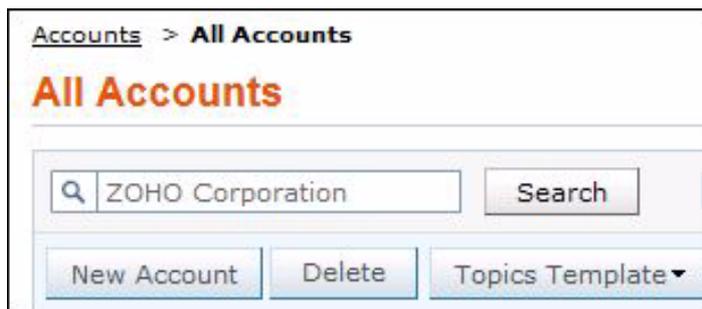
Search Accounts based on

- Keywords & Alphabets
- Column-wise Search

Search Accounts based on Keywords and Alphabets

Accounts tab

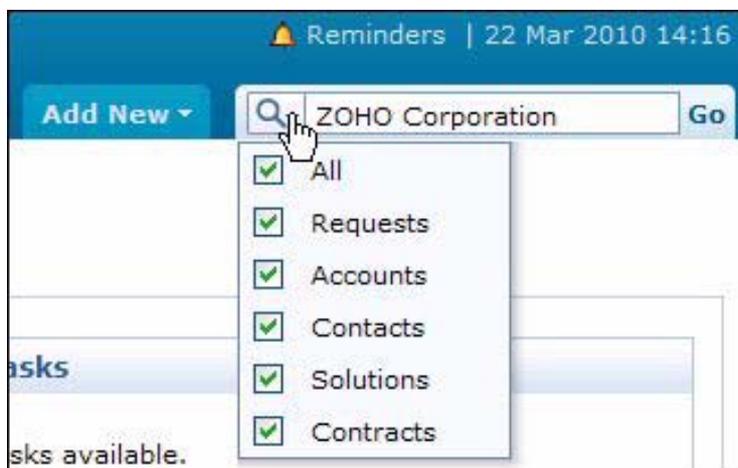
1. Click **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the account list view page.
2. Enter the keyword in the search field provided.
3. Click **Search**. All solutions that match the keyword provided by you in the search field is displayed.



Alternatively, from the accounts list view page, you can search for accounts in alphabetic order using the alphabets displayed.

Performing a Global Search

You can also perform a **Global Search** that searches the keyword in every module at one go. Advance search options such as, Wildcard search, phrase search, boolean search, field specific search and much more, can be used to make the search effective. To know more, click Search Tips.



Column-wise Search

You can also perform column-wise search of accounts if you know any of the account detail such as account name, account manager, topics template and so on. To perform a column-wise search,

1. From the accounts list view page, click on **Search** icon . The search field opens just below every column that is visible in the list view.
2. Enter the search string in the column of your choice. You can enter keywords in more than one column to perform a combined column search.
3. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.

Adding a New Account

Accounts in SupportCenter Plus can be considered as organizations and firms. All the account details such as, annual revenue, address, phone, email id and account manager details are recorded and update periodically. Thus giving you a complete picture of the account and its details.

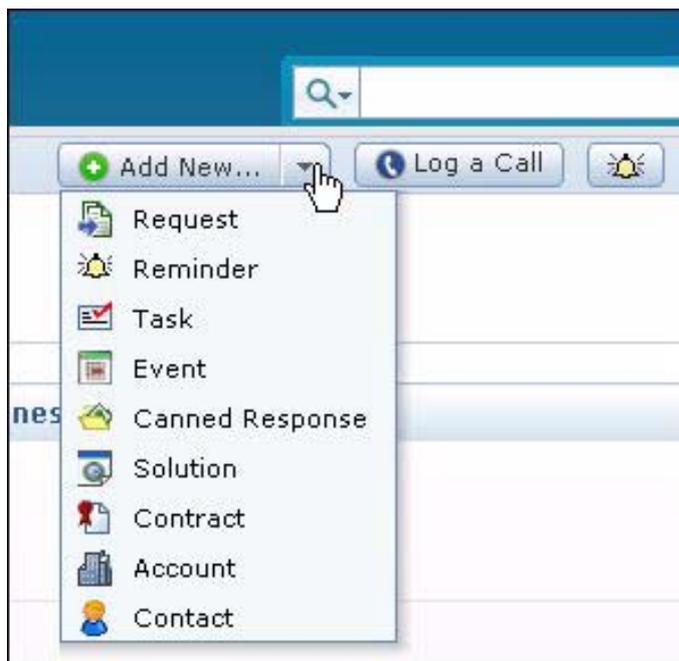
Adding New Account

The new account form can be accessed by two ways in SupportCenter Plus application.

- a. Add New drop down
- b. Accounts tab

Add New drop down

The Add New drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Accounts form from the home page.



To configure the New Account form, go to Step 3 in Accounts tab.

Accounts Tab

1. Click the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the account list view page.
2. Click on **New Account** button.
3. From the New Accounts form, specify the name of the Account in the **Account Name** field. This is a mandatory field.
4. Specify the **Annual Revenue** for the support service from the account.
5. Specify the details such as, **Email, Phone, Website** and **Fax** of the account.

6. Select the **Type of Industry** and **Time Zone** of the account from the drop down list.
7. Select the **Account Manager** of the account from the drop down list. To know more on account manager, refer Account Manager.
8. Specify the **Domain Names** for the account. The domain name is essential when contacts raise requests for the first time, the contact is automatically associated to the account with the specified domain name. Say, John (john@mycompany.com) sends an email to supportcenter for the first time and the domain, mycompany.com is already mapped to the account MyCompany Inc., then John would automatically be associated to MyCompany Inc. The Auto-Assign contact to account option can be enabled in Settings under Admin module.
9. Specify the **Address** of the account in the given text fields.
10. Specify relevant information about the account in the **Description** field.
11. If you would like to attach a file with the account then click **Attach a file** button and attach the document.
12. **Save** the details.

Account Details Page

The details of the account added by you, while creating the account is displayed under Accounts Details page. You can edit, delete and view the requests associated to the account from this page. In addition, you can associate contacts and products, add contacts, advisory and sub account to the account.

To view the accounts details page,

1. Click on the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts details page.
 2. Select the **Account Name** link of the account to be viewed. The View Account Details page opens.
-

The following topics are discussed in this section,

- **Viewing Account Details**
 - Editing Account
 - Deleting Account
 - **Viewing the Account's Recent Requests**
 - **Sub Accounts**
 - Adding New Sub Account
 - Converting Sub Account to Account
 - Associating Contacts to Sub Accounts
 - Viewing Sub Account's request
 - Editing Sub Account
 - Deleting Sub Account
 - **Viewing Contacts**
 - Associating existing contacts to account
 - Associating Bulk Contacts to account
 - Add New Contact to the account
 - **Viewing Products**
 - Associating Products to account
 - **Viewing Contracts**
 - Adding Contracts to account
 - **Viewing Advisory**
 - Adding Advisory to account
 - **Viewing Tasks**
 - Adding Task to account
 - **Viewing Events**
 - Adding Event to account
-

Account Details

This block displays details of the account that was entered while adding the account information. In addition, the account details block contains an option to view all the requests raised for that account and also perform operations such as edit and delete on the account.

Acme Corporation		Edit Account Delete Account	
Account Name	Acme Corporation	Account Manager	Alan Smith
Address	4900 Hopyard Road., Suit 310 Kenith Park CA USA USA 95488	Annual Revenue	\$ 0.0
Email	info@acme.com	Website	http://www.acme.com
Phone	974-893-7639	Fax	893-859-9483
Industry	Banking	Time Zone	(GMT+02:00) Bucharest
Description	-	Topics Template	General
Domain Names	acme.com , ac.com		
Attachments	 supportcenterplus.html (1.23 KB)		

Edit Account

You can also edit an account from the account details page,

1. Click **Edit Account** button.
2. The Edit Account page opens with the values populated while adding the account.
3. Modify the details and click **Update**.

Delete Account

To delete the account,

1. Click on **Delete Account** button.
2. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The account is removed from the list.

Note



If any requests are raised for the account, then the account cannot be deleted.

Recent Requests

You can view the recently raised account's requests. This helps you to understand the kind of requests received from the account. A total of five requests can be viewed in the Account Details page. To view the remaining requests click **View All Requests** link. You can also add a request from this page,

1. Click **Add Request** link. An Add Request form pops-up.
2. Enter the **Contact Name**. The contact name is mandatory field.
3. The account for which the request is raised is specified in a non-editable field.
4. If the contact details are available in the application, the E-mail, Phone, Mobile fields are automatically populated.

5. Specify the **Request Title**. This field is also mandatory.
6. Enter the **Description** of the request in the field provided.
7. Click **Save**.
8. If you need to add more details for the request, click **Add more Details** link. The page navigates to add new request under Request module.

Recent Requests View All Requests + Add request						
ID	Subject	Contact	Assigned To	Due By	Status	Date
8	Unable to restore the backup d...	George Mallroy	Shawn Adams	Apr 30, 2010 12:36 PM	Open	Apr 22, 2010 12:35 PM
7	Unable to restore the backup d...	George Mallroy	Shawn Adams	Apr 28, 2010 12:36 PM	Open	Apr 22, 2010 12:35 PM
6	Replace battery request	Andrew	Howard Stern	Apr 29, 2010 12:32 PM	Open	Apr 22, 2010 12:20 PM
1	Printer Problem	Andrew	Jeniffer Doe	Apr 1, 2010 02:53 PM	Onhold	Mar 31, 2010 12:51 PM
3	Server Crash	George Mallroy	Heather Graham	Mar 31, 2010 03:07 PM	Open	Mar 30, 2010 02:12 PM

Sub Accounts

You can add any number of Sub Accounts to the Account. Say, if HP in U.S. is the **Account**, then its branches in Germany, Spain, India, Canada, Japan, Singapore can be taken as **Sub-Account**. In addition, you can also associate contacts to the sub account. Thus keeping a track of all the sub account information.

Sub Accounts Add Sub Account				
	Sub Account Name	Phone	Email	Time Zone
  	Acme Corporations Amsterdam	+1-925-924-9400	info@acme.com	(GMT+01:00) Amsterdam
  	Acme Corporations London	+1-925-924-9400	info@acme.com	(GMT) London

Adding New Sub Account

1. Click on **Add Sub Account** button. The New Sub Account form opens with the account name in non editable text.
2. Specify the **Sub Account name**. The name is a mandatory field.
3. Enter the **Annual Revenue** for the support service for the sub account.
4. Specify the **Email, Phone, Website** and **Fax** of the account in the respective fields.
5. Select the **Type of Industry** and **Time Zone** of the sub account from the drop down list.
6. Specify the **Domain Names** for the sub account. The domain name is essential when contacts raise requests for the first time, the contact is automatically associated to the sub account with the specified domain name. Say, John (john@mycompany.com) sends an email to supportcenter for the first time and the domain, mycompany.com is already mapped to the sub account MyCompany Inc., then John would automatically be associated to MyCompany Inc. The Auto-Assign contact to sub account option can be enabled in Settings under Admin module.
7. Specify the **Address** of the account in the given text fields.
8. You can also specify relevant information about the account in the **Description** field.
9. If you would like to attach a file with the account then click **Attach a file** button and attach the document.
10. **Save** the details.

Convert Sub-account to Account

1. Click **Convert as Account** icon  as shown in the above image.
2. A dialog box pops up asking you confirmation on the change process.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. You can see the changed sub-account to account in the Accounts list view.

Viewing Sub Accounts

You can view the details of the sub account which you have added while creating the sub account under View Sub Account Details page. From this page, you can view all the sub account's requests, edit and delete the sub account. In addition, you can also associate contacts to a sub account.

Associating Contacts to Sub Accounts

1. Click on the name of the **Sub Account** to associate contacts. The View Sub Account Details page opens.
2. From this page, you can either search for contacts, associate bulk contacts from the contact list or add a new contact. To know more on associating contacts refer Contacts.

Viewing Sub Account's Requests

You can view the recently raised account's requests. This helps you to understand the kind of requests received from the sub account. A total of five requests can be viewed in the Sub Account Details page.

To view the remaining requests

1. Click **View All Requests** link.
2. You can also select the type of requests to be viewed from the **Filter** drop down.
3. **Close** the window.

Edit Account

You can also edit a sub account from the sub account details page,

1. Click **Edit Sub Account** button.
2. The Edit Sub Account page opens with the values populated while adding the sub account.
3. Modify the details and click **Update**.

Delete Sub Account

To delete the sub account,

1. Click on **Delete Sub Account** button.
2. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The sub account is removed from the list.

Contacts

You can search for existing contacts, associate bulk contacts or add a new contact for an account.

Associating existing contacts

1. Specify the contact name in **Select a Contact** field. If the contact name is available in the list, the name with the email id is listed. Select the contact from this list.



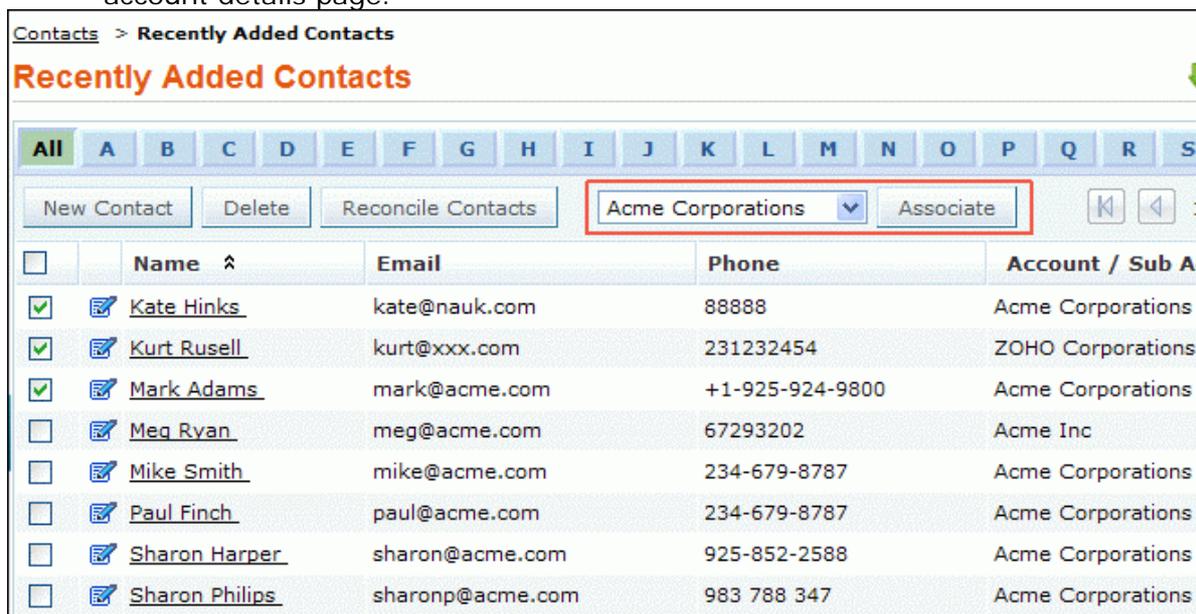
2. Click **Add to list** button. The specified contact is added to the contact list as shown.

You can also add a new contact and enter the contact details subsequently.

1. Specify the contact name in **Select a Contact** field.
2. Click **Add to List** button.
3. A dialog box appears, confirming to add the new contact and associate to the account.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The contact gets added to the list.

Associating Bulk Contacts

1. Click **Associate Contact** button to open all the **Recently Added Contacts** list view page.
2. Enable the check box beside the contact names you wish to associate with the account.
3. Click **Associate** button. You need not select the account from the drop down as the account name is already displayed.
4. The selected contacts are associated to the account and can be viewed in the account details page.



Add New Contact

1. Click on **New Contact** button.
2. The Contact Details page drops down, where you can specify the contact **Name**, **E-mail ID** and **Phone** number. The Name is a mandatory field.
3. Specify the access permissions for the contact to view the request by selecting any of the three radio buttons.
 - **Their Own Requests only:** Contact can view only their own requests in the account.
 - **All requests from their account (Primary Contact):** Contact can view all the requests in the account.
 - **All requests from their account and sub account:** Contacts can view all the requests from their account and sub accounts.
4. Specify the **Login details** such as the login name and password.
5. **Save** the details.

Associate Products

You can also associate products to an account from the accounts details page. On associating the products with the account, support rep handling the account will be aware of the product list under the account with its price, warranty period and date of sale.

1. Click **Associate Product** button to open the Associate Product page.
2. The account name is displayed in non editable text.
3. Select the **Product Name** from the drop down. The product name is a mandatory field.
4. On selecting the product, if the **Unit Price (\$)** for the product is mentioned, then the price is populated in the respective field.
5. Select the **Date of Sale** from the calendar icon .
6. Select the **Warranty Period** for the product in **years** and **months** from the drop down.
7. Specify the **No of Units**. The **Net Price (\$)** for the product is calculated based on the Unit Price and the No of Units mentioned.
8. If there are any **Discounts (\$)** or **Tax Rate (%)** for the product, then the same can be specified in the respective fields. The Net Price (\$) will be calculated accordingly.
9. You can also enter a note regarding the product in the **Comments** field.
10. **Save** the details. The associated product gets displayed under the Products block.

Add Contracts

If required, you also have an option to add contracts to the account/product from the accounts details page. The complete details of the contract along with active period, support plan and status can be viewed.

1. Click **Add Contract** button to open the New Contract page.
2. Specify the contract details and Save the changes. For more information refer Add New Contract page.
3. You can see the newly added contract getting displayed under the Contracts block.

Adding Advisory

You can add advisory notes about the account that includes, consultative opinions, announcements of issues, contract expiry notice and so on. You also have an option to display the advisory in the request details page.

For instance, a Service Contract for a printer has expired and a request on servicing the printer is raised to your support team. In this case, add a advisory stating that the Maintenance Contract for the printer has expired and display it in the request details page. So that the support rep assigned with the request will be aware that the contract for the product has expired and will take necessary steps.



1. Click **Add Advisory** button. The Add Advisory page opens.
2. Specify the advisory in the given text box.
3. If you wish to display the advisory in the request view page then select the option by enabling the check box. By default the check box will be selected. If you do not want to display the advisory in the request view page then de-select the check box.
4. **Save** the changes.

Adding Tasks

The Tasks associated to the account are listed under the **Task** block. Click the **Title** link of the task to view the task details. The page redirects to the **Activities** tab, from where you can perform edit and delete operations. You also have an option to add new tasks from this page. Refer Add New Task to know more.

Adding Events

The Events associated to the account are listed under the **Events** block. Click the **Title** link of the event to view the event details. The page redirects to the **Activities** tab, from where you can perform edit and delete operations. You also have an option to add new event from this page. Refer Add New Event to know more.

Editing and Deleting Account

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus provides you with the option to modify and delete the existing accounts, provided you have the corresponding access permission. The accounts for which requests have been raised cannot be deleted.

Editing Accounts

1. Click on the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the account to be edited. The Edit Account page opens with the values populated while adding the account.
3. Modify the details and **Update** the changes.

To perform a bulk edit of accounts,

1. From the accounts list view page, enable the check box beside the account to edit.
2. Click **Edit** button. The Edit Accounts window pops-up where you can perform bulk edit for the fields, **Industry**, **Account Manager** and **Time Zone**.
3. Click **Update** to save the changes. Click **Cancel** to return to the list view.

Further, you can also edit accounts from the account details page. To know more, refer Edit Accounts.

Deleting Account

1. Click on the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Select the account to be deleted by enabling the check box. You can also perform bulk delete by enabling more than one check box.
3. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box pops-up confirming the delete operation.
4. Click **OK** to proceed. You can see the account deleted from the list.
5. Click **Cancel** to retain the account information.

Alternatively, you can also perform the delete operation from the accounts details page. To know how, refer Delete Accounts.

	<p>Warning 1. When you delete an account, the associated contacts will also be deleted from the database.</p> <p>2. If request are raised for an account, then that account cannot be deleted.</p>
---	---

Assign/Unassign Topic Template

Using Topics Template, you can group specific topics under a template and assign this template to an account. Thus restricting the contacts, associated to the account, to view only solutions pertaining to the topics grouped under the template.

You can assign specific Topic Template to accounts from the accounts list view page. This template can also be used for other accounts, however multiple templates cannot be assigned to an account. To create topics template refer Topics Template under **Solutions** module.

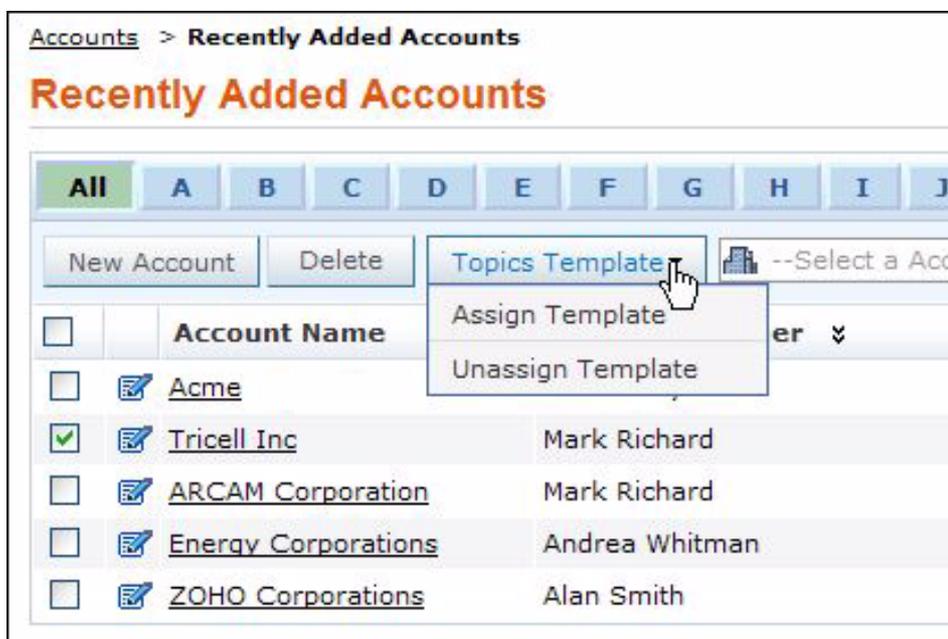
Note



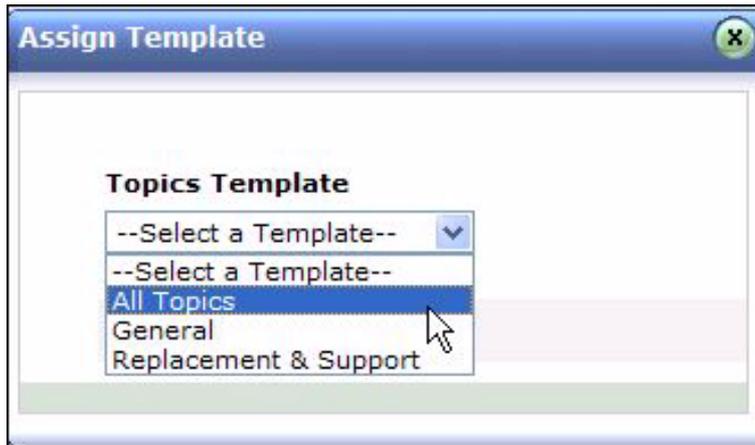
1. Topics Template can be shared by other accounts.
2. A single account can be assigned to one topics template.
3. When users without accounts log into SupportCenter Plus, you can configure the corresponding solution views under Admin -> Settings -> Solution View.

Assigning Topic Template

1. Click the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the Accounts list view page.
2. Enable the check box beside the account you want to assign topics template and click **Topics Template** drop down.



3. Select the **Assign Template** option from the list. The **Assign Template** page opens as shown below,



4. Select a Topic Template from the drop down list.
5. Click **Assign** button.

Note On assigning the Topics Template to an account, the solutions related to the topics template can be viewed by the contacts (associated to the account) once they login to the application using their login credentials.

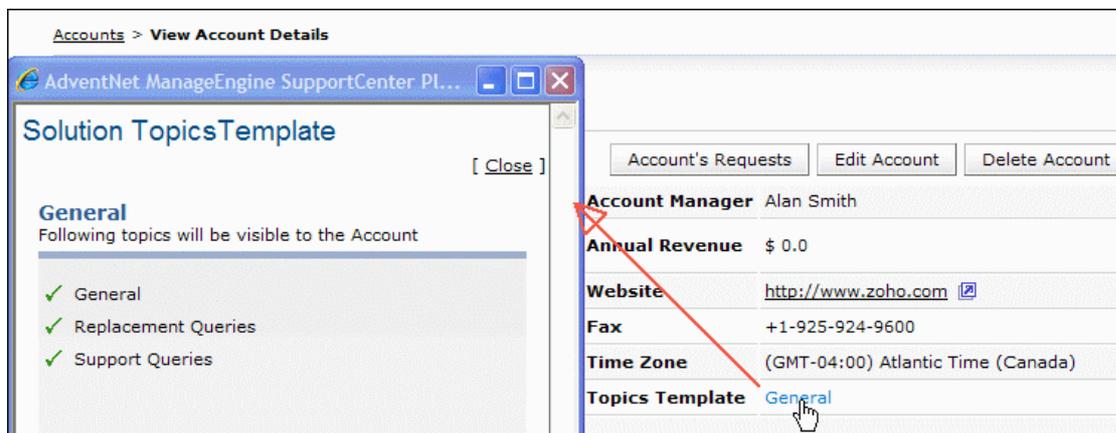
Unassigning Topic Template

1. From the **Accounts** list view page, enable the check box beside the account name to be unassigned of topics templates.
2. Click the **Topics Template** drop down and select the **Unassign Template** option. You can see the topics name removed under the **Topics Template** title in the All Accounts page.

Viewing Topics Template

To view the Topic Template assigned to an account,

1. From the accounts list view page, click on the Account Name. The **Accounts Detail** page opens.
2. Under the Account Details block, click the hyperlink of the Topics Template name to view the services provided.

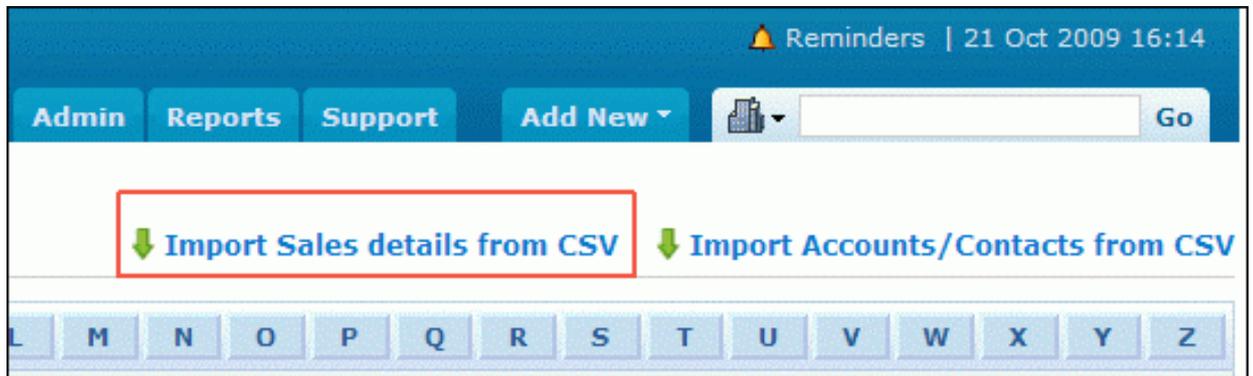


Importing Sales details from CSV File

The Sales details include the products purchased by the Accounts along with the details such as date of sale, warranty period, number of units purchased and so on. You can either import sales details from other application or you can directly import the sales details in CSV format into SupportCenter Plus.

To import sales details from CSV file,

1. Click the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Click **Import Sales details from CSV** link.



Step 1: Upload CSV file

1. Click on **Browse** button to select the CSV file.
2. On locating the CSV file from the file chooser window, click **Open**.
3. Select the **File Encoding** from the drop down.
4. Click **Next >>** button.

Step 2: Map Columns

1. Map the application sales field with the field names from the CSV file.
2. Click **Next>>**. Click **Previous <<** to go back to Step 1.

Step 3: Import

1. Click **Import Now** button. The sales detail values from the CSV file is imported.
2. Once the import is complete, the data on how many records were added, how many overwritten, and how many failed to import is displayed in the pop-up.
3. If at any point you wish to stop importing from the CSV file, click the **Exit** button.

Importing Accounts/Contacts from CSV File

Adding each and every account along with the contact information is endless, and is even more tedious to keep the information in sync with the organization's customer database.

SupportCenter Plus provides an easy-to-use CSV import option to import all relevant account and contact information from your existing database or even from other applications. The application also provides, Scheduling a CSV import to keep its database in sync with the customer's database.

To import contacts from CSV file,

1. Click the **Accounts** tab in the header pane to open the accounts list view page.
2. Click **Import Accounts/Contacts from CSV** link.

Step 1: Upload CSV file

1. Click on **Browse** button to select the CSV file.
2. On locating the CSV file from the file chooser window, click **Open**.
3. Select the **File Encoding** from the drop down.
4. Click **Next >>** button.

Step 2: Map Columns

From this section you can import both account and contact information at the same time. Thus establishing the contact-account relationship and also self service login to the contacts in just one import. For this, every individual contact available in the CSV file should be associated to an account.

1. Map the application contact fields with the field names from the CSV file.
2. Click **Next>>**. Click **Previous <<** to go back to Step 1.

Step 3: Import

1. Click **Import Now** button. The account/contact details from the CSV file is imported.
2. Once the import is complete, the data on how many records were added, how many overwritten, and how many failed to import is displayed in the pop-up.
3. If at any point you wish to stop importing from the CSV file, click the **Exit** button.

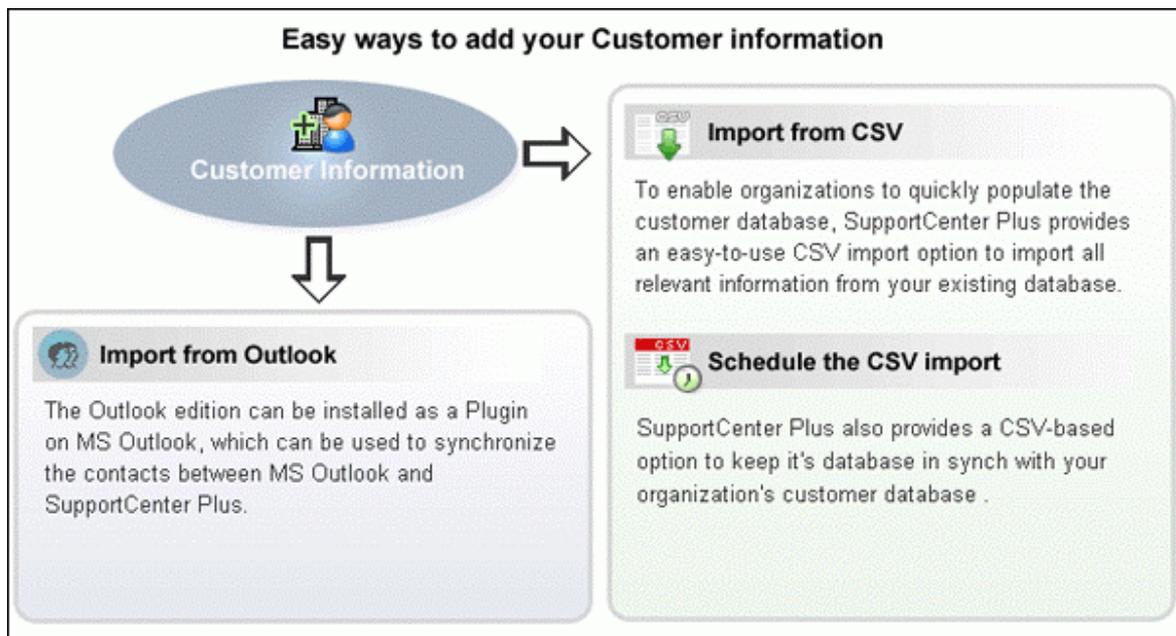
<p>Warning</p> 	<p>The Login name column is the identifier for contacts. So two contacts cannot have the same login name since the existence of a contact is checked based on the login name value.</p> <p>If by mistake there was any mismatch of fields during mapping, and a new import of CSV is performed, the records is updated based on the login name value. If there were any records that did not have any login name at all or there was mismatch in the login name itself, then duplicate entries is created.</p> <p>In these cases, delete such entries from the contact list and import again or manually edit the information available.</p>
---	--

Contacts

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus allows you to maintain valuable customer information and keep it up-to-date. The customer information includes, details of the account associated to the contact and requests raised by the contact. Customers can access the self service portal with their login credentials, where the status of the request sent by them to the support team can be checked.

SupportCenter Plus provides two simple ways to add your Customer information.

- a. Importing from Outlook
- b. Importing from CSV and schedule a CSV import.



Importing from Outlook

The SupportCenter Plus Outlook edition is productivity-enhancement software that can be used with SupportCenter Plus system and Microsoft Outlook. The Outlook edition can be installed on user's MS Outlook as a plugin, which can be used to synchronize the contacts in between Microsoft Outlook and the SupportCenter Plus. To know more on refer, www.manageengine.com/products/support-center/outlook-integration.html.

Importing from CSV & Scheduling CSV Import

The easy-to-use CSV import option quickly imports all the relevant information from the existing database and also provides an option to keep the database in sync with the organization's customer database.

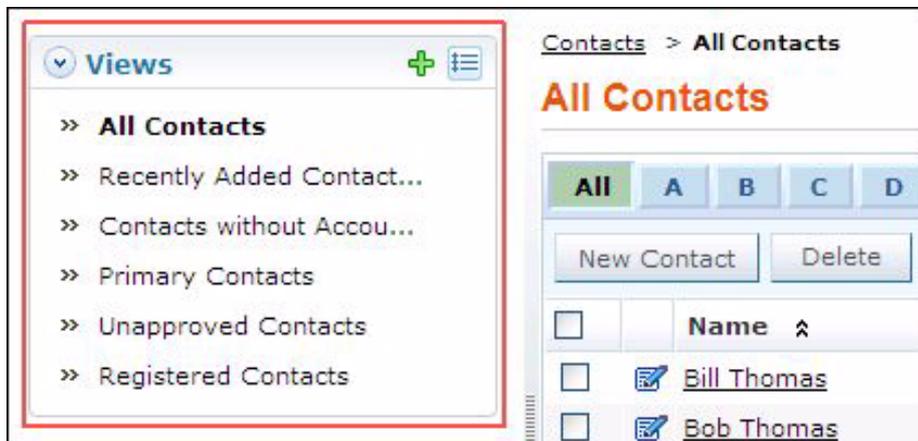
Contacts List View

On clicking the Contacts tab, the page redirects you to the Contacts List View page where you can maintain and organize all the Contacts created in SupportCenter Plus. You have the facility to,

- Customize the page to display the contacts
- Option to view contacts based on filters
- Import Accounts/Contacts from CSV
- Effective Search option through keywords and alphabets.
- Set the number of contacts to be displayed per page
- Perform operations such as creating new contact, editing and deleting contacts.

From the Contacts List View, you can:

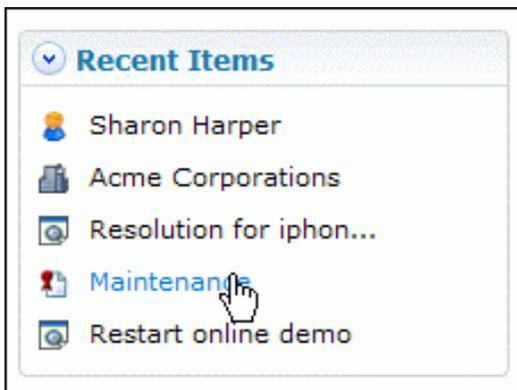
1. **Views:** Customize the page to display the Contacts using Custom Views option. The Contacts is sorted based on the filter criteria you specify while creating the custom view.
 -  - create new custom filter.
 -  - view, edit and delete the filters.



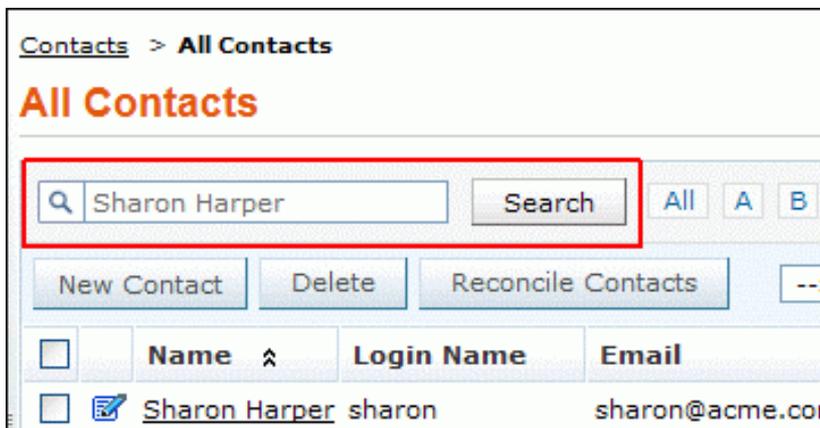
2. **Import Accounts/Contact from CSV:** Import relevant data of account and contact information from the existing database as well as from other applications. [Refer Importing Accounts/Contacts from CSV]
3. **Set the number of Contacts per page and navigation buttons:** View the entire list of contacts configured in SupportCenter Plus application by settings the number of Contacts to be viewed per page. Navigate through the pages using the next and previous navigation buttons.



5. **Recent Items:** All the recent items viewed by you is displayed under the Recent Items block. You can also navigate back to the pages on clicking on the item link.



6. **Search:** Search for Contacts either through alphabets or column-wise search option. [Refer Searching Contacts]



7. **Creating New Contact:** Create New Contacts. [Refer Adding New Contact]
8. **Bulk Operations:**
 1. **Deleting:** Delete bulk Contacts from the list view. [Refer Deleting Contact]
 2. **Associate Contacts to Accounts:** Associate bulk contacts to an account. [Refer Associate Contacts to Accounts]
 3. **Reconcile Contacts:** Reconcile contacts who have multiple entries in SupportCenter Plus. [Refer Reconcile Contacts]

Contacts based on Filters

You can view Contacts based on filters from the Contacts list view page. In addition, you can also create new filters using the Custom View option to place Contacts in specific groups. There are some pre defined filters in SupportCenter Plus as shown,

The screenshot shows the 'Contacts' page in the ManageEngine Support Center Plus. The navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Requests', 'Solutions', 'Contracts', 'Accounts', 'Contacts', and 'Admin'. The 'Views' dropdown menu is open, showing the following options:

- » All Contacts
- » **Recently Added Contact...**
- » Contacts without Accou...
- » Primary Contacts
- » Unapproved Contacts
- » Registered Contacts

The main content area displays the 'Recently Added Contacts' view. It includes a breadcrumb 'Contacts > Recently Added Contacts', a title 'Recently Added Contacts', and a table with columns 'Name' and 'Email'. The table lists two contacts: Kate Hinks and Kurt Rusell.

- **All Contacts** Lists all the Contacts available in SupportCenter Plus
- **Recently Added Contacts** Lists the most recently added Contacts.
- **Contacts without Account** Lists all the Contacts that are not associated to an account.
- **Primary Contacts** Lists all the contacts that are associated to an account and can view all the requests raised from their accounts.
- **Unapproved Contacts** Lists all the contacts that require approval from the administrator. For instance, if a non logged in user raised a request from the self service portal, then the user is added as an unapproved contact.
- **Registered Contacts** New Users who have registered for SupportCenter Plus through the Customer portal are listed under this category. These contacts need to be approved by the administrator.

Custom Views

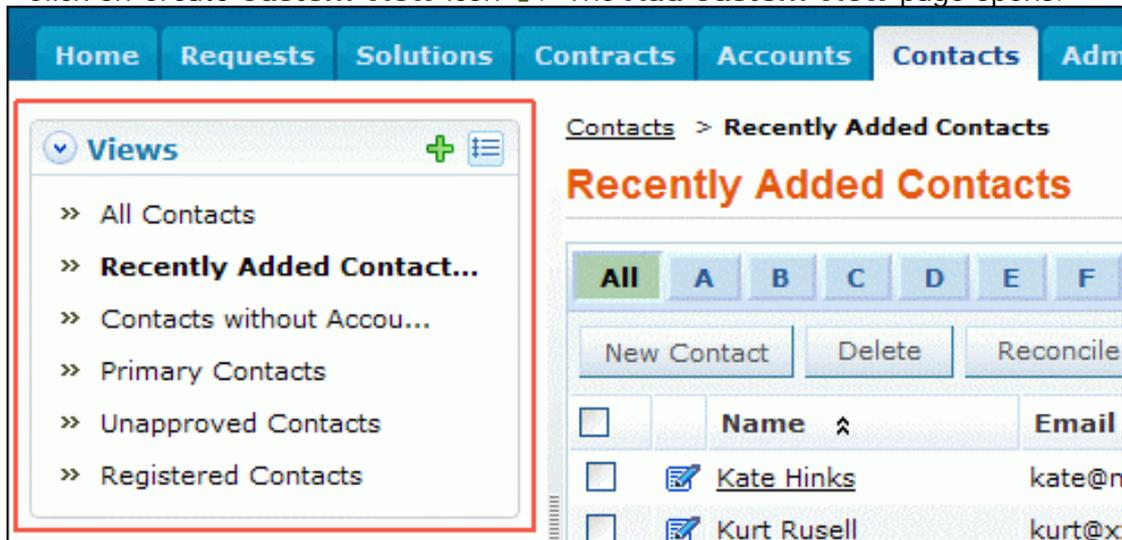
You can create your own customized Contacts list view page. The Contacts is sorted based on the filter criteria you specify while creating the custom view. Thus helping you to sort and view the Contacts based on your requirement.

- Create Custom View
- Manage View

Creating Custom View

If you want to view all the Contacts from a particular account,

1. Click on the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the Contacts list view page.
2. Click on Create **Custom View** icon **+**. The **Add Custom View** page opens.



3. In the Add Custom View page, specify a **View Name**. This field is mandatory.
4. If you are the administrator and want this custom view to be available only when you log in, select the check box beside **Make this view as private custom view**. The custom view is made private. By default, the custom view for an administrator is public. If you are a support rep without administrator login privilege then by default the created custom view is private. The option to "Make this view as private custom view" is not available.
5. In the **Advance Filtering** block, select the criteria to be filtered from **Column** drop down along with its matching **Criteria**. For instance, select "Account Name" from Column drop down and "is" from criteria.
6. Click on **Choose** button.
7. From **Select Column Data** pop up choose your option. You can select options based on your selected column and criteria.
8. Click **Add to Filter** button to save the filter criteria details. The filter criteria is listed in **Filter Set** block.

Contacts > Custom Views

Add Custom View

Define Custom View

View Name *

Make this as a private custom view

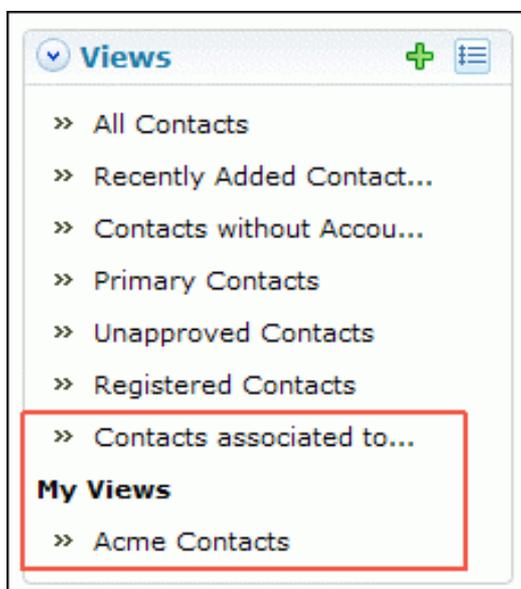
Advanced Filtering

Account Name is

Filter Set Match ALL of the following (AND) Match ANY of the following (OR)

- If you wish to add more filter conditions to this view then, select the required column, criteria & conditions of the filter.
- If there are more than two criteria, specify **AND** or **OR** conditions by enabling either of the two radio buttons.
- Click **Save**. Click **Save and Add New** to save and add another custom view.

The Custom View is now displayed under **Views** in the Contacts list view page. The custom view marked as private is listed under My Views and the public custom view is displayed along with the predefined filters.



Manage Custom Views

You can view all your customized view under Manage Custom Views. From this page you can add, edit and delete a custom view.

- Click on the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the Contacts list view page.

2. Click **Manage Custom View** icon . The **Custom View** page opens listing all the created custom views.
 - - indicates the custom view is public and can be viewed by all users.
 - - indicates the custom view is private and can be viewed only by the creator of the custom view.

Contacts > Custom Views

Custom Views

New Custom View Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter Name	Created By
<input type="checkbox"/> 	Acme Contacts	administrator
<input type="checkbox"/> 	Contacts associated to Account	administrator

Note



1. If you are the administrator then you can view all your customized private and public views.
2. If you are a support rep then you can add only private custom views.

Edit Custom Views

To edit a custom view,

1. Click the **edit** icon  beside the filter name you wish to edit.
2. From **Edit Custom View** page, edit the details.
3. Click **Save**. You can also add a new custom view by clicking **Save and Add New** button.

Delete Custom Views

To delete custom views,

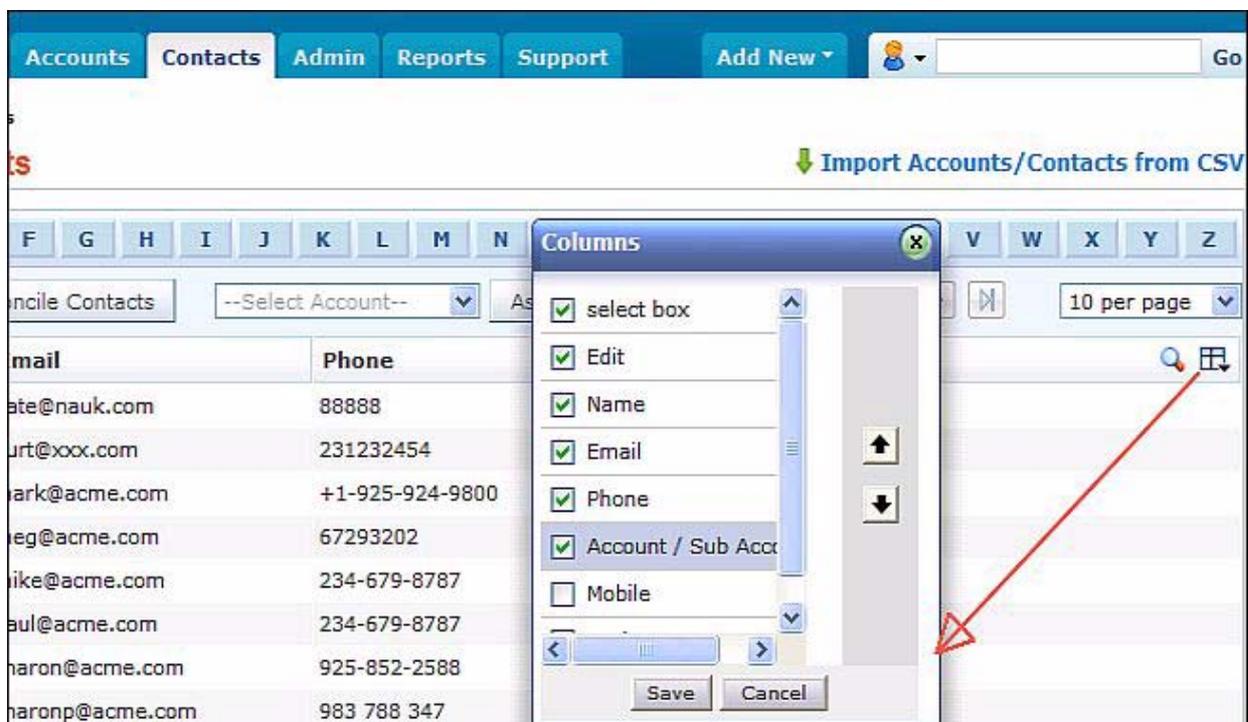
1. Select the check box beside the custom views to be deleted. The administrator has the privilege to create and delete public views.
2. Click **Delete** button. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The Custom View is deleted from the list.

Customizing Contact List View

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus gives you an option to customize the contacts list view page by including columns of your choice.

To customize the contacts list view,

1. Click on the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the Contacts list view page.
2. Click on **Column Chooser** icon . The available columns that can be displayed in the list view pops up. The columns that are currently visible in the list view is indicated with selected check box.



3. To remove a column, de-select the check box and click Save.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the check box beside the column you wish to add. Click Save.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**. Only the selected columns are added in the request list view.

Any Additional fields added for the contact will also be displayed in the column list view. You can also sort the list view in ascending or descending order. Clicking it once sorts it in ascending order. Clicking twice sorts the column in descending order.

<input type="checkbox"/> All <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D <input type="checkbox"/> E <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> G <input type="checkbox"/> H <input type="checkbox"/> I		
<input type="button" value="New Contact"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Reconcile Contacts"/>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Email
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Kate Hinks</u>	kate@nauk.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Kurt Rusell</u>	kurt@xxx.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Mark Adams</u>	mark@acme.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Meg Ryan</u>	meg@acme.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Mike Smith</u>	mike@acme.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Paul Finch</u>	paul@acme.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Sharon Harper</u>	sharon@acme.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	 <u>Sharon Philips</u>	sharonp@acme.com

Search Contacts

You can search for contacts based on the keywords and column wise search options using contact parameters such as contact name, email ID, account to which the contact belongs and so on.

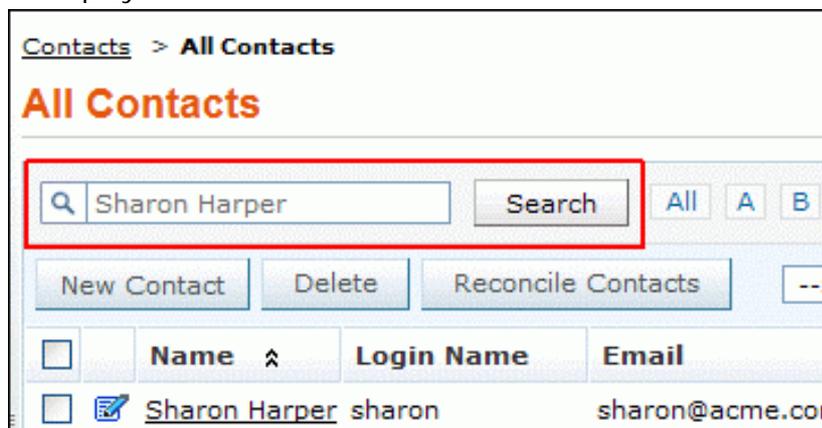
Search contacts based on

- Keywords & Alphabets
 - Column-wise Search
-

Search contacts based on Keywords and Alphabets

Contacts tab

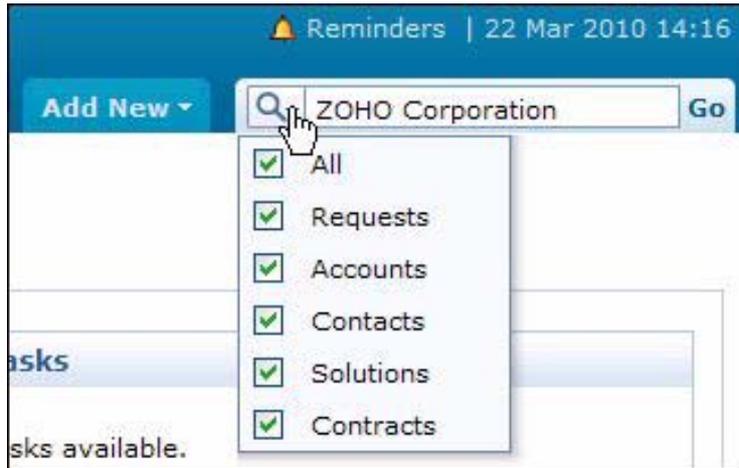
1. Click Contacts tab in the header pane to open the contact list view page
2. Enter the keyword in the search field provided.
3. Click **Search**. All solutions that match the keyword provided by you in the search field is displayed.



Alternatively, from the contacts list view page, you can search for contacts in alphabetic order using the alphabets displayed.

Performing a Global Search

You can also perform a **Global Search** that searches the keyword in every module at one go. Advance search options such as, Wildcard search, phrase search, boolean search, field specific search and much more, can be used to make the search effective. To know more, click Search Tips.



Column-wise Search

You can also perform column-wise search of contacts if you know any of the contact detail such as contact name, email ID, login name and so on. To perform a column-wise search,

1. From the contacts list view page, click on **Search** icon . The search field opens just below every column that is visible in the list view.
2. Enter the search string in the column of your choice. You can enter keywords in more than one column to perform a combined column search.
3. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.

Adding New Contact

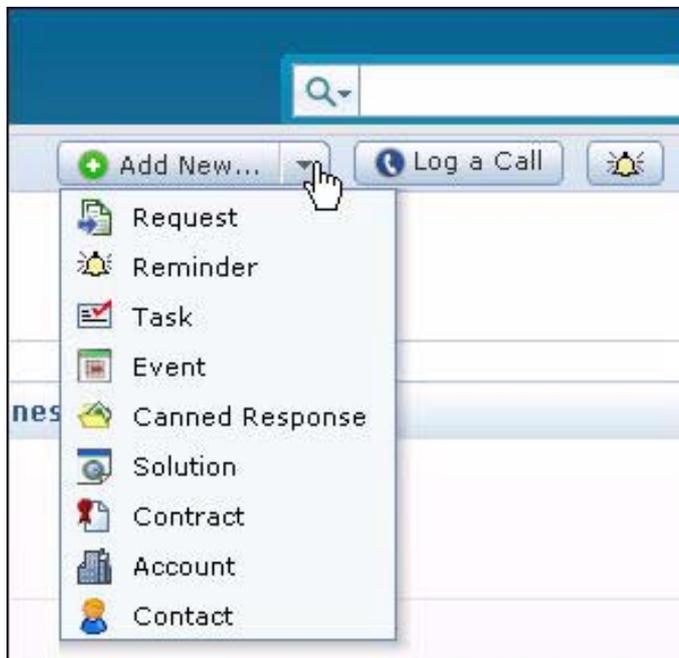
You can add contacts manually in SupportCenter Plus, associate them to accounts and provide login access permission. In addition, you can also configure the permission to view requests for the contact while accessing the Customer Portal.

The new contact form can be accessed in two ways in the SupportCenter Plus application,

- a. Add New drop down
- b. Contacts tab

Add New drop down

The Add New drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Contacts form the home page.



To configure the New Contact form, go to Step 3 in Contacts tab.

Contacts Tab

1. Click the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the Contact list view page.
2. Click on **New Contact** button.
3. From the New Contacts form, specify the name of the contact in the **Name** field. This is a mandatory field. If the existing contacts have similar names then SupportCenter gives an option to use any of the following user profiles as shown below,

[Contacts](#) > **New Contact**

New Contact

Contact details

Name *

Do you want to use any of the following user profiles?

- [Sharon Harper](#) (sharon@acme.com)
- [Sharon Hinks](#) (sharonhink@acme.com)

E-mail

Alternate E-mail

4. Specify the details such as, **Email ID, Phone** and **Mobile number** of the contact. If the contact has an **Alternative E-mail**, then enter the same in the given text field.
5. Specify the Job Title of the contact.
6. You can associate the contact to a account or sub account. Select the **Account/Sub Account** from the drop down. If the account is unavailable in the list, then you can add a new account using the **Add New Account** link. The drop down box disappears and a text field appears where you can enter the Account Name.
7. Provide permission to the contact, to view requests while accessing Customer Portal by enabling either of the radio button.
 - **Their Own Requests only:** By default, this option is enabled irrespective of whether the contact is associated or not associated to an account.
 - **All Requests from their Account (Primary Contact):** Contacts can view all the requests raised from their account.
 - **All Requests from their Account and sub account:** Contacts can view all the requests raised from their account and sub accounts.
9. If there are any **Additional Contact Details**, then enter the same in the respective fields. You can configure Additional Contact Fields in the Admin module.
10. You can provide login permission to the Customer Portal on enter the **Login Name** and **Password** under Login details block.
11. Re-enter the password in **Re-type Password** field.
12. Specify relevant information about the contact in the **Description** field.
13. **Save** the details.

You can send the login details to the contact by enabling "Send Self Service login details" option in **Notifications Rules** under the **Admin** tab. [Refer Notification Rules to know how to set the notification rules]

Contact Details Page

The details of the contact added by you, while creating the contact is displayed under Contacts Details page. You can edit, delete and view the requests raised by the contact from this page.

To view the contact details page,

1. Click on the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the contacts details page.
2. Select the **Contact Name** link of the contact to be viewed. The View Contact Details page opens.

Contact Details

This block displays details of the contact that was entered while adding the contact information. In addition, the contact details block also contains option to view the requests raised by the contact and perform operations such as edit and delete on the contact details.

[Contacts](#) > [View Contact](#)



Sharon Harper
Can view all requests from "Acme Inc" and its Sub Accounts.

Contact Details [Edit Contact](#) [Delete Contact](#)

Contact Name	Sharon Harper	Account Name	Acme Inc
Phone	925-852-2564  Call	Mobile	1234567890  Call
Email:	sharon@acme.com 	Alternate Email:	sharonharper@acme.com 
Remote Assistance	 Send Invite	Job Title	Support Rep
Description	Support Rep		

Recent Requests [View All Requests](#) [+ Add request](#)

ID	Subject	Assigned To	Due By	Status	Date
3	Password Reset	John Roberts	Oct 26, 2009 12:21 PM	Open	Oct 26, 2009 10:21 AM
2	mail fetching does not work	John Roberts	Oct 26, 2009 12:20 PM	Open	Oct 26, 2009 10:20 AM
1	replace battery request	Shawn Adams	Oct 26, 2009 09:49 AM	Open	Oct 23, 2009 05:49 PM

Edit Contact

You can also edit a contact from the contact details page,

1. Click **Edit Contact** button.
2. The Edit Contact page opens with the values populated while adding the contact.
3. Modify the details and click **Update**.

Delete Contact

To delete the contact,

1. Click on **Delete Contact** button.
2. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The contact is removed from the list.

Recent Requests

The Contact details page displays a quick view of all the recent requests raised by the contact. You can also view all the requests raised by the contact by clicking **View All Requests** link.

The screenshot shows a table titled "Open Requests by Sharon Harper". At the top, there is a filter dropdown menu currently set to "Open Requests". The dropdown menu is open, showing options: "Open Requests", "Requests On Hold", "Pending Requests", "Closed Requests", "All Requests", and "Completed Requests". The "All Requests" option is highlighted. Below the dropdown is a table with the following data:

ID	Subject	Assigned To	Due By	Status	Date
3	Passw	John Roberts	Oct 26, 2009 12:21 PM	Open	Oct 26, 2009 10:21 AM
2	mail f	John Roberts	Oct 26, 2009 12:20 PM	Open	Oct 26, 2009 10:20 AM
1	replace battery request	Shawn Adams	Oct 26, 2009 09:49 AM	Open	Oct 23, 2009 05:49 PM

Select the filter to view the requests to be displayed as shown in the image above.

If you are on a phone call with the contact then you can add a request instantly from the contact details page. Click **+ Add Request** link. The details of the contact is automatically filled in the respective fields. All you need to do is enter the Request Title and the Description of the request.

The screenshot shows the "Add Request" form overlaid on a contact details page. The form contains the following fields:

- Contact Name *: Sharon Harper
- Account: Acme Inc
- Email: sharon@acme.com
- Phone: 925-852-2564
- Mobile: 1234567890
- Request Title *: (empty)
- Description: (empty text area)

At the bottom of the form are "Save" and "Add more Details" buttons. In the background, the contact details page is visible, showing a "Requests" section with a "+ Add request" button highlighted in a red box. Below the form, a partial view of the request table is visible:

1	replace battery request	Shawn Adams	Oct 26, 2009 09:49 AM	Open	Oct 23, 2009 05:49 PM
---	-------------------------	-------------	-----------------------	------	-----------------------

If you wish to add more details to the request like, setting the priority and assigning to support rep, select **Add more Details** link which opens the new request form.

Tasks and Events

The tasks and events associated to the contact are listed in the Tasks and Events block respectively. You can also add a new task and event from this page. Clicking on the Title of the task or event redirects you to the Activities tab, from where you can perform edit and delete operations. To know more on adding new task and event, refer Add New Tasks and Add New Events.

Editing and Deleting Contact

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus provides you with the option to modify and delete the existing contacts, provided you have the corresponding access permission.

Edit Contact

1. Click the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the contacts list view page.
2. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the name of the contact you wish to edit. The Edit Contact page opens with the values populated while adding the contact.
3. Modify the details and Update the changes.

Alternatively, you can also edit the contacts from the contact details page. To know more, refer Edit Contact.

To reset the password of the contact,

1. From the Edit Contact form, click **Reset Password** link beside the **Password** field. The **Reset Password** dialog pops up.
2. Enter the password in the **New Password** field. This is mandatory field.
3. Click **Reset Password**. The pop-up refreshes with a success message.
4. Click **Ok** to close the window.

Note



To intimate the change of password to the requester automatically once you have reset the password, you need to enable "Send Self-Service login details" option in **Notifications Rules** under **Admin** tab.

Delete Contact

To delete bulk contact information from the application,

1. Click the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the contact list view page.
2. Select the check box beside the name of the contact you wish to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog pop-up.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion of the contact information.

Alternatively, you can also delete contacts from the contact details page. To know more, refer Delete Contact.

Reconcile Contacts

Contacts with multiple entries in SupportCenter Plus can be reconciled into one. Say for instance, a contact sends a request from mail address as sharon@acme.com, and replies to the request from another mail address as sharonharper@acme.com, then these two mail address are considered as two different contacts in SupportCenter Plus.

If you are aware that the same user is sending mails from different mail addresses then you can reconcile the two users as one. And in future if you receive mails from the reconciled mail id, the application shows or refers to the current available name and mail ID.

1. Click the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the Contact list view page.
2. Select the check box beside the contacts to be reconciled.
3. Click **Reconcile Contacts** button to open the Reconcile Contacts page.
4. All the selected contact is listed in the page. Enable the radio button beside the primary contact.
5. Click **Reconcile**. All the contacts except for the selected primary contact is reconciled.

Associate Accounts with Contacts

Bulk contacts can be associated to an account using this option.

To associate accounts with contacts,

1. Click the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the contact list view page.
2. Enable the check box beside the contacts you wish to associated to the account.
3. Select the **Account** from the **Select Account** drop down.
4. Click **Associate**. A success message appears on successfully associating the contacts with the account.

[Contacts](#) > **Recently Added Contacts**

Recently Added Contacts

All A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q

New Contact Delete Reconcile Contacts

--Select Account-- Associate

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name ↑	Login Name	Email	Account
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bill Thomas	-	bill@	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bob Williams	-	bob@acme.com	

Account selection dropdown menu:

- Select Account--
- Acme corporations
- Acme Corporations, Amsterdam
- Acme Inc**
- Energy Corporations

Unapproved Contacts

Contacts added or imported by the administrator are approved contacts, by default. These contacts are provided with customer portal login details and their requests are tracked periodically. Apart from these contacts, there are users who send request to SupportCenter Plus whose contact information is unavailable in the database. These contacts are added under Unapproved Contact list in the application.

These requests are logged into the application based on the options selected under **Contact auto - addition configuration** under Admin tab -> Settings.

Approving Unapproved Contacts

1. Click on the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the contact list view page.
2. Click on **Unapproved Contacts** link under Views.
3. From the Unapproved Contact list view, select the contacts to be approved by enabling the check box.
4. Click **Approve**.
5. To approve the contacts and also provide customer portal login permission, click **Approve & provide login** button. The selected contacts are listed under All contacts.

You can remove unapproved contacts by clicking on **Delete** button.

Registered Contacts

Registered contacts are similar to that of unapproved contacts, except, these contacts have registered for SupportCenter Plus through the Customer Portal. On registering, these contacts are listed under Registered Contacts from where the users have to be approved and provided login permissions to the customer portal.

Approving Registered Contacts

1. Click on the **Contacts** tab in the header pane to open the contact list view page.
2. Click on **Registered Contacts** link under Views.
3. From the Registered Contacts list view, select the contacts to be approved by enabling the check box.
4. Click **Approve**.
5. You can also approve and provide customer portal login permission to the contact by clicking **Approve & provide login** button. The selected contacts are listed under All contacts.

You can remove registered contacts by clicking on **Delete** button.

Configurations

All configurations for the application are grouped under **Admin** tab. You can access the various configuration options by logging into the application with the username and password of an admin user.

On logging into the application with the login credentials of an administrator, the Configuration Wizard page opens. Follow the instructions to proceed with the configurations.

The various configurations are grouped under the following major heads:

- Helpdesk Settings
- Account Settings
- Contract Settings
- User and Related Settings
- User Survey Settings
- Organization Settings

Each of these configurations is explained in details in the following sections.

The screenshot displays the 'Admin' tab in the ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Requests', 'Solutions', 'Contracts', 'Accounts', 'Contacts', 'Admin', 'Reports', and 'Support'. The 'Admin' tab is active, and the page shows a grid of configuration options grouped into six main categories:

- Helpdesk Settings:** Mail Server Settings, Mail Configuration, Twitter Settings, Telephony Server Settings, Helpdesk Customizer, Request Template, Scheduled Requests, Notification Rules, Business Rules, Time Entry Type, TimeEntry - Additional Fields.
- Account Settings:** Industry, Product Type, Product - Additional Fields, Product, Account - Additional Fields, Sales - Additional Fields, Schedule CSV import, Customer Portal Settings.
- Contract Settings:** Support Services, Support Plans, Service Level Agreements, Operational hours, Holidays.
- User and Related Settings:** Roles, Contact - Additional Fields, Support Rep - Additional Fields, Support Reps, Account Managers, Group, Windows Domains.
- User Survey Settings:** Survey Settings, Define Survey, Survey Preview, Survey Results.
- Organization Settings:** Organization Details, Settings, System Notification Settings, Backup Scheduling.

The bottom of the page features a navigation bar with the same menu items as the top: Home | Requests | Solutions | Contracts | Accounts | Contacts | Admin | Reports | Support.

Helpdesk Settings

If you have logged into the application as the administrator then you need to configure the helpdesk settings before the request module can be opened for real time functioning of fetching the customer support mails and tracking the same.

The following helpdesk settings need to be configured,

- Mail Server settings 
 - Mail Configuration 
 - Twitter Settings 
 - Telephony Server Settings 
 - Helpdesk Customizer 
 - Request Template 
 - Scheduled Requests 
 - Notification Rules 
 - Business Rules 
 - Time Entry Type 
 - Time Entry Additional Fields 
 - Remote Assistance Setup 
-

Mail Server Settings

In order to fetch and send mails from the application, you need to configure the Mail Server Settings. You need to set both the Incoming and Outgoing mail server settings to send and receive mails without any problems.

To configure mail server settings,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click the **Mail Server Settings** icon  under the Helpdesk Settings block. The **Mail Server Settings** page opens to view the **Incoming**, **Outgoing** and **Spam Filter** tabs.

-
- Incoming Mail Settings
 - Outgoing Mail Settings
 - Spam Filter
-

Incoming Mail Settings

1. Click on **Incoming** tab.
2. Specify the **Server Name / IP Address** from where the mails needs to be fetched.
3. Specify the **Login credentials** to the server in the **User Name** and **Password** fields.
4. Select the type of Email that needs to be fetched into the application from **Email Type** drop down. Say, POP, IMAP, POP3S, IMAPS.
5. The default **Port** for the email type is pre-filled.
6. You can schedule the time in minutes to fetch the mails in **Fetch mails every** field.
7. If you require, you can enable Transport Layer Security by selecting the check box beside **Enable TLS**.
8. You can **Suppress Auto Notification** and prevent **Email Storming** from contacts by halting the mail looping and mail fetching into the application. Specify the number of mails and the time span after which the mail fetching and the looping should be stopped.
9. Click **Save**. The configurations will be saved and SupportCenter Plus will try to establish connection with the mail server. Click **Start Fetching** button, to start the mail fetching.

Mail Fetching status : **STOPPED** Last attempt to fetch mail : - | Mails to be fetched :

Incoming **Outgoing** **Spam Filter**

During mail fetching, ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus will delete e-mail messages for the mail account in the mail server. Hence please create a separate mail account and alias it to this mail id.

Server Name / IP Address *

User Name *

Password *

Email Type

Port *

Fetch mails every * Minutes

Enable TLS (Transport Layer Security)

▼ Mail Loop & Mail Storm Prevention Settings

Suppress auto-notification (To prevent mail loops)
When a contact sends emails within a span of minutes

Stop email fetching (To overcome mail storms, DoS attacks)
When a contact sends emails within a span of minutes

Once the mail fetching starts, the **Save** button is disabled. So, if you wish to change any of the settings, then you need to stop mail fetching, make the changes, Save and then restart the mail fetching.

Outgoing Mail Settings

1. Click on the **Outgoing** tab.
2. Specify the **Server Name / IP Address** of the Outgoing Mail Server through which the mails are sent to the external world.
3. Specify the backup server name which will take over the main server in case of server crash in **Alternate Server Name / IP Address** field.
4. Select the type of Email that needs to be fetched into the application from **Email Type** drop down. Say, SMTP, SMTPS.
5. The default **Port** for the email type is pre-filled.
6. If authentication is required for outgoing mails server, enable **Required Authentication** and enter the specific credentials in **User Name** and **Password** fields.
7. Click **Save**.

Mail Fetching status : **RUNNING** Stop Fetching Last attempt to fetch mail : - | Mails to be fetched :

Incoming **Outgoing** **Spam Filter**

Outgoing Mail Settings. * Mandatory Field

Server Name / IP Address *

Alternate Server Name / IP Address

Email Type ▼

Port *

Enable TLS (Transport Layer Security)

Requires Authentication

* **User Name**

* **Password**

Spam Filter

You can mark all your junk mails into Spam by defining filter criteria for the mails. Once you set a criteria say, "Subject contains Out of Office or Spam", then mails matching this criteria will be dropped and no new request will be created out of them.

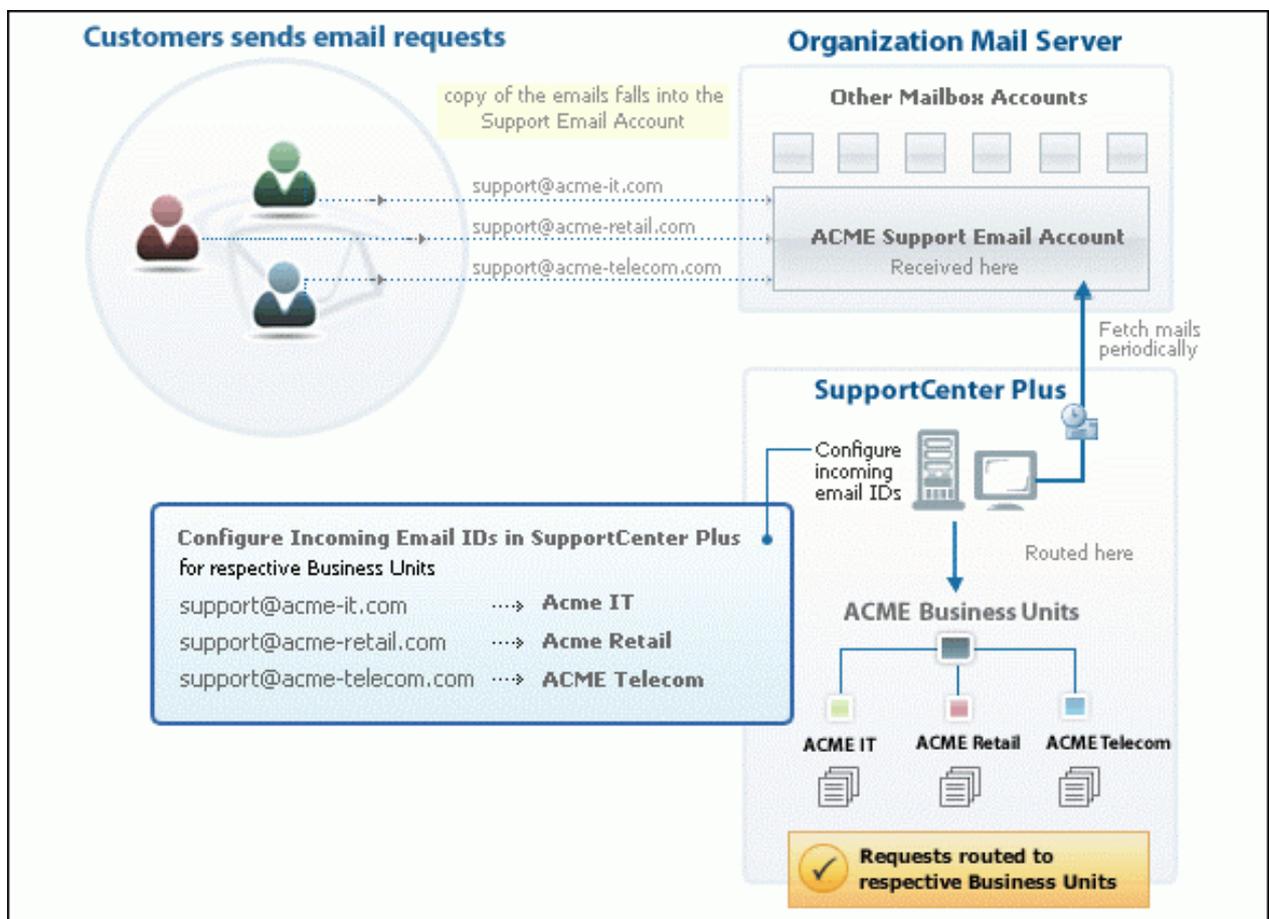
To configure Spam Filter,

1. Click on the **Spam Filter** tab.
2. Define a rule by selecting a **Criteria** and **Conditions** from the respective drop down. Say, " Sender contains ".
3. Specify the filter content in the given text field by clicking the **choose** button. Say, the criteria is **SENDER** and Condition is **CONTAINS** then the content can be xyz@acme.com.
4. Click **Add to Rules** button.
5. You can add more than one rule and select **Match all of the following (AND)** or **Match any of the following (OR)** radio button to match the rule.
6. **Save** the details.

Mail Configuration

The email address to which the service requests are sent and should be fetched by SupportCenter Plus application is configured under Mail Configuration. If you have enabled multi-tendency, the email address of the respective Business Units can be configured such that the mails are routed to the particular Business Unit.

- **Incoming Email IDs:** The email address to which the service requests are sent.
- **Sender Name:** The name to appear in the mail beside sender's mail ID, while sending mails from the application.
- **Reply-To Address:** The email address to which the reply needs to be sent.



Twitter Settings

SupportCenter Plus keeps track of your support queries even through Twitter! Your Tweet Updates can be viewed from the application which can be converted into new requests in SupportCenter Plus application. You can also organize the tweets related to specific keywords for your convenience.

To access Twitter Settings configuration page,

1. Click **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.

2. Click **Twitter Settings** icon  under Helpdesk Settings block.

Configuring Twitter Settings

1. Enter your Twitter account details such as the **Twitter Username** and **Password**. If you do not have a Twitter Account you can use **Sign up with Twitter** link.
2. If there is any firewall blocking the ports, then you need to provide the proxy server setting information. Select **Proxy Settings** link, enable **Specify Proxy Server Settings** radio button.
3. Specify the IP address of the **Proxy Host** name.
4. Specify the **Proxy Port** number.
5. Specify your **Proxy Authentication details** such as the proxy username and password.
6. Type in a keyword to follow all the tweets related to the keyword, say the keyword is 'acmePhone'. You can add upto 5 keywords and the specified keyword opens as a tab in Tweet Updates under the Request module.
7. Click **Save**.

Twitter Account Details

Twitter Username Don't have a Twitter Account?
[Sign up with Twitter!](#)

Twitter Password

Proxy Settings

No Proxy Specify Proxy Server Settings

Proxy Host

Proxy Port

Authentication

User Name

Password

Search Keywords

Add Search Keywords will open as a Tabs in the twitter updates window (Add up to 5 keywords maximum)
(Eg. Add a keyword like "acmePhone" will store the keyword in a separate Tab called acmePhone)

ManageEngine * SupportCenter Plus * Acme Printers * Acme *

Viewing Tweet Updates and Creating New Requests

You can view the Tweet Updates in the request list view page.

1. Click **Request** tab in the header pane.
2. Click **Tweet Updates** tab. The Direct Message, Mentions, History and the search keywords are listed as header links.
3. Each tweet has options to send Direct Message, Reply and Convert as Request.
4. Clicking on **Convert as Request** opens the New Request form with the Name, Twitter Screen Name, Subject and Description as specified in the tweet. Add and edit the appropriate changes and click **Add Request**.

Computer Telephony Integration (CTI)

ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus is slowly emerging as a full-fledged customer support and help desk software on facilitating Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) supported on Asterisk server. With CTI in SupportCenter Plus, your help desk centers becomes instantly efficient and productive, saving time and effort in replying to mails. By just a single click to call customers (Click to Dial) and Screen Pop up displaying the incoming caller's record, your help desk software fulfills almost all your needs.

Note: Please note that a separate licence should be purchased to enable CTI in SupportCenter Plus.

Features of CTI in SupportCenter Plus

- Screen pop up displaying the caller information along with history of previous requests, thus saving time and effort in database lookup.
- Click to dial option to call customers instantly.

Getting Started

On purchasing the CTI license, the following needs to be configured to get started with SupportCenter Plus CTI,

- Telephony Server Settings
- Call Alert option under Support Reps

Telephony Server Settings

The details of the server such as the server name and port number should be configured to enable CTI. Currently, SupportCenter Plus supports Asterisk and Avaya server.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click **General Settings** tab -> select **Telephony Server Settings** icon  under Organization Settings block.

Telephony Server Settings

Call Alerts : **DISABLED**

Telephony Server Details

Telephony Server * [Currently supports Asterisk and Avaya PBX]

Server Name / IP Address *

Port *

TLinks *

Username *

Password *

1. **Telephony Server:** The server which needs to be configured to enable CTI. Currently we are supporting only Asterisk and Avaya AES (Application Enablement Services) PBX.
 2. **Server Name/IP Address:** Server name or IP address of the server which has Asterisk/Avaya PBX installed.
 3. **Port:** Port Number of the Asterisk/Avaya server. By default, the port number for Asterisk server is 5038 and for Avaya AES server is 450.
 4. **TLink:** For Avaya AES server, click **Get TLink** button to populated the value in the **TLink** field. The TLink establishes connection between the Call Manager and the Avaya AES Server.
 5. **Username:** The manager login user name to the Asterisk/Avaya AES server.
 6. **Password:** The manager login password of the Asterisk/Avaya AES server.
3. Click **Save** on entering the above details. The configurations is saved and SupportCenter will try to establish connection with the Asterisk server. On successful connection, enable the Call Alert status by clicking the **Enable** button. By default this option is disabled.

Enabling Call Alert option

To enable incoming call alert as a screen pop up,

1. From Admin - > Support Rep, select the check box **Enable Incoming Call Alerts** in Call Alerts block.
2. Specify the **Extension Number** of the support rep in the field provided.

To know more on configuring the support reps refer **Support Reps**.

Click to Dial

Click to dial option is available under the Request and Contact module of the contacts whose contact information is specified. It provides instant calling option to the customer from their request details page.

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane to open the request list view page.
2. Select the **Title** of the request.
3. In the request details page, the configured phone number and mobile number is displayed just below the requesters name.



4. If the email id is configured then you can send an invitation for remote assistance to the contact on clicking **Send Invite** link.
5. Select the mobile or phone number link to call the contact. A pop up message requesting the support rep to pick the receiver appears on establishing connection.



Pick the receiver to establish the connection between the support rep and the contact. On successful connection a pop up indicating the "Call has dialed successfully" appears.

Screen Pops

When a customer contacts the support team via phone, a screen pop displaying the customer details such as name, account information and contact number appears.

Requests > All Requests Refresh this page Every 5 Min

All Requests Go to -- Reque

New Request Edit Delete Close Merge Assign to ▾ Rows per page 10 1 - 9 0

<input type="checkbox"/>	Subject	Contact Name	Email	Account	Status	Date ↕	Last Update
<input type="checkbox"/>	My Laptop is not working	Paul Graham	paul.graham@energy.com	Energy Corporation	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:20 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	My I-Phone Display has gone	Michella John	michella@acme.com	ACME Inc	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:25 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Printer maintanance Request	Anna patrick	anna.patrick@arcam.com	ARCAM corporation	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:28 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Replace Battery Request	Peter Anderson	peter.anderson@acme.com	ACME Inc	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:29 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Computer servicing	Richard watson	richard.watson@tricell.com	Tricell Inc	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:31 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	servicing Request Escalation	Richard watson	richard.watson@tricell.com	Tricell Inc	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:45 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Replace Battery Request	Peter Anderson	peter.anderson@acme.com	ACME Inc	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:48 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Printer maintanance Request	Anna patrick	anna.patrick@arcam.com	ARCAM corporation	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:48 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0
<input type="checkbox"/>	My I-Phone Display has gone	Michella John	michella@acme.com	ACME Inc	Open	Jun 2, 2009 05:48 AM	Jun 2, 2009 0

Incoming Call X

 Call from Paul Graham
Energy Corporation
9659262500

[View Requests](#) | [View Details](#) | [Log Request](#)

- **View Requests:** Track all the pending, overdue and completed requests on viewing the request history of the caller.
- **View Details:** View entire details of the contact.
- **Log Request:** Log in requests instantly while on call.

If the caller is an unknown contact then u can either log contact number along with the following links appears,

- **Log as Contact:** You can log in the unknown contact into SupportCenter Plus.
- **Log Request:** Log in requests instantly while on call.

Helpdesk Customizer

With Helpdesk Customizer you can customize the entire request form to suit your organizations needs. From setting values to category, status, priority, level, to setting mandatory fields before closing requests, Helpdesk Customizer provides it all.

-
- Category
 - Status
 - Level
 - Mode
 - Priority
 - Request - Additional Fields
 - Request Field Permissions
 - Request Closing Rules
-

Configuring Category/Sub Category/Items

You can classify the requests into different categories, sub categories and Items. Say, requests for installing a software can be classified under the category "Software Installation", sub category as "Adobe" and the Item as "Photoshop".

Depending on the need, you can create various such categories, sub-categories and item using this option. These categories, sub-categories and items will be listed in the drop-down menu in the **New Request** form.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **HelpDesk Customizer** icon  under **HelpDesk Settings**. This opens the HelpDesk - Category page where you can categorize the request in to category, sub-category and item.

Create New Category

1. Click **New Category** button.
2. Specify the **Category Name**. Say, Transportation Problem. This field is mandatory.
3. Specify relevant information about the newly created category in the **Description** field.
4. You can assign the category to a Support Rep so that all the issues related to this category will be automatically assigned to the selected support rep. Select the support rep from **Assign to Support Rep** drop down.
5. Click **Save** button to save the details. You can see the category getting listed in the category list view below the form.

Create New Sub-Category

1. Click **New Sub Category** button. [Or] Click **Add sub-category** icon  beside the category title in the list view.
2. Specify a name for the **Sub Category**. This field is mandatory.
3. Specify relevant information about the newly created sub category in the **Description** field.
4. Select the **Category** from the drop down. This field is also mandatory.
5. Click **Save** button. You can see the sub-category getting listed under the selected category.

Create New Item

1. Click **New Item** button. [Or] Click **Add new item** icon  beside the sub-category title in the list view.
2. Specify the **Item name**. This field is mandatory.

3. Specify relevant information about the newly created item in the **Description** field.
4. Select the **Sub Category** for the item from the drop down. This field is also mandatory.
5. Click **Save** button.

Editing and Deleting Category/Sub Category/Items

You can edit and delete category, sub category and Items from the List View.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **HelpDesk Customizer** icon  under **HelpDesk Settings**.
3. Click **Category** from the menu on the left hand side of the page. The Category List view page opens where you can edit and delete category, sub category and items.

Edit Category

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the category name.
2. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes.

Edit Sub-Category

1. Click the **Title** of the category in the category list page. This opens the sub-category details page.
2. Click the **Edit** icon . This opens the edit sub-category form.
3. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes.

Edit Item

1. Click the **Title** of the sub-category to open the item details page.
2. Click the **Title** icon . This opens the edit item form.
3. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes.

Delete Category

1. Select the categories to be deleted by enabling the check box.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A pop up confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. You can see the category deleted from the list.

Delete Sub-Category

1. Click on the category for which the sub category needs to be deleted.
2. Enable the check box beside the sub-category to delete.
3. Click **Delete** button. A pop up confirming the delete operation appears.
4. Click **OK** to proceed. You can see the sub-category deleted from the list.

Delete Item

1. Click on the category of the Item to be deleted.
2. Click the Sub Category.
3. Enable the check box beside the items to delete.
4. Click **Delete** button. A pop up confirming the delete operation appears.
5. Click **OK** to proceed. You can see the item deleted from the list.

Configuring Status

Requests fetched into SupportCenter Plus application will be in various stages of completion by the support rep. For easy management and to know the status of the request, you can create various request status under which the requests can be grouped. These status can either be **In Progress** or **Closed**.

While creating a status, you can also choose to stop the request timer for the status that is being created. Depending on the need of your organization, you can create various such status, which will be listed in the status drop-down menu in the **New Request** form.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **HelpDesk Customizer** icon  under **HelpDesk Settings**.
3. Click **Status** from the left menu. The **Status List** page is displayed. You can add, edit, or delete the request status.

Add Status

1. Click the **Add New Status** link.
2. Enter the name of the status in the **Name** field.
3. Select the **Type** to which the status belongs. The status type allows you to identify whether the status that you are adding is still in progress and hence should be a part of the open requests or should be moved to the closed requests.
4. If the added status requires the timer of the request to be stopped, then you need to set the check box **Stop timer**.
5. If you wish, you can enter the status **Description**.
6. Click **Save**.

Edit Status

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the status name you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Status** form, you can modify the name of the status.
3. If the status belongs to the In Progress type, then you can choose to stop or start timer. If the request status belongs to the completed type then you cannot edit the type of the request status.
4. If you wish you can edit the **Description** of the status.
5. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Status

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the status name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the status, then click **Cancel**.

Configuring Level

Request level is a measure to indicate the complexity of a request so that the request can be assigned to support reps experienced enough to handle the requests.

Say, if the request contains information and does not require any action to be taken, it can be classified as Tier 1. If there is a minor level action, such as providing the contact some tips to resolve the issue, it can be classified as Tier 2, and so on.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click the **Helpdesk Customizer** icon  under Helpdesk Settings.
3. Click **Level** from the left menu. The **Level List** page is displayed. You can add, edit, or delete the request levels.

Add Level

1. Click **Add New Level** link.
2. Enter a unique name to identify the level in the **Name** field.
3. If required, you can enter the level **Description**.
4. Click **Save**. The new level gets added to the already existing list.

Edit Level

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the level name you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Level** form, you can modify the name and description of the level.
3. Click **Save**. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Level

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the level name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the level, then click **Cancel**.

Configuring Mode

Helpdesk Support Reps receive requests from a variety of sources; email, phone calls, forums, web portal and so on. All these modes can be configured in SupportCenter Plus application.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **HelpDesk Customizer** icon  under **HelpDesk Settings**.
3. Click **Mode** from the left menu. The **Mode** List page is displayed. You can add, edit, or delete the request mode.

Add Mode

1. Click **Add New Mode** link.
2. Enter the **Mode Name**.
3. If you want, you can enter the mode **Description** also.
4. Click **Save**. The new mode is added to the existing list.

Edit Mode

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the mode name you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Mode** form, you can modify the name and description of the mode.
3. Click **Save**. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Mode

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the mode name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the mode, then click **Cancel**.

Configuring Priority

Priority of a request defines the intensity or importance of the request. To open the request priority configuration page

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click the **Helpdesk Customizer** icon  under Helpdesk Settings.
3. Click **Priority** from the left menu. The list of available prioritises. You can add, edit, or delete the request priorities.

Add Priority

1. Click **Add New Priority** link.
2. Enter a unique name to identify the priority in **Priority Name** field.
3. If you wish, you can enter the priority **Description** also.
4. Click **Save**. The new priority is added to the already existing list.

Edit Priority

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the priority name you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Priority** form, modify the required fields.
3. Click **Save**.

Delete Priority

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the priority name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the priority, then click **Cancel**.

Request Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while adding a request apart from the pre-set fields in the new request form you can configure them under Request - Additional Fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Helpdesk Customizer** icon  under HelpDesk Settings.
3. Click **Request - Additional Fields** link from the menu list on the left hand side of the page. The Request - Additional Fields opens. You can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the add new request form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

These additional fields will appear while adding a request under **Additional Request Details** block. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**.

Request Field Permissions

With Request Field Permission, you can customize the request form for the contact login. You can select specific fields that can be set and viewed by the contact while raising a new request. The fields in Request Field Permission includes the request field parameters and the additional fields configured in the application. To select the fields, enable the check box beside them.

NOTE 	Please note that the selected fields appear in the Contact View of the Request Template. It is recommended to first select the field permission and then customize the request template. Also, the fields such as Created Date, Due Date, Responded Date, Completed Date, Time Elapsed and Response Dueby Time are visible (if selected) only while viewing the request.
--	---

Request Closing Rules

With Request Closing Rules, you can set the mandatory fields to be filled in by the support rep while closing a request. In addition, you also have options for users to close/re-open the resolved request from the application or from the link provided via email, and to automate the request closing process.

Say, you have selected Resolution as the mandatory field. So on resolving the request, support reps should enter the reason and solution for the request in the resolution field, else an error pops up stating to enter the details in the resolution field.

To access the Request Closing Rules configuration page,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Helpdesk Customizer** icon  under Helpdesk Settings.
3. Click on **Request Closing Rules** link from the menu on the left hand side of the page.

Setting Mandatory fields and Auto-Close Request Settings

1. Enable the check box beside the mandatory fields for closing the request.
2. Enabling **Allow contacts to Close/Re-open the Resolved requests** check box, allows the contact to close/re-open the request either from the link provided via email or from contact login, when the support rep moves the state of the request to Resolved.
3. You can also Automate the request closing process. Enable **If the contact takes no action within the specified number of days** check box and select the number of days after which the resolved request should get closed automatically.
 - An email is sent to the contact once the request is in the resolved state.
 - The contact can close the request using the link provided via email. He can also re-open the request by replying to the mail or clicking the Re-open Request button. A more simpler method to close or re-open the request is by logging into the application.
 - If the contact takes neither of the actions, then the request gets closed after the specified number of days from the combo box.
4. **Save** the details.

Note



Please note that the check box "**If the contact takes no action within the specified number of days**" can be selected only on enabling "**Allow contacts to Close/Re-open the Resolved requests**" check box.

Request Template

Request Templates are created for the most frequently raised requests so that the request can be accessed and raised instantly. The template is configurable to suit individual request which may require different fields in the form layout. The fields in the template can be pre-filled with values.

Before you begin with the Request Template customization, configure the following features:

- **Request Field Permission:** Select the fields that should be made available in the Contact View of the request template. The fields in this section includes the request field parameters and additional fields configured in the application.
- **Request - Additional Fields:** If you require any additional fields to appear in the request template, then the same can be configured in Request - Additional Fields.

To access the request template,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.



2. Click on **Request Template** icon in the **Helpdesk Settings** block. The **Request Template** list view page opens. From this page you can add, edit, delete and set a request template as default.

-
- Creating Request Template
 - Setting Template as default
 - Request Preview
 - Edit Request Template
 - Delete Request Template
-

Creating Request Template

Click on **Add New Template** link. This opens the add incident template form view for the support rep. The template form consists of three blocks namely, Header, Field list and Canvas.

- **Header:** The header consists of the **Template Name** and **Description** along with the options to enable the template to support rep or contacts.
- **Field List:** The field list consists of the fields that are detached from the form. You can drag and drop these fields back into the canvas.
- **Canvas:** The canvas decides the form look, and consist of drag and drop area.

Form Customization

The form layout is customized by re-arranging the fields, removing fields and setting the field properties in the canvas.

Re-arranging Fields in canvas

To re-arrange fields in the canvas, drag the field and place it over an empty cell as shown in the image. The field can be placed only in the highlighted grey area. The request details, owner details, contact details and category details can be moved as a whole block.

The screenshot shows a 'Canvas' interface for form customization. It contains two main sections: 'Request Details' and 'Owner Details'. In the 'Request Details' section, there are three dropdown menus: 'Level' (set to 'NONE'), 'Product' (set to '-----Select Product-----'), and 'Status' (set to 'Open'). The 'Status' field is highlighted in yellow and has a red dashed border around it, with a small yellow icon and a red 'x' icon next to it, indicating it is being edited or moved. In the 'Owner Details' section, there is a 'Group' dropdown menu set to 'No, Just select Support Rep'.

Setting Field Properties

You can set the field properties, that is, mark the field as mandatory or remove the field from the canvas. Thus you can customize the entire form by retaining only the relevant fields in the canvas for a template.

To customize the form,

1. Hover over the field, an **Edit Field** icon and **Remove Field** icon appears.
2. To mark a field as mandatory, click the **Edit Field Properties** icon. Enable **Set as Mandatory** check box. The field is symbolized as mandatory *.
3. Click **Remove Field** icon to remove the field from the canvas. The detached fields are added under the Field List.

NOTE



The fields such as request details, subject and description do not have field properties and hence can be only re-arranged in the canvas.

Drag and Drop Fields from Field List

The fields removed from the canvas are listed in the Field List. To add these fields in the canvas, drag the field from the **Field List** and drop it onto the canvas. The drop areas is highlighted. The dragged field can be dropped only in the highlighted area.

On customizing the form layout, you can pre fill the fields with values. Click **Save**. The template is added to the available list in the Request Template list view page.

At any point, if you do not wish to add the Request Template and would like to get back to the list view page, click **Cancel**. Clicking the **View List** link on the top right corner of the Request template form will also take you to the Request template list view page.

Setting Template as Default

The newly added request template is added in the list view. From this page, you can set a request template as default i.e., when you want to create a new request, the default request template form appears. Also, you can disable the template visibility for the support rep or contacts.

To set a template as default, click **Set this as default link** beside the template name as shown. The default template is symbolized with  icon.

Request Templates		Add New Template			
Template	Default	Template Visibility			
		Support Rep		Contact	
  System Defined Template <small>This is system defined template</small>	Set this as default		Edit ▾		Edit ▾
  Replace Battery Request					

To disable the template visibility for the support rep or contact, click the **Edit** link -> **Disable This Template** option. The disable template is indicated with  icon. To enable the template, click the **Edit** link -> **Enable This Template** option. The enabled templates are indicated with  icon.

Request Preview

On customizing the request form for both the support rep as well as the contact, you can see a preview of both the logins using this option. From the Request Template list view page, click the template name to preview.

Support Rep View

By default, the request template form for a support rep is displayed. You can drag and drop fields in the canvas, re-arrange the fields, add/remove and set properties for the field.

Contact View

To view the request template form for a contact login, click the **Contact View** tab in the request template form. The fields that should be available in the contact view is configured in **Request Field Permissions**. To add additional fields in the form layout, configure the same under **Request - Additional Fields**.

Editing Request Template

1. In the request template list view page, click on the **Edit** icon  beside the template you wish to edit.
2. The Request Template form opens with the values pre-filled while creating the template.
3. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes.

Deleting Request Template

1. In the request template list view page, click on the **Delete** icon  beside the template to delete.
2. A confirmation message appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The request template is delete from the list.

Scheduled Requests

Apart from creating templates for the frequently raised requests, there are certain maintenance activities need to be executed at regular intervals say, like cleaning-up the database once a month or server maintenance once in 3 months and so on. For all these repetitive tasks you can schedule requests as preventive maintenance or for regular maintenance of a task.

Once a request is scheduled, new request will be created and assigned to the specified support rep name automatically at the scheduled interval.

To schedule requests,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Scheduled Requests** icon  under the **Helpdesk Settings** block. The list of Scheduled Requests is displayed.
3. Click on **Schedule a new request** link.

For Scheduling a request, you need to **Create a Request Template** and then **Schedule the Template** to specific intervals.

Creating Request Template

Create a request template for the activity that needs to be scheduled at regular intervals. The Request Template form is that of the default template configured in Admin -> Request Template.

1. Specify the Request details such as Status, Level, Mode and Priority from the drop down.
2. Next, Select the Group Details such as Group and the Support Reps associated to the selected group.
3. Specify the Contact Name using the search icon . You can also add a new contact if the contact details are not available in the database.
4. If the details such as **Account/Sub Account, Phone, Email and Mobile** of the selected contact is specified, then the same appears in the request template form. If the details are not specified, then you can do the same in the respective fields.
5. Select the **Product Name** from the drop down.
6. Select the **Category, Sub Category and Item** from the drop down.
7. Specify the **Subject** for the task. This field is mandatory.
8. Specify relevant information about the task in the given **Description** field.
9. To attach a file to the task template click **Attach a File** button to attach files.
10. Click **Next>>** button for Task Scheduling.

Scheduled Request

To schedule the request, select the time frame from the listed options:

Daily Schedule

To run a daily maintenance task, click **Daily Schedule** radio button.

1. Select the **Time** at which the maintenance task should be scheduled from the drop down.
2. Select the **Date** on when the maintenance task should be scheduled from the **Calendar** button.
3. **Save** the details.

Weekly Schedule

To run a weekly maintenance task, click **Weekly Schedule** radio button.

1. Select the day of the week by enabling the check box beside the day of the week.
2. Else if you wish to schedule on all days of the week, then click **Everyday** check box.
3. Select the **Time** frame to schedule the task from the drop down.
4. **Save** the details.

Monthly Schedule

To run a monthly maintenance task, click **Monthly Schedule** radio button.

1. Select the month to run the task by enabling the check box beside **Every Month**.
2. Select the **Date** on when the task should be scheduled from the combo box.
3. Select the **Time** at which the task should be scheduled from the combo box.
4. **Save** the details

Periodic Schedule

To run a periodic maintenance task, click **Periodic schedule** radio button.

1. Specify the day (s) in the given text field to schedule the maintenance task. i.e. after every specified nth day the maintenance task will be executed.
2. **Save** the details.

One Time Schedule

To run a one time maintenance task, click **One Time Scheduling** radio button.

1. Select the **Date & Time** on when the maintenance task should be executed.
2. **Save** the details.

Scheduled Requests [Schedule a new request](#)

① Request Template ② Scheduled Request

Scheduled Request

Daily Schedule
 Weekly Schedule
 Monthly Schedule
 Periodic Schedule
 One Time Schedule

Monthly Schedule

Every Month

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> January	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> February	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> March	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> April
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> May	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> June	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> July	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> August
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> September	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> October	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> November	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> December

On

Date:

At

Time: Hours: : Minutes:

If you wish to schedule a monthly task for cleaning-up the database,

1. Select **Monthly Schedule** radio button.
2. Select the check box **every month**.
3. Choose the **date** from the combo box. Say, 10th of every month.
4. Select the **time** from the combo box. Say 10:00 hr.
5. **Save** this schedule. A task for cleaning-up the database will be sent to you every month on 10th at 10:00 hr helping you to complete the regular maintenance task in advance without any request sent from the users.

Notification Rules

Notification Rules can be set for request, solution, contract and activities modules. You can configure to send notification and alerts to account managers, contacts and support reps on various instances such as, notify contacts when requests are closed, alert support reps when a request is assigned to them, notify all support reps when a solution is approved and so on.

In addition, there may be some default actions that you might want to perform when the state of any item changes. These default configurations can also be defined under Notification Rules.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Notification Rules** icon  under the **Helpdesk Settings** block. The set of Notification Rules is displayed. You can set notification rules for **Request**, **Solution**, **Contract** and **Activities** modules.

Notification Rules	
Notification Sender address : Acme(info@acme.com) [Edit]	
Request Solution Contract Activities	
Account Manager Notifications	
Acknowledge Account Manager by Email	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	When a new request is received Customize template
<input type="checkbox"/>	On receipt of the email reply Customize template
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	When the request is updated Customize template
<input type="checkbox"/>	When the request is closed Customize template

3. To enable or disable any of the notification rules, select or de-select the check box beside each of the rules.
4. For certain notifications like, "Alerting support reps when a new request is created" and "Notify Support Reps when solution is created or Modified", you need to choose the support rep(s) to be notified by clicking **Choose** button and selecting the support reps from the pop-up window. Click **Ok**.
5. Click **Save**.

Customizing Templates

You can customize the message template which will be sent for various events such as, replying to a request, escalation of SLA, notifying support reps, task and event reminder notification, announcements and so on. You can also customize the message template for each of the notifications.

To customize the template,

1. Click on the **Customize Template** link of the notification. The template opens in a editable format as shown below,

2. Modify the notification **Subject** and **Message** by adding or deleting variables to either of the block. To add variables to subject and message of the email template, just click the corresponding variable in the list box on the right.
3. Once you have completed the modifications, **Save** the settings.

Note



For Contract Expiry Notification, you need to select **Enable Notification** check box while creating a new contract. The **Contract Expiry Notification** template can also be customized to suit your needs.

Self-Service Login Notification

The purpose of 'Send Self-Service login details' option under Request -> Contact Notification, is to send the SupportCenter Plus login details to the customer via e-mail. You can also customize the message content from a wide range of variables including the additional fields configured for accounts and contacts.

If multi tenancy is enabled through Business Units, then the Business Unit additional fields for accounts and contacts are also listed amongst the other variables. Selecting a variable, lists it in the message text field along with the field type. So when a new contact is added in SupportCenter Plus, the message and the variable customized in the template is sent to the contact via email.

Note



1. If an additional field is selected in the message template but a value is not entered in the add new contact/account form, then the additional field does not appear in the email sent to the contact.
2. The additional fields does not appear if the contact is provided with the login details from Unapproved Contacts list view.

Configuring Business Rules

You can define rules to organize all your incoming requests and perform actions ranging from routing requests to groups, to assigning status and other parameters to a request.

To open the Business Rule configurations page,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Business Rule** icon  under the **Helpdesk Settings** block. The resulting page displays the list of available business rules. You can add, edit, or delete business rules.

Add New Business Rule

1. Click **Add New Business Rule** link.
2. Enter **Business Rule details** such as, the **Rule Name** and a **Description** for the business rule. The Rule Name is a mandatory field.
3. Define **Rules and Criteria** that need to be satisfied by the incoming request. Set the criteria from **Select Criteria** and the corresponding **Condition** from the drop down. Select the values from the database for that particular parent criteria using the Choose button. Say, all the requests from the Contact "Sharon" should be set with Priority as "High". Select the **Criteria** as "**Contact Name**" and the **Condition** as "**is**". Click **Choose** button and select the contact as "Sharon". Click **Ok**.



When a new request arrives :

Define rule

Contact Name is

"Sharon Harper" Choose

Add to Rules

4. Click **Add to Rules** to add the defined rule to the rules table. You can further define rules with criteria and conditions following the steps given above.
5. If there is more than one criteria then you can either **Match ALL of the following (AND)** or **Match ANY of the following (OR)**.



Match the below criteria Match ALL of the following (AND) Match ANY of the following (OR)

		Rule	
		Contact Name is	"Sharon Harper"
		or Subject contains	"Warranty"

6. Choose the action that needs to be performed on the request from the **Choose Action** drop down list.

Perform these actions :

Assign to Support Rep  into "Jake Thomas"

Actions set

Actions	
	 Set Priority as "High"
	 Move to Category "Warranty Problem"

6. Click **Choose** button to select the values for the chosen action. Say, you have selected the Action as Assign to Support Rep, click on Choose to select the support reps from the list. Click **Ok**.
7. Click **Add**.
8. Click **Save**.

Edit Business Rule

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the Business Rule Name you wish to edit.
2. Modify the details such as the criteria and actions from the form.
3. To edit the **Match the below criteria** set, click the **edit** icon  beside the individual criteria. The respective selection window is opened in a separate pop-up. You can choose more values or remove a few values by de-selecting them.
4. You can also delete a criteria completely by clicking on the delete icon  beside the individual criteria.
5. In the actions to be performed, you can add or delete actions that need to be performed on the request that matches the criteria defined.
6. Click **Save** to save the changes performed.

Delete Business Rule

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the Business Rule Name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog is opened.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the business rule, then click **Cancel**.

Organize Business Rules

Organizing the business rules decide the order in which the rule is applied on the incoming request.

1. Click **Organize Business Rules** link.
2. The list of available Business Rules appears.
3. Select a business rule, and click **Move up** or **Move Down** button beside the list.
4. Click **Save**.

Time Entry Type

The requests raised into the application can be a service request, maintenance request or a product consultation. So while entering the Time Entry Details you need to enter the type of support provided by the support rep to the customer. This can be configured as Time Entry Type.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.



2. Click on **Time Entry Type** icon under the **Helpdesk Settings** block. The list of available Time Entry Type is displayed. From this page, you can add, edit and delete a time entry type.

Add Time Entry Type

1. Click on **Add New Time Entry Type** link.
2. Specify relevant name as the **Time Entry Type Name**. Say, Product Consultation. This field is mandatory.
3. Specify the details about the time entry type in the **Description** field.
4. **Save** the changes.

Edit Time Entry Type

1. Click on the **Edit** icon  beside the Time Entry Type Name you wish to edit.
2. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes.

Delete Time Entry Type

1. Click on the **Delete** icon  beside the Time Entry Type Name you wish to delete.
2. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed with the delete operation. The Time Entry Type is deleted from the list.

Time Entry - Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while entering the time spent entry details apart from the pre-set fields, you can configure them under Time Entry - Additional Fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Type Entry - Additional Fields** icon  under **Helpdesk Settings** block. The Type Entry - Additional Fields page opens where you can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the time spent entry details form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the setting

Remote Assistance

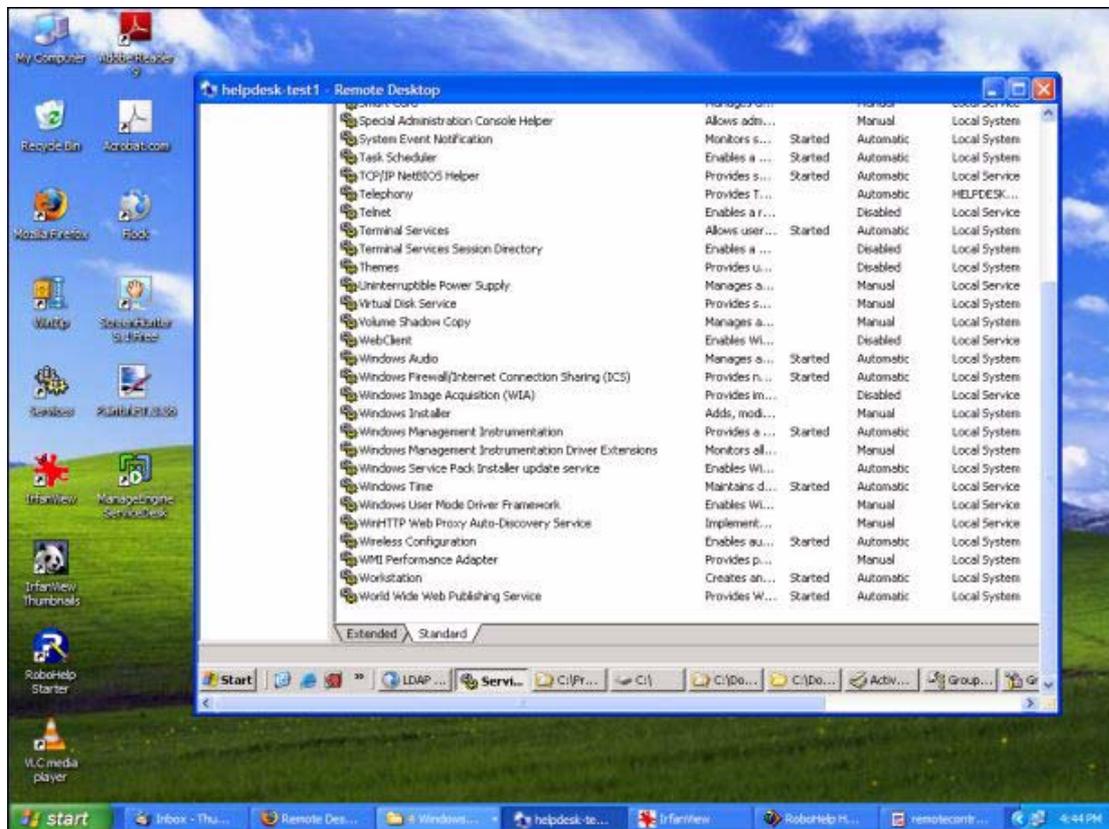
Certain scenarios may require the support rep to access machines in remote locations say, a customer from New York requires immediate assistance and the Support Team is located in San Francisco. Similarly, when a request is raised via phone call, it would be great if the support rep could send an invite for remote assistance and access the customers machine from his desk, thus increasing productivity and saving time to resolve the issue.

That is where SupportCenter Plus Remote Assistance comes into play ! Instead of launching a whole bunch of softwares to access remote machines, SupportCenter Plus helps your Support Team to remotely view, diagnose and resolve issues of your contacts from anywhere in the world.

With Business Units, Computer Telephony Integration and Remote Assistance, SupportCenter Plus is emerging as a globally supported customer support and helpdesk software. Supports Reps no longer need to handle endless threads and reply to mails. With CTI and Remote Assistance, support reps can resolve requests instantly and with ease.

Note:

- Please note that a separate license needs to be purchased for CTI and Remote Assistance.
- A Zoho Account is required to avail Remote Assistance feature.



Browsers compatibility for Remote Assistance

- Internet Explorer (version 5.5 and above)
- Firefox

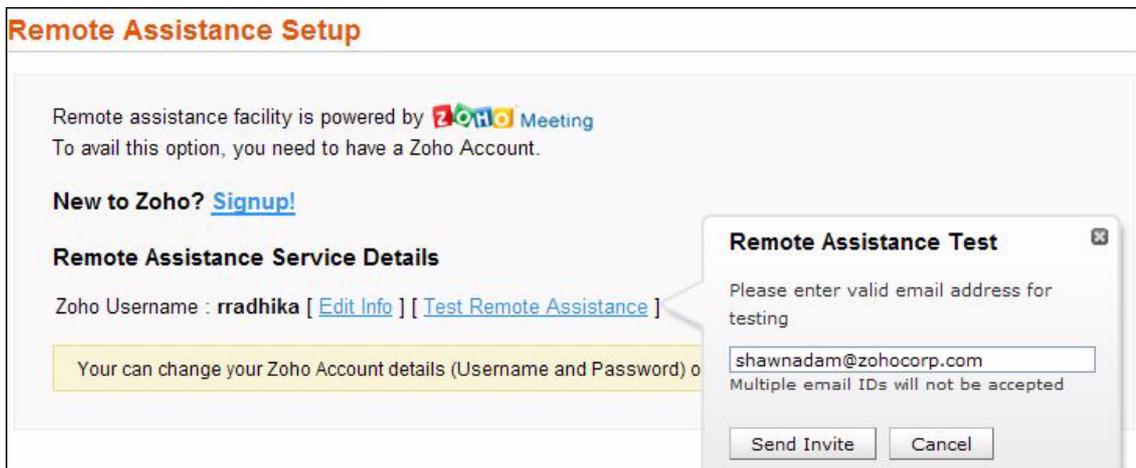
Steps for Remote Assistance

- Enter your Zoho Account details in Remote Assistance Setup.
- Specify the Email Id of the contact while entering the contact details.

Remote Assistance Setup

To configure the Remote Assistance Setup,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Select **Global Settings** tab.
3. In Organization Settings, click **Remote Assistance Setup** icon .
4. Specify the Zoho Account **Username** and **Password** in the fields provided. If you do not have a Zoho Account then you can sign up in the link provided.
5. Click **Save**.
6. You can test the remote assistance on selecting **Test Remote Assistance** and entering a valid mail address. You can enter only one mail address at a time.



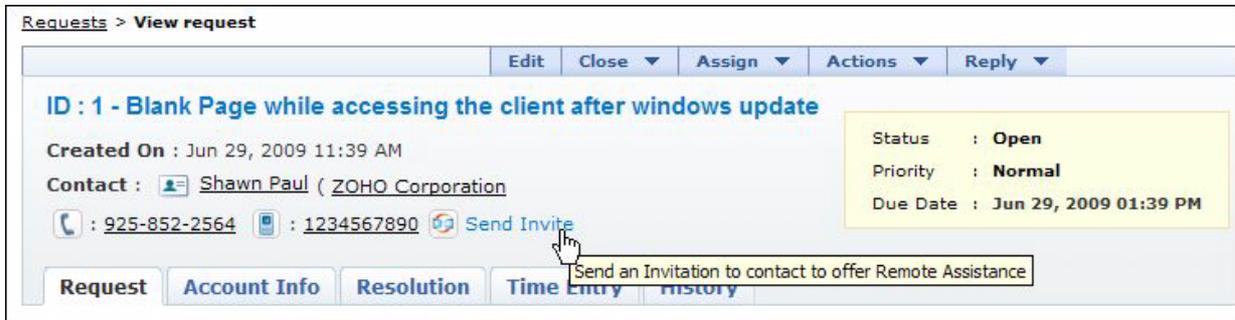
7. Click **Send Invite**.
8. You need to run the Zoho meeting application to enable remote assistance. Click **Run** button.

Note: If auto installation fails, select **run this exe** link to start the meeting. For more information on joining the session refer <http://zmeeting.wiki.zoho.com/Joining-the-Remote-Assistance-Session.html>

9. You can also change your Zoho Username and Password on clicking **Edit Info** link.

Inviting Contacts from Request Details page

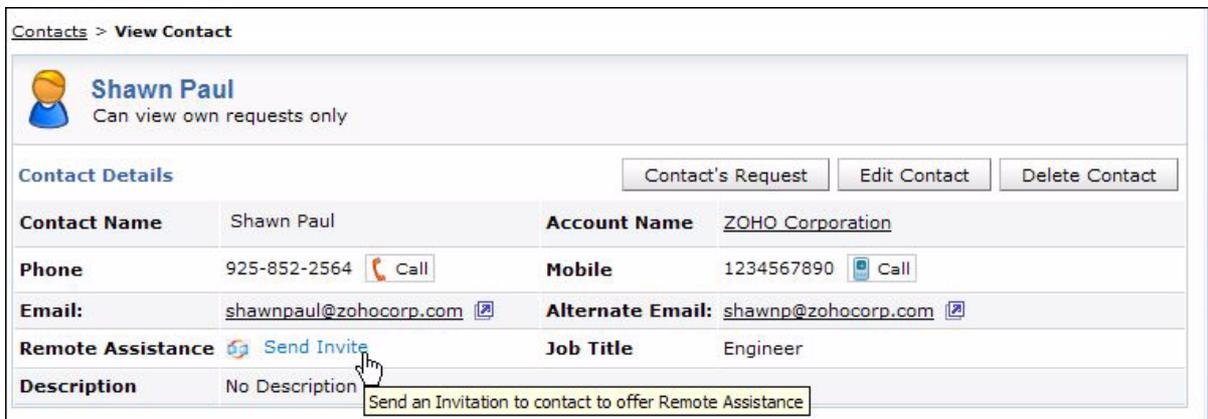
While viewing the request of a contact from the request details page, the support rep has an option to Send an Invite for Remote Assistance to the contact.



This link is available only if the contact email Id is specified either while adding a new contact or while creating a new request. Click Send Invite link. A dialog box appears confirming the operation. Click Ok to proceed.

Inviting Contacts from Contact Details page

You can also invite the contact from the Contact Details page upon entering the email Id. Click Send Invite link. A dialog box appears confirming the operation. Click Ok to proceed.



Account Settings

Accounts provide valuable customer information such as the contacts associated to the account and the products purchased by the account. In addition, it also provides the kind of support service offered to the account which helps in prioritizing the requests raised for that account.

The Account Settings consists of the following configurations -

- Industry 
 - Product Type 
 - Product - Additional Fields 
 - Product 
 - Account - Additional Fields 
 - Sales - Additional Fields 
 - Schedule CSV Import 
 - Customer Portal Settings 
-

Configuring Industry

The industry list is used to denote the type of industry to which your customer belongs to while adding the account information of the customer.

To open the Industry configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Select **Industry** icon  under **Account Settings** block. The list of Industry Types that are already available in the application is displayed. From this page you can perform operations such as add, edit and delete on and Industry.

Add Industry

To add a new industry to the existing list,

1. Click on **Add New Industry** link.
2. In the **Add Industry** form, enter the **Industry Name**. This is a mandatory field.
3. If you wish, you can enter the description for the industry type in the **Description** field.
4. Click **Save**. The new industry type is added to the already existing list. At any point you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Edit Industry

To edit the existing Industry,

1. Click the edit icon  beside the industry name you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Industry** form, edit the fields you want to change.
3. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Industry

To delete Industry,

1. Click the delete icon  beside the industry name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion. The Industry is deleted from the list. If you do not want to delete the industry, then click **Cancel**.

Configuring Product Types

Products purchased by the account can be categorized into specific product types. Product Type is a parent category under which you can group the purchased products. Say, Adobe Photoshop and Macromedia Flash can be categorized under the product type as Software, while HP Inkjet Printer can be categorized under the product type Printer.

To open the product type configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click **Product Type** icon  under the **Account Settings** block. The list of available product types are displayed. From this page, you can add, edit and delete product types.

Add Product Types

1. Click **Add New Product Type** link.
2. In the **Add Product Type** form, enter the **Product Type Name**. The name should be unique and is a mandatory field.
3. If required, enter relevant **Description** for the product type.
4. Click **Save**.

Edit Product Type

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the **Product Type Name** you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Product Type** form, you can edit the product type name and the description.
3. Click **Save**. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Product Type

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the **Product Type Name** you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog is opened.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the delete operation. The Product Type is deleted from the list. If you do not want to delete the product type, then click **Cancel**.

Product Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while adding a new product apart from the pre-set fields in the new product form then you can configure them under Product-Additional Fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click on **Product - Additional Fields** icon  under the **Account Settings** block. The Product - Additional fields page opens. You can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the new product form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

The configured additional fields appear while adding a new product under Additional Product Details block. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The fields deleted is removed from the **Add Product** form.

Configuring Product

Commodities purchased by the account are called products in SupportCenter Plus. You can either import all the product details into the application using **Import Products from CSV** [Refer Importing Sales Details] or you can add the products purchased manually and associate them to accounts. Say, Dell Latitude D600 is a product representing Dell Laptops.

To access the product configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click on **Product** icon  under the **Account Settings** block. The product list view page opens. From this page you can add, edit and delete a product.

Add Product

1. Click **Add Product** link.
2. In the **Add Product** form, enter the **Product Name**. This field is mandatory.
3. Choose the **Product Type** under which you would like to classify the product from the drop down.
4. Enter the **Part No.** of the product.
5. You also have an option to enter the **Warranty Period** of the product by choosing the number of years and months from the drop down.
6. Enter the purchased price of the product in **Unit Price (\$)** field.
7. If you have added any Additional Product Details fields then the additional fields is displayed under **Additional Product Details** block.
8. If required, add relevant **Comments** for the product.
9. Click **Save**. The product is added to the product list.

Edit Product

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside Product Name you wish to modify the details.
2. In the **Edit Product** form, you can edit all the fields mentioned in the add product procedure.
3. Save the changes.

Delete Product

A product can be deleted only if it is not being referenced elsewhere. To delete a product,

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the Product Name. A confirmation dialog is opened.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion. The product is deleted from the list. If you do not wish to delete the product, click **Cancel**.

Account - Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information, you can define your own additional fields that needs to appear while adding a new account apart from the pre-set fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Account - Additional Fields** icon  under the **Account Settings** block. The Account - Additional Fields page opens. You can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the new accounts form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

The configured additional fields appear while adding a new account under Additional Account Details block. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The fields deleted is removed from the **New Account** form.

Sales - Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while importing sales details then, you can define your own sales additional fields apart from the pre-set fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Sales Additional Fields** icon  under the **Account Details** block. The Sales - Additional fields page opens. You can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab. You can configure 4 additional fields for sales.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

The configured additional fields appears in the Account module while importing the sales details from CSV, and while associating products to an account from the account details page. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**.

Schedule CSV Import

The easy-to-use CSV import option quickly imports all the relevant information from the existing database and also provides an option to keep the database in sync with the organization's customer database. By scheduling the CSV Import you can automate the process of importing accounts and contact information from an external database using the CSV files.

Four step process of automating CSV import

- When the "CSV Schedule" is configured and enabled, SupportCenter looks for CSV file under the <SupportCenter_Home>\csv_files directory on a periodic basis.
- When it finds a CSV file, the file is processed and moved the file to <SupportCenter_Home>\csv_files\ProcessedDir.
- To automate this process, it is advised to write a script that would send the changed information of the external database as a CSV file to the <SupportCenter_Home>\csv_files directory
- Refresh the SupportCenter Plus Web Client to proceed further.

To schedule CSV Import,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Automate CSV Import** icon  under the **Helpdesk** block. The Schedule CSV Import list page opens.
3. Click **Add Schedule** link. The Add Schedule page opens.



Note: CSV file should be available under SupportCenter Plus CSV directory to automate the import. Path for the directory would be \AdventNet\ME\SupportCenter\csv_files

If no CSV file is found in the directory then you get a message as shown below. To place, replace or update the file automatically in the CSV directory, it is advised to write a script to send the information from the external database where you have all the information. The data should be sent to the **SupportCenter_Home\csv_files directory.**



4. Once the CSV file is available in the CSV directory. CSV **File Name** gets displayed automatically in un-editable format.
5. Specify the **File Encoding** format from the combo box.
6. Click the **Show Fields** button to map the fields. Map the fields.
7. To schedule the settings click the **Enable** radio button.
8. Select the **Time** duration from the combo box.
9. Select the **Date** from the calendar button and also select the start schedule time from the drop down list.
10. If you like to notify the support rep on the failure of the CSV import update then click **Notification** check box.
11. **Save** the settings.

Customer Portal Settings

With Customer Portal Settings, you can transform the entire web portal page into a flexible and feasible customer portal. You can customize the portal by selecting, de-selecting the options you wish to provide to your customers.

To access the customer portal,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.



2. Click **Customer Portal Settings** icon under **Accounts Settings** block. The Customer Portal Settings page opens to view the following blocks,
 - **Option to enable/disable the customer portal**
 - **Portal Name**
 - **Portal Content**
 - **Portal Options**
 - **Portal Color Customization**

Enable/disable the customer portal

You have an option to enable or disable the customer portal. To make the customer portal available to the users, select **Enable** radio button.

Portal Name

If required you can specify a **Name** to appear in the customer portal. Say SCP Customer Service Portal or Acme Customer Portal.

Portal Content

The Portal Content block consists of the **Header**, **Content Area** and **Sidebar**.



- **Header:** On the header you can display your company logo and specific URLs to the product or website. Enable the check box beside **Logo** to display the company logo in the customer portal. To add direct links from the customer portal,
 1. Enable the check box beside **Links**.
 2. Select **+ Add Links**.
 3. From the Add Links pop up, enter a **Name** to be displayed in the portal.
 4. Specify the **Target URL** in the field provided.
 5. **Save** the details. Enable the check box beside the newly new link to make it available in the customer portal. You can also edit and delete the links.



- **Content Area:** Add links to instantly browse through solutions or a submit a ticket from the customer portal. You can customize the content area by add new links or modifying the existing links.
 1. Click on **+ Add Link**.
 2. From the Add Link pop up, specify a **Name** for the link.
 3. You can also represent the link in the form of an **Icon**. Click **Browse** to search for an icon for this link.
 4. If there are any relevant information, specify the same in **Description** field.
 5. Specify the **Target URL** and **Save** the details.

You can also make all the public announcements, recent solutions and popular solutions available to the customer on selecting the corresponding check box.

- **Sidebar:** Sidebar provides options for **Login** section to customers and also a **Registration** option for new customers. You can also provide options if an approval is required for the new customers from the drop down. Further, a **Search Solutions** field can be provided to search for the public solutions and a **Sidebar box** containing sections. To add sections, click on **Add Section**, enter the details and **Save**.

Portal Options

In the Customer Portal, the following options can be provided to the customer by enabling the radio button; **Show Business Units**, **Show Products** and **Don't Show Options**.

For non-logged-in users, enable the radio button to show **All Topics**, **No Topics** or **Select a Topic Template** from the drop down to be displayed in the customer portal.

Portal Color Customization

Customize the header, content area, sidebar and body background with portal color, font and size according to your choice. To restore to the default color scheme, select **Restore Default Color Scheme** link.

To preview the customer portal while customizing click **Preview**. Click **Apply Changes** to apply the changes made.

 Note	Customer Portal Page can be accessed at <a href="http://<server_name>:<port>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd">http://<server_name>:<port>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd
---	--

Contract Settings

Contract Settings provides you to configure the parameters required while adding contracts. You can configure support service, support plans, service level agreement, operational hours and holidays of your organization/business units.

The Contract Settings consists of the following configurations -

- Support Services 
- Support Plans 
- Service Level Agreement 
- Operational Hours 
- Holidays 

Support Services

The services offered to an account is listed under Support Services. These services are grouped as Support Plan which determines the due by time for a request.

To access the Support Services page,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click **Support Services** icon  under **Contract Settings**. The Support Service list view page opens. From this page, you can add, edit and delete a support service.

Add Support Services

1. Click **Add New Service** link.
2. Specify the **Service Name**. This field is mandatory.
3. Specify relevant information about the service in the **Description** field.
4. **Save** the details.

Edit Support Services

1. From the Support Services list view page, click on the **Edit** icon  beside the service you wish to edit.
2. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes.

Delete Support Services

1. From the Support Services list view page, click on the **Delete** icon  beside the service you wish to delete.
2. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **Ok** to continue. The support service is deleted from the list.

Configuring Support Plan

You can differentiate the level of support offered to your customers using Support Plan. The support services provided to the customer is grouped under a Support Plan which helps in determining the due by time for requests.

Scenario	Your organization is providing service contract to Acme Inc for the Support Service - Warranty, Support and Replacement queries, for every 100 incidents. Instead of associating these services individually to the account, you can group these services as a Support Plan with the Support Type as 'Incident'. So for the first 100 incidents, your organization will provide support to Acme Inc.
-----------------	---

To access the support plan configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click **Support Plan** icon  under the **Contract Settings** block. The Support Plan list view page is displayed. You can add, edit, and delete support plans as per your need.

Note 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operations such as Add, Edit and Delete can be performed from the Support Plan list view. 2. You can set any support plan as default from the list view.
--	--

Add Support Plan

1. Click **Add Support Plan** link.
2. From the Support Plan form, specify a unique name for the Support Plan in the **Support Plan Name** field. This field is mandatory.
3. Specify the **Description** for the support plan in the given text field.
4. Select type of support offered for the support plan, say, support based on incidents or the number of hours from **Support Type** field. If the Support Type is **Hour Based**, then specify the **No. of Hours**, **Cost per Hour (\$)** and the **Total Cost (\$)** in the provided fields. If the Support Type is **Incident Based** specify the **No. of Incidents**, **Cost per Incident (\$)** and the **Total Cost (\$)**.
5. By default, the list of all the services is available in **Support Services** block. You can select the services offered for this Support Plan by selecting the check box beside them. You can also add additional Support Service using **Add New** link.
6. Click **Save**. The new support plan is added to the already existing list.
- 7.

Setting a Default Support Plan

The default support plan is applied when the account is not associated to any contract. You can set any support plan as default from the Support Plan list view page.

1. Click on **Set as Default Support Plan** icon  beside the support plan from the in the list view.

2. A dialog box appears confirming the operation.
3. Click **Ok** to continue. The support plan is set as default indicated with the icon .

Edit Support Plan

1. Click on **Edit** icon  beside the support plan name to be edited.
2. From the edit support plan form, **Modify** the required details.
3. **Save** the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Support Plan

1. Click on **Delete** icon  beside the support plan name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the support plan, then click **Cancel**.

Configuring Service Level Agreements

Service Level Agreements (SLA) help evaluating the efficiency, effectiveness and responsiveness of your support team. You can configure SLAs for each Support Plan and based on the services offered, the response and resolution time can be set accordingly.

Scenario	Your organization is providing service contract (Gold Support Plan) to Acme Inc, and you have configured Service Level Agreement (say SLA 1) with Gold Support Plan such that the requests should be responded within 4 hours and resolved within 8 hours. Now any requests raised for Acme Inc follows SLA 1 and the due by time is set accordingly.
-----------------	---

To access Service Level Agreement configuration page,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Service Level Agreement** icon  under the **Contract Settings** block. The Service Level Agreements list view page opens. From this page, you can Add, Edit, Delete and Organize Service Level Agreements.

Add Service Level Agreement

Clicking on the **Add New SLA** link takes you to the SLA form. The SLA form consists of two blocks - **SLA Details** and **SLA Rules**.

SLA Details

1. Enter a unique name to identify the SLA in **SLA Name** field.
2. You can also provide a brief **Description** for the SLA.
3. Select the **Support Plan** from the drop down for which the service level agreement should be applied.

SLA Rules - SLA is applied to requests matching certain criteria

Say, you want all the requests with Priority as 'High' OR Category as 'Replacement Queries' to be responded within 4 hours and resolved within 8 hours.

1. Select the **Criteria** from the drop down.
2. Click **Choose** button to choose the values from the database for that particular parent criteria. Choose the values and click **Ok**. If you have selected the criteria as Priority then select the value 'High' from list of priority by clicking Choose button. If you want to select multiple values press **Shift** or **Ctrl** key. The selected values appear in the text field beside the choose button.
3. Click **Add to Rules** button to add the defined rule to the rule set. You can add another criteria for 'Category' in the same manner as explained above.
4. Select **Match ANY of the following (OR)** radio button if you do not want all the criteria to be checked before applying the SLA. By default, the radio button **Match ALL of the following (AND)** is selected.

Support Plan *

SLA Rules

When a new request arrives :

Match ALL of the following (AND) Match ANY of the following (OR)

Criteria

is

Rules Set

Rule	
 	Priority is "High"

Any Request matching the above rules should be responded within : Days Hours Minutes

Any Request matching the above rules should be resolved within : Days Hours Minutes

Should be resolved irrespective of operational hours.

5. Set the **Response Time** and **Resolution Time** in terms of Days, Hours and Minutes. **Response Time** denotes the time within which the support rep should respond to the request. Automated emails generated from the system will not be considered as a response. **Resolution Time** or **due by time** denotes the time within which the a resolution is provided to a request and the status is set to Resolved.
6. You also have an option to resolve requests irrespective of the operational hours and holidays by **Enabling Should be resolved irrespective of Operational Hours**. By selecting this option, you will be overriding the operational hours of your organization and the due by time is calculated from the creation time without taking into consideration the holidays and operational hours.
7. If the request is not responded within the specified **Response Time**, you can set escalation levels for notification to higher level support reps. To escalate requests when the response time elapses,
 1. Click **Enable Level 1 Escalation**.
 2. Choose the support rep to whom the ticket needs to be escalated by clicking **Choose** button.
 3. You can specify the actions to be carried out while performing the escalation from **Choose Action** drop down.
 4. Set the **Date** and **Time**, **Before** or **After** the escalation.
8. Similarly, if the request is not resolved within the specified **Resolution Time**, you can set the up to 4 levels of escalation to support reps.

If response time is elapsed then escalate:

Enable Level 1 Escalation

Escalate to: "\$Ticket Owner"

Set Priority as: "High"

Choose Action ----

Escalate Before Escalate After 2 Days | Time : 2 Hours 0 Minutes

If resolution time is elapsed then escalate:

Note: All levels of escalations are based on Dueby Time

Enable Level 1 Escalation

13. **Save** the details.

By default, the SLAs escalations are enabled. You can disable the SLA escalations by selecting **Disable Escalation** button from the SLA list view page.

Edit Service Level Agreement

1. From the SLA list view page, click the **Edit** icon  beside the **SLA Name** to be edited.
2. The Edit SLA form opens with the values populated while adding the SLA.
3. Modify the details and **Save** the changes.

Delete Service Level Agreement

1. In the SLA list view page, click the **Delete** icon  beside the **SLA Name** you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog is opened.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion. The SLA is deleted from the SLA list.

Organize Service Level Agreements

You can decide the order in which the SLA should be applied on the incoming request by Organizing Service Level Agreement. With this option you can also organize the SLA to appear in the list view by following the steps below,

1. In the SLA list view page, click **Organize SLA** link. A pop-up window is opened with the list of available SLAs in the order that is appearing the list view.
2. Select an SLA, and click **Move up** or **Move Down** button beside the list.
3. Click **Save**.

Configuring Operational Hours

You can set the operational hours of your organization which calculates the du by time for a request.

To set the organization's operational hours,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click on **Operational Hours** icon  under Contract Settings block.

Contract Settings - Operational Hours

Operational Hours

* Mandatory Field

Working time

To specify your working hours, Select a start and end time.

Round the clock (24 hours)
 or
 Select Operational hours

Start Time 09 : 00
End Time 18 : 00

Working days

Please select working days of the HelpDesk

Monday
 Tuesday
 Wednesday
 Thursday
 Friday
 Saturday
 Sunday

3. You can specify your working hours as either **Round the clock** or you can **select the Operational Hours** from the **Start Time** and **End Time** drop down.
4. Now, select the days that your organization works by selecting the check boxes provided beside the days of the week.
5. Click **Save**. At any point if you wish not to modify the operational hours, then click **Reset**.

If you have already set the operational hours and now you wish to modify the same, you still need to follow the same procedure as specified above. But in this case, when you click **Operational Hours** from the **Admin Home** page, it will open the **Operational Hours** form with the details that have been set earlier. You can make the necessary modifications and then click on **Save**.

Configuring Holidays

Your organizations annual holidays can be configured using this option. This includes the list of holidays during which your firm would remain closed and is exclusive of the weekends when the firm does not function. The holiday list is also used while calculating the due-by-time of a request.

To open the holiday configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. In the **Contract Settings** block, click the **Holidays** icon . The list of available holidays is displayed. From this page you can add, edit and delete holidays.

Add Holidays

1. Click on Add New Holiday link from the holiday list view page.
2. Enter the Date of the holiday using the calendar icon . This field is mandatory and should be selected.
3. If required, you can provide the significance of the holiday in the Description field.
4. Click Save. The holiday is added to the list. At any point, if you do not wish to add the holiday and would like to get back to the holiday list, click Cancel.

Edit Holidays

1. In the holiday list view page, click the Edit icon  beside the holiday Date you wish to edit.
2. The holiday form opens with the values populated while adding the holiday.
3. Modify the details such as Date and Description.
4. Save the changes.

Delete Holidays

1. In the holiday list view page, click the Delete icon  beside the holiday Date you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click Ok to proceed with the delete operation. The holiday is deleted from the list.

User and Related Settings

For making the SupportCenter Plus available and usable for all your customers, you need to add contacts and support reps, and define their roles. This enables the contacts to log in to the Self-Service Portal to check the status of the issues reported by them, submit requests, and search the knowledge base online. The added support reps can log in to the SupportCenter Plus application and pick up requests, review and resolve requests assigned to them, add solution articles, and so on. The user management configurations allow you to add contacts, support reps, account managers define roles, and login access permissions.

-
- Roles 
 - Contact - Additional Fields 
 - Support Reps 
 - Support Rep - Additional Fields 
 - Account Managers 
 - Active Directory Authentication 
 - Windows Domain Scan 
-

Configuring Roles

Support Reps accessing SupportCenter Plus application have defined roles and hence a defined set of tasks to execute. You can configure different roles and assign these roles to the support reps accessing the application.

To access Roles configuration page,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Roles** icon  under User and Related Settings. The Role list view page displays the available roles. You can add, edit and delete roles from this page.

Adding a Role

1. Click the **Add New Role** link.
2. Enter a unique name for the role in **Role Name** field. The Role Name is to identify the role and is a mandatory field.
3. Set the **access permissions** for the role. To set the access permission, just select the check boxes beside the access levels defined for each of the modules of the application.

Role List
[Add New Role](#)

*Mandatory Field

Role Name *

Access levels >>	Full Control	View	Add	Edit	Delete
Requests	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Solutions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Contracts	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Accounts	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reports	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Access permissions *

Requests support rep is allowed to view

All
 All in group & assigned to him
 Assigned to him

Support Reps allowed to Approve Solution

Support Reps allowed to Edit DueBy Date and First Respose DueBy Time

Support Reps allowed to Merge Requests

Description

Say, you want to provide **Add** permissions for the modules Account and Solution and only **View** permissions for the Request module.

Select the check box below **Add** against the **Accounts** and **Solutions** modules. For the request module, select the check box below **View**. Selecting the Add option automatically enables View permissions also.

4. You can also provide restrict access to support reps from viewing all requests in the application. Select the appropriate radio button to suit your needs from the following,
 - **All:** Support rep can view all the requests received in SupportCenter Plus.
 - **All in Group & assigned to him:** Support rep can view all the requests associated to his group and also the requests that are assigned to him.
 - **Assigned to him:** Support rep can view only those requests that are assigned to him/her only.
5. You can also provide permission to approve solutions for this role by enabling the check box beside **Support Reps allowed to Approve solution**.
6. You can provide permission to modify the due by date and first response due by time while editing a request, on selecting the check box beside **Support Reps allowed to Edit DueBy Date and First Response Dueby Time**.
7. Furthermore, you can provide permission to merge requests raised in the application by enabling **Support Reps allowed to Merge Requests** check box. On selecting this option, the support rep has the ability to merge requests from the request list view page and also from the details page of a request. To know more on merging requests, click [here](#).
8. Enter the **Description** for the role you are adding.
9. Click **Save**. The Role is added to the list of available roles in the list view page.

Edit Role

1. Click on the **Edit** icon  beside the role name you wish to edit.
2. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Role

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the role name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog box appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the role, then click **Cancel**.

Configuring Contact - Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while adding a new contact apart from the pre-set fields in the new contact form you can configure them under Contact - Additional Fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on the **Contact - Additional Fields** icon  under **User and Related Settings** block. The Contact - Additional Fields page opens. You can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the new contact form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

These additional fields will appear while adding a new contact under **Additional Contact Details** block. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The fields deleted is removed from the **Add Contact** form.

Configuring Support Rep - Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while adding a support rep apart from the pre-set fields in the new support rep form you can configure them under Support Rep - Additional Fields. You can add **text** fields, **numeric** fields and **date** type fields in the form.

To add additional fields,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on the **Support Rep - Additional Fields** icon  under the **User and Related Settings** block. The **Support Rep - Additional Fields** page opens. You can add up to 12 text fields, four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. Select the **Type** of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either **Single- Line**, **Multi – Line** or **Pick List (drop down list)**. For Pick List fields, the added values can be rearranged using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the add new support rep form.
5. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click on the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. **Save** the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click on the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

These additional fields will appear while adding a support rep under **Additional Support Rep Details** block. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The fields deleted is removed from the **Add Support Rep** form.

Configuring Support Reps

Support Reps handle and resolve the various incoming requests from customers. Support Reps are defined with access privileges and roles to execute a set of tasks on a daily basis. You can add support reps manually or if their details are configured in the Active Directory, you can import their details into the application.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Support Reps** icon  under **Users and Related Settings** block. The Support Rep list view page opens where you can add, import, edit and delete support reps.

-
- Add New Support Reps
 - Import Support Reps from Active Directory
 - Editing Support Reps
 - Deleting support Reps
-

Add New Support Rep

1. Click the **Add New Support Rep** link.
2. Specify the Personal Details of the support rep such as the **Name**, **Employee ID** and **Job Title**. The Name is a mandatory field.
3. Enter the **Contact Information** of the support rep like, **Email ID**, **Phone** and **Mobile** number. You can also enter the **SMS Mail ID** if the support rep has one.
4. Enter the **Cost Details** of the support rep in the **Cost per hour** field.
5. While configuring Telephony Server Settings, you can enable incoming call alert as a screen pop up by selecting the check box beside **Enable Screen Pop**.
6. Enter the **SIP User** along with the **Extension Number**. The SIP User is account name registered in the IP-PBX.
7. If you have configured any additional fields for the support rep then the same is displayed under **Additional Support Rep Details** block. Enter the relevant information.
8. Provide login access to the support rep by selecting **Enable Login for this Support Rep**. This displays the Assign Role block just below the login name and password fields.
9. Enter the **Login Name** and **Password**. Enter the password again in the **Re-type Password** field. All these fields are mandatory if login is enabled. Also note that the login name needs to be unique.
10. Only on enabling login for the support rep will the **Assign Roles to the Support Rep** drop down appear. Choose the role from the drop down. The support rep can be assigned with Administrator privilege, Business Unit Administration privileges or with the roles configured in the application.

Note If you have configured multi tendency through Business Units, please note that a support rep can be assigned with only one role for a Business Unit. To assign Support Reps to multiple Business Units and assign roles to the same, configure the support reps under Admin -> Global Settings -> Support Reps.

Click **Save**.

Import Users from Active Directory

You can import all your support reps instantly if their details are configured in the Active Directory.

1. From the support rep list view, click **Import from Active Directory** link. The Import from Active Directory page pops up as shown below,

All the fields are mandatory and should be configured.

2. Select the **Domain Name** and Domain Controller from which the support rep needs to be imported.
3. Specify the **Login Name** and **Password** to the domain.
4. Select the fields to be imported from the active directory. The unselected fields will not be imported.
5. Click **Next**. The import wizard page opens, which displays the various Organizational Units (OUs) available in the domain.
6. Select the specific OU to import users by enabling the check box.
7. Click **Start Importing** button to import the users. After importing the users you get a report on successful and failed import.
8. Click **Close Window**.

On importing users from Active Directory, the Login permissions (either AD authentication or Local authentication) should be provided from the List View.

Enabling AD Login

1. From the support rep list view, select the check box beside the name of the support rep.
2. Click **Enable AD Login** button. The AD Login permission is enabled subjected to your licences.

On enabling Active Directory Authentication option under **Settings** in the Admin module, support reps can log into the application using their AD Login name and choosing their Domain from the drop down.

Edit Support Rep

While editing a support rep, apart from modifying the support rep details you can provide login credentials to support reps, reset their password and remove login permissions. To edit the support rep information,

1. Click the **Edit** icon  of the support rep to be edited.
2. From the edit support rep page, modify the details and **Save** the changes.

Reset the Password

You can also **change the password** of the support rep from the Edit Support Rep form.

1. Click the **Reset Password** link under Login Details block. The **Reset Password** form opens.
2. Enter the **New Password** in the field provided as shown below,



3. Select **Reset Password** button. If you do not wish to change the password, click **Close** button.
4. Click **Save** in the Edit Support Rep form.

Removing Login Permissions

You can also choose to remove his/her login permissions.

1. In the Edit Support Rep form under **Login Details** block, click the **Yes** link beside **Remove Login** field. A confirmation window appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed with the operation. If you do not wish to remove the login permission, click **Cancel**.
3. Click **Save**.

Delete Support Reps

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the support rep's name to delete from the List View. A confirmation dialog is opened.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the delete operation.

Note

The Delete icon will not be available beside the name of the support rep who has currently logged in to the application.

To delete that support rep, you need to log out and log in as a different support rep and then delete the details. Also, the administrator details can be deleted only by another support rep with administrative privileges.

Account Manager

The account manager keeps a track of the customer account and keeps them up to date. The account managers are support reps who are in close association with the customers.

The account manager have permissions to view all the request raised by the contacts in the account, thereby coordinating with the support rep to solve the issues immediately.

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on the **Account Managers** icon  under the **User and Related Settings** block. The Account Manager list view page opens. From this page, you can add, edit and delete an account manager.

Add Account Manager

1. Click on the **Add New Account Manager** link.
2. Enter the **Personal Details** of the Account Manager such as **Name** and the **Employee ID**. The Name is mandatory field.
3. Specify the **Contact Information** of the account manager such as, **E-mail, Phone and Mobile** details in the respective fields.
4. Specify the Login Details of the account manager such as, **Login Name, Password and Re-type Password** details
5. Click **Save** to save the details.

Edit Account Manager

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the account manager name to be edited.
2. **Modify** the details and **Save** the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Account Manager

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the account manager name to be deleted. This opens confirmation dialog box.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the delete operation. If you do not want to delete the account manager click **Cancel**.

Configuring Groups

Groups denotes the classification of your support team so that all the incoming requests can be categorized and equally distributed amongst the support reps. Say, the support reps under the Warranty Group handle requests relating to warranty.

You can also send notification to the support reps on receiving a new request and if a request is left unpicked. The groups configured, is listed in the drop-down menu in the **New Request** form.

To open the group configuration page,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click the **Groups** icon  under **Users and Related Settings** block. The Group List page is displayed from where you can add, edit, or delete groups.

Add Group

1. Click the **Add New Group** link.
2. Specify a unique name to identify the group in **Group Name** field.
3. Select the support reps under this group from the **Available Support Reps** list box. Click >> button to move them to **Support Reps interested in this group**.
4. You can send notification to the support reps in the group when a new request is added to the group. Enable **Send notification to group support rep(s) when a new request is added to this group** check box.
5. Click **Choose** button to open the **List of Group Support Rep** pop-up window.
6. Select the support reps to notify and click **OK**.
7. You can send notification to support reps when a request from the group is left unpicked. Enable **Send notification to support rep(s) when a request in this group is left unpicked** check box. This drops down the support rep selection field and time period configuration after which the notification will be sent.

Warning



Enabling the check boxes while adding group does not ensure that the notification will be sent. This setting is just to choose the support reps to whom the notification needs to be sent and the time frame after which the unpicked request notification is to be sent.

To actually send the notification, you need to enable the corresponding setting under the **Notification Rules** under the Admin tasks,

1. Notify group support rep by mail when request is added to group.
2. Notify support rep by mail when request is unpicked in group.

8. Click **Choose** button to open the complete list of support reps available in your help desk.
9. Select the support reps from the list box and click **OK**.
10. Select the **Time period**, from the creation of the request in group, after which the notification of unpicked requests will be sent to the selected support reps.
11. If you wish to describe the group in detail enter the same in the **Description** text box.
12. Click **Save**.

Edit Group

1. Click the **Edit** icon  beside the group name you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Group** form, you can modify the name of the group, the support reps belonging to the groups, the notification settings, and description.
3. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Group

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the group name you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the group, then click **Cancel**.

Windows Domains

You can configure the Windows domains available in your network using ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus. When you set up the SupportCenter Plus application and start it for the first time, the application will scan your network and identify all the available Windows domain in your network.

To view the discovered domains,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click the **Windows Domains** icon  in the **Users and Related Settings** block. The resulting page displays the discovered list of Windows domains. You can add, edit and delete domains.

If you find that there are some domains that are missing in the list, then you can add those domains manually also.

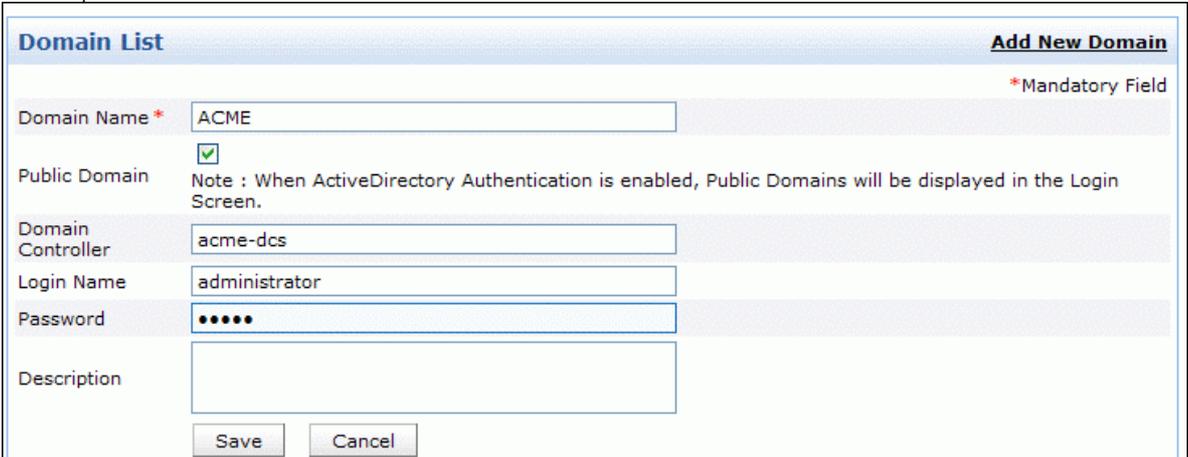
Add Domains

To add a new Windows domain,

1. Click the **Add New Domain** link.
2. Enter the **Domain Name**. The name has to be unique and is mandatory field.
3. If you want the domains to be displayed in the login screen when Active directory Authentication is enabled then, select the check box beside **Public Domain**.
4. Enter the **Domain Controller** name for the Active Directory Server.
5. Enter the Login Credentials for the domain controller in **Username** and **Password** fields.
6. If you wish to add any description for the domain, enter it in the **Description** text box.
7. Click **Save**.

Edit Domains

1. Click on the **Edit** icon  beside the **Domain Name** you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Domain** form, you can modify the name of the domain, login name, password, and description of the domain as shown below,



Domain List		Add New Domain
Domain Name *	<input type="text" value="ACME"/>	*Mandatory Field
Public Domain	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Note : When ActiveDirectory Authentication is enabled, Public Domains will be displayed in the Login Screen.
Domain Controller	<input type="text" value="acme-dcs"/>	
Login Name	<input type="text" value="administrator"/>	
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>	
Description	<input type="text"/>	
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>		

3. Click **Save** to save the changes performed. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Domains

1. Click the **Delete** icon  beside the **Domain Name** you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog is opened.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. The domain gets deleted from the list. If you do not wish to delete the domain, then click **Cancel**.

User Survey Settings

You can easily record your customer satisfaction level on various key parameters that you would like to measure about the support team and their response quality, by conducting a survey upon changing the ticket status to Closed. You can define your own survey questions and the also set the frequency of conducting the survey.

The various survey related configurations and the survey related actions are,

- Survey Settings 
- Define Survey 
- Sending a Survey
- Survey Preview 
- Survey Result 

Survey Settings

You can configure the default messages that needs to appear while sending a survey such as the welcome message, survey success or failure message and thank your message. You can also choose to enable or disable the survey. If you choose to enable the survey, you can also schedule the periodicity of conducting the survey.

To configure the survey settings,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Survey Settings** icon  under User Survey Settings.
3. From the Survey Setting page, select **Enable User Survey** check box.
4. Under the **Survey Details** block, enter the **Sender Name**.
5. Enter the message that you wish to display as the **Welcome Message** to the user taking the survey.
6. Next, enter the message that you would display on Successful submission of the survey by the user under Success Message.
7. When the survey is taken by a person who has already submitted the answers for the survey, then you will have to display a failure message. You can enter the same in the **Failure Message** text area.
8. You can also enter the thank you message that will be displayed just before the Submit button in a survey, in the **Thanks Message** text area.
9. To schedule the survey, in the **Schedule Survey** block, choose the radio button that you wish to set as a criteria for sending the survey.
10. Click **Save**. The survey settings are saved.

Defining a Survey

You can define your own survey questions and satisfaction levels that suits the needs of your organization and users.

To define your survey,

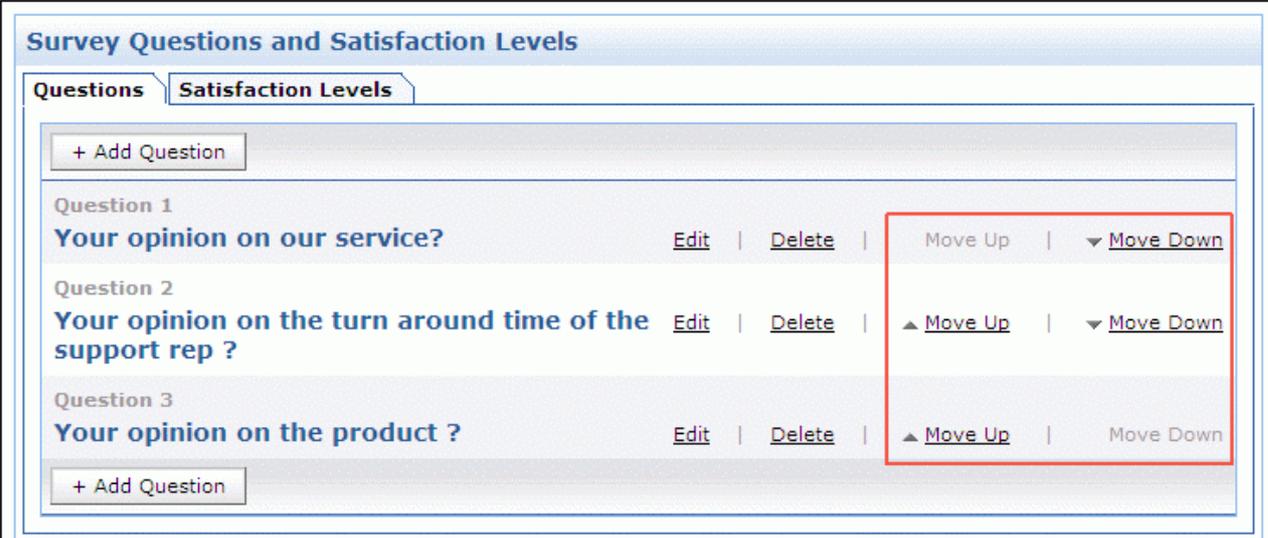
1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. Click on **Define a Survey** icon  under the **User Survey** block. From Define Survey page, you can add, edit and delete the survey questions and satisfaction levels.
 - Survey Questions
 - Satisfaction Levels

Survey Questions

Add Survey Questions

1. Click on **Questions** tab.
2. Click the + **Add Question** button.
3. Type in your question in the text area provided.
4. Click **Save**. The question is added in the Questions tab.

You can add any number of questions to the survey by following the above steps. As you keep adding the questions it gets appended at the end of the question list. You can change the order of the questions by clicking the **Move Up** and **Move Down** link that is available beside each question.



Survey Questions and Satisfaction Levels

Questions | Satisfaction Levels

+ Add Question

Question 1 Your opinion on our service?	Edit Delete Move Up Move Down
Question 2 Your opinion on the turn around time of the support rep ?	Edit Delete Move Up Move Down
Question 3 Your opinion on the product ?	Edit Delete Move Up Move Down

+ Add Question

Edit Survey Questions

1. Click on **Questions** tab.
2. Click on the **Edit** link beside the question you wish to edit.
3. Edit the question displayed in the text area.
4. Click **Save**. The **Define Survey** page is refreshed to display the modifications made.

Delete Survey Questions

1. Click on Questions tab.
2. Click **Delete** link beside the question you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog pops up.
3. Click **Ok** to delete the question.

	<p>Note Deleting a survey question will have an impact on the previously collected survey results.</p>
---	---

Satisfaction Levels

Add Satisfaction Levels

1. Click on **Satisfaction Levels** tab.
2. Click + **Add Level** button.
3. Enter the satisfaction level in the text area provided.
4. Click **Save**.

You can add any number of satisfaction level to the survey by following the above steps. As you keep adding the levels it gets appended at the end of the level list. You can change the order of the satisfaction levels by clicking the **Move Up** and **Move Down** link available beside each question.

Satisfaction levels scales from bad to good with Good at the bottom and Bad at the top.

Edit Satisfaction Level

1. Click on **Satisfaction Levels** tab.
2. Click on the **Edit** link beside the satisfaction level you wish to edit.
3. Edit the satisfaction level displayed in the text area.
4. Click **Save**. The page refreshes to display the modified levels.

Delete Satisfaction Level

1. Click on **Satisfaction Levels** tab.
2. Click on **Delete** link beside the satisfaction level you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog pops up.
3. Click **Ok** to delete the satisfaction level.

	<p>Note Deleting a satisfaction level or changing its order has an impact on the previously collected survey results.</p>
---	--

Sending Survey

On closing a request, the survey form is sent via email to the contact to rate the customer satisfaction. The survey form is sent to the contact based on the configured Schedule Survey Settings.

 <p>Note</p>	<p>The following are the conditions to send the survey form</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Either a support rep or administrator should have logged in. 2. The request must be closed. 3. The User Survey option must be enable in the Survey Settings.
--	---

Dear Sharon Harper
 Please help us improve our service by completing this short survey. Your feedbacks and comments will help us to improve our service. We appreciate your time here.
<http://support.acme.com:8082/sd/SurveyDetails.sd?surveyMode=newSurvey&surveyID=6&userID=301>
 Thanks and regards,
 Support.

Click on the link to open the User Satisfactory Survey page,

SupportCenter Plus Survey - User Satisfaction Survey

Welcome Sharon Harper,
 Please help us to improve our service by participating in this brief survey.

Survey sent for

Request Title	My Iphone display is not working
Request ID	4
Created on	29 Oct 2009, 10:45:32
Closed on	18 Nov 2009, 17:26:37
Surveyed By	Sharon Harper

1 Your opinion on our service?

Poor Good Excellent Average

2 Your opinion on the turn around time of the support rep ?

Poor Good Excellent Average

3 Your opinion on the product ?

Poor Good Excellent Average

Any other Comments or suggestion

Thank you for taking part in this survey.

Once the contact has answered the survey questions and hit the **Submit** button, the result of the survey is listed under Survey Results. Once the survey is submitted the response cannot be changed.

User Survey Settings - Survey Results

Survey Results List

Subject	Contact Name	Created Date	Support Rep	Completed Date	Ratings
My Iphone displ...	Sharon Harper	29 Oct 2009	Jake Thomas	29 Oct 2009	12.0
My Iphone displ...	Sharon Harper	29 Oct 2009		29 Oct 2009	9.0

Survey Preview

You also have an option to preview the User Survey form that will appear to the user.

To preview the User Survey form,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Survey Preview** icon  under **User Survey Settings**. The Preview Survey page opens with the list of configured questions and levels.

Viewing Survey Results

Once the contact completes the survey, the support rep can view the survey results.

To view the survey results,

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Survey Results** icon  under User Survey Settings block. The Survey Results list view page opens.
3. Click on the **Subject** of the survey result. The **User Satisfaction Survey** page pops up.

My Org Inc - User Satisfaction Survey


Survey Details

Survey sent to	Sharon Harper	Survey sent for	My Iphone display is not working	Satisfaction level Summary	100.0 / ₁₀₀
Survey sent on	18 Nov 2009, 15:40	Request ID	3		
Survey answered on	18 Nov 2009, 15:40	Created on	29 Oct 2009, 10:45		
		Closed on	18 Nov 2009, 15:40		

Sharon Harper's comments and suggestion

Sharon Harper's Answers

1 Your opinion on our service?
 Poor Good **Excellent**

2 Your opinion on the turn around time of the support rep ?
 Poor Good **Excellent**

3 Your opinion on the product ?
 Poor Good **Excellent**

Organization Settings

Organization settings includes configuring general settings such as the language in which the application should be displayed, Active Directory Settings, enable Business Units options and so on.

In addition, organization settings also includes configuring organizational details, scheduling backup process at regular intervals and notifying support reps in case of any application error.

-
- Organization Details 
 - Settings 
 - System Notification Settings 
 - Backup Scheduling 
-

Configuring Organization Details

You can configure the details of your organization under Organization Details. The Organization details appear while generating a report under the Reports module.

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **Organization Details** icon  under Organization Settings block. The **Organization Details** form is displayed.
3. Enter the **Basic Information** of your organization such as the **Name** of your organization and a brief explanation of the organization's specializations in the **Description** field.
4. Next, enter the Address of your organization such as address, city, postal code, state and country.
5. Specify the Contact Information such as the E-mail ID, Phone No., Fax No. and your organization Web URL.
6. You can also import the **Company Logo** and use that in places where the organization details are being used.
 1. Click **Import Image** button.
 2. Click the **Browse** button and choose the image file from the file chooser window and click **Open**.
 3. Click **Import**.
7. Enable the check box beside **Use this Image**, to use this image where the organization details are being used.
8. Click **Save**.

At a later time, if you wish to edit the information that you entered now, you can do so by following the same procedure explained above.

Configuring General Settings

You can set the default language, currency, date and time to be displayed in the application, enable Business Units and Active Directory Authentication for Support Reps, provided an Alias URL and URL Redirection, Mark request conversations as public/private and much more in General Settings.

To access the General Settings configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.



2. Click on the **Settings** icon under Organization Settings.

Language, Currency, Date and Time Settings

- **Display Language** Select the language in which the application should be displayed from the drop down. Say, Chinese, Dutch. The browser default language is English.
- **Currency** Specify the default currency of the SupportCenter Plus in the given text field. This unit will be used in all the places where cost calculation is done. Default currency specified in SupportCenter Plus is \$.
- **Date and Time Format** You can set the default format for data and time from the respective drop down. The selected data and time format is displayed wherever the date and time is required in SupportCenter Plus application.

Request Settings

- **Product Display** While selecting a product in the new request form or contract form, you have an option to list only the **Account-based products** or **All products** by choosing the option from the drop down.
- **Intelligent Response System** While creating a new request, contacts can view the available solutions (solutions which they can view) related to the request. Thus the contacts can search for solutions instantly rather than conducting a separate search in the Solutions tab. To avail this feature enable **suggest solutions for Contacts** check box.
- **Conversation** The mail transactions between the support rep handling the request and the contact are listed under Conversations in the request details page. Conversations between two support reps or between a support rep and account manager can be made private, i.e., these conversations will not be available to the contacts. In short, if the contact's email address is not specified in the To or CC field, the conversation is moved to private. Enable **Make request conversations public or private** check box to avail this option.

- **Request Feature Settings** Includes options to change the status of a request to Open, when a contact replies to an Onhold request. And, actions to perform when a contact replies to a closed requests. If you wish to change the status to Open, when a contact replies to an Onhold request, click '**Yes**' radio button. Select the following options when a **contact replies to a Closed request** - the request is reopened always; if the contact replies within the specified number of days from the closed time, the request is reopened. Else, the reply is created as a new request; the reply is appended as a conversation and notified to the support rep. The status of the request remains unchanged; the reply is created as a new request.

User Addition and Import Settings

- **Contact auto-addition configuration** If a request fetched into the application is from an unknown contact (contact details are unavailable in the database) then you have options,
 - **Do not log the request:** This option will not log any of the new request details.
 - **Log the request, but add the contacts after approval:** This option will log the request details but the contact information is added after approval from the concern personnel. These contacts will be listed under Unapproved contacts.
 - **Log the request and add the contact without approval:** This option will log the request and add the contact details to the server automatically without any formal approval.
 - **Also create self-service login account:** If you have selected the latter option, you can create a Self-service Login account to the contact. Select any one of the available options as per your need.
- **Auto-assign a contact to an account:** Requests raised by contacts whose information is unavailable in SupportCenter Plus application can be assigned to the account with the specified domain name automatically. Say, a contact John with the email address john@mycompany.com, sends an email to supportcenter for the first time and the domain, mycompany.com is already mapped to the account MyCompany Inc., then John is automatically associated to MyCompany Inc. If the account information is unavailable in the database, then SupportCenter Plus automatically adds the account name from the specified domain name in the email address and automatically associate the contact to it. You can also exclude certain domains on selecting **Excluded Domains** link. When a contact is automatically associated to an account, you can enable email notification to be sent to support reps. Select the check box under **Notifications**. Next, click **Choose** button and select the support reps from the list. Click **Ok** to populate the selected support reps in the notifications field.
- **Active Directory Settings** Support Rep information can be imported through Active Directory and to enable AD authentication, you need to select the check

box beside **Enable Active Directory Authentication** after which the Support Reps can log into SupportCenter Plus application using their AD credentials. Furthermore, you also have an option to **Schedule Active Directory** at regular intervals to synchronize the database information with the active directory. If there are any modifications in the existing support rep information, the data will be rewritten and updated in the application.

Active Directory Settings

Enable Active Directory Authentication
If enabled, Support Rep(s) can log in to SupportCenter using their Active Directory credentials.

Schedule Active Directory Import
Import every days

- **Outlook Configuration** While importing the contact details from Outlook into SupportCenter Plus application, login details for the contact can be created automatically by enabling the check box. The contact e-mail id is taken as user name and password.

Contact Settings

- **Module Tabs** Enable the respective check box to show the **Solutions** and **Reports** tab to the contacts. The contacts have permission to view the solutions and reports.
- **Solutions View** Users without account can view the solutions to common problems in the login screen without raising a request. To view the solutions, enable any of the radio buttons to view,
 - **Show All Topics:** All the topics in solutions can be viewed in the Login screen.
 - **Don't show any Topics:** On enabling the radio button, no topics can be viewed in the login screen.
 - **Show specific Topics Template:** On enabling this option, the topic template gets listed in the combo box. Select the topic template to be viewed in the login screen.

The solutions can be viewed in the following URL: <http://<server name>:<port number>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd>

- **Request Cost Information** You have options to either show or hide the request cost (Time Entry) to the contacts. You can select any of the options from the following three,
 - **Don't show to Contacts:** The request cost is not shown to the contacts.
 - **Show only to primary Contacts:** The request cost is shown only to the Primary Contact.
 - **Show All contacts:** The request cost is available to all contacts.

- **Contact Details:** If you wish to allow the contacts to edit their profile then select **Allowed to edit their profile** else select **Not allowed to edit their profile**.
- **Show Account Information to Contact(s):**
Certain account information may contain vital facts that requires concealment from the contacts. To refrain the contacts from viewing the account information in the request details page, click 'No' radio button. Click 'Yes' radio button to allow the contacts to view the account details.
- **Show Reminders to Contact** If you wish to show reminder option to contacts then select 'Yes' radio button else select 'No' option. The reminders will be shown right top of the web client.
- **Support Reps availability information** If you wish show the support teams availability information to the contacts then click 'Yes' radio button else select 'No' option. The availability will be shown in the home page under Support Team tab.

Support Rep Settings

Set the support rep's default online status by selecting the radio button. If you wish to show the support team's availability information to the support rep enable 'Yes' radio button, else select 'No'.

Business Unit Settings

You can enable multi tendency feature by selecting **Enable Business Units feature** check box. With Business Units in SupportCenter Plus you can manage all your business units, accounts and contacts. [Refer Configuring Business Units for more information.]

Logo Settings

You can customize the application by choosing to display your custom logo. You need to add the logo in two dimensions, one for the login page and the other for the header image that you see on the top left corner of the pages once you login. The login page image should be of the dimensions 260 px x 65 px (W x H), while the header image needs to be 190 px x 30 px.

To import the login page image,

1. Click **Import image ...** button.
2. Click **Browse** button to choose the image.
3. In the file chooser window, select the file that you wish to import and click **Open**.
4. Click **Import**.

The image that you just imported will be replaced instead of the login page image. Follow the same process for header image also.

Other Settings

- **Max Attachment Size** You also have an option to set the **Maximum size of Incoming** and **Outgoing mail attachment** in SupportCenter Plus. By default you have max of Incoming mail attachment to be 10 MB and outgoing of 5 MB.
- **Forum Configuration** If you would like to route all the forum posts to SupportCenter Plus as requests then specify the mail address in the given text field.
 1. **Alias URL** To provide an alternate URL,
 1. In the text field provided beside the http:// text, enter the URL (along with the port number if needed).
 2. Click the **Open alias URL in a new window** link just below the text field, to test if the alias URL works.
 - **Configure URL Redirection on Logout** You can provide URL redirection when the support rep and contact logout of SupportCenter Plus application. Specify the URL redirection beside the fields **Redirect Support Representatives upon logout to this URL** and **Redirect Contacts upon logout to this URL**. To redirect the customers to the customer portal, type the URL provided below in the address bar of the browser, http://<server name>: <port number>/portal **(OR)** http://<server name>: <port number>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd

Click **Save**, to save the changes made in the settings.

System Notification Settings

In case of any application error such as mail fetching problem or if there is a failure in the backup process, you have an option to alert the concern support reps immediately using **System Notification Settings**. Furthermore, you can prevent unwanted acknowledgements or notifications being sent to the support reps through **Junk Notification Filter**.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click on **System Notification Settings** icon  under **Organizational Settings**.
3. In the System Notification Settings page, specify the name to be sent along with the notification in **Sender Name** field.
4. Specify the **Reply-To mail address**.

Notifications

To enable notification to support reps when an application error occurs or when there is a failure in backup process,

1. Enable the check box beside **Send e-mail when an Application Error Occurs**.
2. Select the support reps to be notified by clicking **Choose** button.
3. The **Select Support Rep** window pops up, displaying the list of all the global support reps. You can select more than a single support rep and click **Ok**. The selected support reps are displayed in the non editable text field.

Apart from this, you can also customize the email template of the notification "Password Reset Request Notification". To do this, click the **Customize Template** link. The screen refreshes with the **Message Template** settings from where you can edit the notification subject and message by adding or deleting variables to either of the block and click **Save**. To add or delete variables to subject and message of the email template, just click the corresponding variable in the list box on the right.

Junk Notification Filter

Junk Notification Filters prevents unwanted acknowledgements, notifications or information mails being sent to support reps that are not requested and do not require any action to be taken. These unwanted mails might create unnecessary email loop into the system. Acknowledgements for mails such as Out of Office replies, notifications that bounce back when the mail destination is not reachable (because of a wrong mail address) can be stopped from being acknowledged or notified.

You can also click on **Edit Criteria** and create a new notification filter. You can define a rule stating what mails need not require acknowledgement.

Backup Scheduling

You can take backup of all your data at regular intervals using Backup Scheduling option.

1. Click on the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configurations wizard page.
2. Select **Backup Scheduling** icon  under **Organizational Settings**. The backup scheduling page opens.

Scheduling a Backup

1. Click on **Add Scheduling** link if you are configuring backup for the first time.
2. **Enable Backup Schedule** using the radio button.
3. Select the date to **Start the backup** from the calendar icon . And also select the **Time** in hours and minutes from the respective drop down.
4. You can schedule the backup process for every n number of days. Select the **Number of days** from the drop down.
5. You have an option to either perform backup of the entire data available or the backup of data without the attachments. Select the corresponding radio button for **Backup Type**.
6. Specify the **Backup Location** to store the backup files.
7. Click **Save**. The backup taken at regular intervals is listed in Backup Scheduling list view along with the Next Backup Scheduled time.

Deleting Backup Files

1. From the Backup Scheduling list view, enable the check box beside the files you wish to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog opens.
3. Click **Ok** to continue. The backup file is deleted from the list.

SupportCenter Plus API

- Purpose of this Document
- REST API
- Supported Operations

Purpose of this Document

The purpose of this guide is to help developers understand the functionality of API in SupportCenter Plus. It also lists the operations that can be performed, the attributes, and the input and output sample formats of each operation. With this guide, developers can successfully establish an integration between SupportCenter Plus and various other applications and web services.

REST API

SupportCenter Plus API follows the REST pattern to integration and facilitate sharing of data with applications. The REST API conforms to the REST operations of GET, PUT and POST over HTTP POST or GET method. The resultant output formats is either in json or xml.

The integration is established with the help of an API application which performs as a communicator between the two applications. The API application is provided with certain roles and an API key for authentication mechanisms. The operations to be performed are based on the parameter 'operation' and is sent to a url via HTTP POST or GET method. The url format is as shown below,

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/api/<output
format>/<operation+module>?apikey=<apikey>&<params>
```

Supported Operations

The operations that can be performed through API are,

- **Request Related Operations**
adding request details, viewing existing request details, closing requests, viewing time entry details and view request description details.
- **Account/Contacts Related Operations**
adding account details, adding contact details, viewing existing account details, viewing existing contact details and view product details.
- **Solution Related Operations**
View solution details

Note



To get started with the integration, developers should first assign a role to the API application and generate an API Key. Click here to view the details on accessing SupportCenter Plus API.

API Settings in SupportCenter Plus

Before getting started with the API integration, certain criteria should be configured in SupportCenter Plus such as,

1. **Defining** the API Application.
2. Assigning specific **Roles** to the API application, and
3. Generating the **API Key**.

To access the API configuration wizard in SupportCenter Plus,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click **API** icon under **Organizational Settings** block. If you have enabled multi tenancy through Business Unit, click **Global Settings** tab - > **API** under Application Settings block. The list view displays the API applications configured in SupportCenter Plus. From this page, you can define an API application, edit and delete an application, e-mail the API Key, regenerate and disable the API key.

Defining the API Application

The first step towards the integration is defining the API Application in SupportCenter Plus. Click **Define API Application** link from the list view.

Defining the API application is a two step process - One, you need to define the application by entering the **Name** and a brief **Description** about the application; Two, you need to provide permission to perform certain operations.

Step 1: Define Application

1. Enter the **Application Name** in the text field provided. The name should be unique and is a mandatory field.
2. Specify a brief **Description** about the API Application.
3. Click **Next >>** button to proceed with the Application Permission. Click **Cancel** to return to the API list view.

Step 2: Application Permission

The Roles and the Business Units assigned to the API application are configured under this section.

1. Select the **Permissions** beside the modules. Only the enabled permissions can be performed by the API application.
2. If Business Units has been enabled, then the operations performed through API can be made to access only by certain Business Units. From the **Available Business Units** block, select the Business Unit for which API operations can be performed using the >> button.
3. Click **Save**. A success message is displayed along with the API Key. Click << **Previous** button to go back to Step 1. Click **Cancel**, to return to the API list view.

Generating the API Key

Once the API Application is defined and saved, the API Key id displayed along with an Email ID text field to send the API Key to the concern developer.

Apart from this, you can e-mail the API Key from the list view using **Email API Key** link.

 **SUCCESS : API Application defined successfully**

Application : API Application

API Key : B721B5D0-82F0-4082-9364-A43DD0E1D5E1

EmailID :

Specify the **Email ID** in the text field as shown above. Click **Send API Key** button. The API Key is sent as an e-mail to the specified email address. Click **Close** if you do not want to send the API Key.

Editing an API Application

To edit an API Application from the list view,

1. Click **More Actions** drop down beside the API application to edit.
2. Select **Edit API Application** option. **Define Application** form appears.
3. Modify the Name and Description in the form. Click **Next >>** button to display the **Application Permission** form.
4. Enable and disable the check box beside the permissions and also select the Business Units for API operations.
5. **Save** the changes.

Regenerating the API Key

To regenerate the API key of an application from the list view,

1. Click **More Actions** drop down beside the API application -> select **Regenerate API Key** option. A confirmation message to regenerating the API Key appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed. The regenerate API Key is displayed along with a success message.
3. Specify the **Email ID** of the user to whom the key should be sent. Click **Send API Key** button. The key is generated and sent to the concern user.

Disable API Key

When the API Key is disable, the API application is disabled simultaneously and further operations such as edit and regenerating the key cannot be performed.

To disable the API Key,

1. Click **More Actions** drop down beside the API application -> select **Disable API Key** option. A message confirming the disable operation appears.
2. Click **Ok** to proceed. The API application is disabled in the list view.

To enable the API Key,

1. Click **More Actions** drop down beside the API application -> select **Enable API Key** option. The API application is enabled in the list view.

Deleting the API Application

1. Click **More Actions** drop down beside the API Application to delete.
2. Select **Delete API Application** option. A message confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed. The API Application is deleted from the list view.

Request Related Operations

While invoking the request related operations through API, the operation defined are based on the parameter value, and the developer needs to submit a request to the url via HTTP POST or GET method.

NOTE: Before proceeding with the request related operations and its corresponding parameters, please note that the parameters are case sensitive and should be used as defined.

The following operations can be performed on a request through API,

- Add Request
- View/Read Request
- View/Read Request Description
- Add Notes for a request
- View/Read Notes for a request
- View/Read Time Entry for a request
- Close Request

Adding Request

URL Format

The URL format for the Request operation – Add
For xml output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/xml/addRequest
```

For json output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/json/addRequest
```

Parameters

The parameters that needs to be passed via HTTP method for adding a new request are as follows,

Parameter	Value	Description
email	string	Email address of the contact.
product	string	Product for which the request is raised.

status	string	Status of the new request. Generally, the status is Open.
level	string	Denotes the complexity of the new request.
priority	string	Denotes the priority (importance) of the request.
subject	string	Subject of the new request.
description	string	Description of the new request.
businessUnit	string	Business Unit

NOTE: Please note that the **Email** and **Subject** are mandatory fields to be entered while raising a new request. If multi tenancy is enabled through Business Units and if the application has more than one Business Unit configured, then **Business Unit** becomes a mandatory field.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters: -

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/addRequest"

status=Success

statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```

response uri="api/xml/addRequest"

status=Failure

statuscode=4000

statusmessage=The parameter [apikey] is not
available in the request

```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'addRequest' is given below,

```

<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/addRequest">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="email" value="[Email ID of contact]">
<input type="hidden" name="subject" value="[Subject of the request]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>

```

View/Read Request**URL Format**

The URL format for the Request operation - View/Read

For xml output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getRequest
```

For json output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/getRequest
```

Parameters

The parameters that needs to be passed via HTTP method for viewing a request are as follows,

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Request ID of the request.
search	string	View requests based on keyword search.
email	string	Email address of the contact.

Parameter	Value	Description
account	string	Account name of the contact.
product	string	Product for which the request is raised.
productType	string	Product Type of the product.
status	string	Status of the request. Can be Open, Closed, Onhold or any other configured status.
level	string	Denotes the complexity of the request.
priority	string	Denotes the priority (importance) of the request.
mode	string	Mode through which the request was raised.
group	string	Group to which the request was assigned.
supportRep	string	Support Rep assigned to the request.
subject	string	Subject of the request.
businessUnit	string	Business Unit
createdDuring	today, yesterday, this_week, last_week, this_month, last_month	Created date and time of the request.
dueByDuring	today, yesterday, this_week, last_week, this_month, last_month	Due by date and time of the request.
ompletedDuring	today, yesterday, this_week, last_week, this_month, last_month	Completed date and time of the request.
count		Denotes the number of requests to be displayed.
countFrom		Denotes the number from which the request should be displayed.

NOTE: Please note that while performing a 'getRequest' operation, either the **Request ID**, **Email** of the contact or name of the **Account** should be specified. In addition, you can also conduct a search using keywords.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/getRequest"

status=Success

statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/getRequest"

status=Failure

statuscode=5003

statusmessage=No contact with the
specified email exists.
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getRequest' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getRequest">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="email" value="[Email ID of contact]">
<input type="hidden" name="status" value="[Status of the request]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

Say, the email ID specified is jake@acme.com and the status as Open. So all the requests by the contact "Jake" with the status as 'Open' is displayed as the output in xml or json.

View/Read Request Description

This operation displays the Request Description alone, by specifying the request ID or by conducting a search using keywords.

URL Format

The URL format for the Request operation - View/Read Request Description

For xml output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getRequestDescription

For json output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/getRequestDescription

Parameters

Either of the following parameters should be passed via HTTP method.

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Request ID of the request to be viewed.
htmlDescription	True/False	Displays output as html or plain text format. If True, the output is displayed as html format. If False, the output is displayed as a plain text.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,
 response uri=[url value]
 status=Success
 statuscode=200

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/addRequestDescription"

status=Success

statuscode=200

```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```

response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode

```

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/addRequestDescription"

status=Failure

statuscode=5000

statusmessage=The Request ID [ ]
not found.

```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'addRequestDescription' is given below,

```

<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/xml/addRequestDescription">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Request ID of the request to view/read the description]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>

```

Adding Notes for a request

Through this operation, you can add notes to the existing requests.

URL Format

The URL format for the Request operation - Adding Notes for a request

For xml output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/addRequestNote

For json output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/addRequestNote

Parameters

The following parameters need to be passed via HTTP method.

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Request ID of the request.
comment	string	Note added to the request.
isPublic	True/False	If True, the note can be viewed by all users (public). If false, the note can be viewed only by support reps (private).

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters: -

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/addRequestNote"

status=Success

statuscode=200

```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```

response uri=[url value]

status=Failure

statuscode=failurecode

```

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/addRequestNote"

status=Failure

statuscode=5000

statusmessage=The Request ID [ ]
not found.

```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'addRequestNote' is given below,

```

<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/addRequestNote">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Request ID of the request to add note]">
<input type="hidden" name="comment" value="[Note added to the request]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>

```

View/Read Notes for a request

This operation displays the notes added to a request by specifying the Request ID.

URL Format

The URL format for the Request operation - View/Read Notes for a request

For xml output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getRequestNotes

For json output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/getRequestNotes

Parameters

The parameter to be passed via HTTP method is given below,

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Request ID of the request to view the notes.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/getRequestNotes"

status=Success

statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/getRequestNotes"

status=Failure

statuscode=5000

statusmessage=The Request ID [ ]
not found.
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getRequestNotes' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getRequestNotes">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter-API-Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Request ID of the request to view/read note]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

View/Read Time Entry for a request

This operation displays the Time Entry added to a request by specifying the Request ID.

URL Format

The URL format for the Request operation - View/Read Time Entry for a request

For xml output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/xml/getTimeEntryDetails
```

For json output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/json/getTimeEntryDetails
```

Parameters

The parameter to be passed via HTTP method is,

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Request ID of the request to view the Time Entry.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/getTimeEntryDetails"

status=Success

statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/getTimeEntryDetails"

status=Failure

statuscode=5000

statusmessage=The Request ID [ ]
not found.
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getTimeEntryDetails' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getTimeEntryDetails">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Request ID of the request to view/read time entry]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

Close Request

URL Format

The URL format for the Request operation - Close

For xml output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/closeRequest
```

For json output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/closeRequest
```

Parameters

The parameter to be passed via HTTP method is,

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Request ID of the request to be viewed.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/closeRequest"

status=Success

statuscode=200

```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```

response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode

```

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/closeRequest"

status=Failure

statuscode=5000

statusmessage=The Request ID [ ]
not found.

```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'closeRequest' is given below,

```

<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/closeRequest">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter-API-Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Request ID of the request]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>

```

Account/Contact Related Operations

While invoking the account/contact related operations through API, the operation defined are based on the parameter value, and the developer needs to submit a request to the url via HTTP POST or GET method.

NOTE: Before proceeding with the account/contact related operations and its corresponding parameters, please note that the parameters are case sensitive and should be used as defined.

The following operations can be performed on account/contact through API,

- Adding Account
- View/Read Account
- Adding Contact
- View/Read Contact
- View/Read Product

Adding Account

URL Format

The URL format for the Account operation - Add

For xml output

`http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/addAccount`

For json output

`http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/addAccount`

Parameters

The parameters that needs to be passed via HTTP method for adding a new account are as follows,

Parameter	Value	Description
name	string	Name of the account.
annualRevenue	string	Annual Revenue of the account.
email	string	Email Address of the account.
website	string	Website of the account.
phone	string	Contact Information of the account.
fax	string	Contact Information of the account.
industry	string	The type of Industry to which the account belongs.

Parameter	Value	Description
timeZone	string	Time Zone pertaining to the location of the account.
accountManager	string	Account Manager for the account.
Door No	string	Address of the account.
street	string	Address of the account.
landmark	string	Address of the account.
city	string	Address of the account.
province	string	Address of the account.
country	string	Address of the account.
zipCode	string	Address of the account.
description	string	Description on the account.
businessUnit	string	Business Unit

NOTE: Please note that the **Name** of the account is a mandatory field. If multi tenancy is enabled through Business Units and if the application has more than one Business Unit configured, then **Business Unit** becomes a mandatory field.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

response uri=[url value]

status=Success

statuscode=200

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/addAccount"
```

```
status=Success
```

```
statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
```

```
status=Failure
```

```
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/addAccount"
```

```
status=Failure
```

```
statuscode=4003
```

```
statusmessage= Permission Denied. [the API application is  
not provided with View/Read permission]
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'addAccount' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/addAccount">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="name" value="[Name of the account]">
<input type="hidden" name="description" value="[Brief Description about the account]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

View/Read Account

This operation displays the Account details by specifying either the Account name, Account ID or the starting alphabet of the account.

URL Format

The URL format for the Account operation - View/Read

For xml output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-  
number>/api/xml/getAccount
```

For json output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-  
number>/api/json/getAccount
```

Parameters

The parameters that needs to be passed via HTTP method for viewing an account are as follows,

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Account ID of the account to view.
account	string	Name of the account.
startswith	string	The first alphabetic letter of the account.
businessUnit	string	Business Unit

NOTE: Please note that either the **id**, **account name** or **starting alphabetic of the account** is a mandatory field.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

response uri=[url value]

status=Success

statuscode=200

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/getAccount"
```

```
status=Success
```

```
statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]

status=Failure

statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/getAccount"

status=Failure

statuscode=5002

statusmessage= The Account [account
name] does not exists.
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getAccount' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getAccount">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Account ID of the account to view]">
<input type="hidden" name="account" value="[Name of the account to view]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

Adding Contact**URL Format**

The URL format for the Contact operation - Add

For xml output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/xml/addContact
```

For json output

```
http://<server-name>:<port-
number>/api/json/addContact
```

Parameters

The parameters that needs to be passed via HTTP method for adding a new contact are as follows,

Parameter	Value	Description
name	string	Name of the contact.
email	string	Email Address of the contact
alternateEmail	string	Alternate Email address of the contact.
phone	string	Contact Information of the account.
mobile	string	Contact Information of the account.
jobTitle	string	Job Title of the contact.
twitterHandle	string	Twitter screen name of the contact.
account	string	Account to which the contact belongs.
loginName	string	Login Name of the contact
password	string	Password of the contact.
description	string	Description on the contact.
businessUnit	string	Business Unit

NOTE: Please note that the **Name** and **Email** address of the contact are mandatory fields. If multi tenancy is enabled through Business Units and if the application has more than one Business Unit configured, then **Business Unit** becomes a mandatory field.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters: -

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response
uri="api/xml/addContact"

status=Success

statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]

status=Failure

statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/addContact"

status=Failure

statuscode=6003

statusmessage=A Contact with email [email address] already
exists, so contact not added.
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'addContact' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/addContact">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter API Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="name" value="[Name of the contact]">
<input type="hidden" name="email" value="[Email address of the contact]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

View/Read Contact

This operation displays the Contact details by specifying either the Contact name, Contact ID or the starting alphabet of the contact.

URL Format

The URL format for the Contact operation - View/Read

For xml output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getContact

For json output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/getContact

Parameters

The parameters that needs to be passed via HTTP method for viewing an account are as follows,

Parameter	Value	Description
id	string	Account ID of the account to view.
account	string	Name of the account.
startswith	string	The first alphabetic letter of the contact.
businessUnit	string	Business Unit

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

response uri=[url value]

status=Success

statuscode=200

Sample Response

```

response
uri="api/xml/getContact"

status=Success

statuscode=200

```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```

response uri=[url value]

status=Failure

statuscode=failurecode

```

Sample Response

```

response uri="api/xml/getContact"

status=Failure

statuscode=5000

statusmessage=The Request ID [ ] not found.

```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getContact' is given below,

```

<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getContact">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter-API-Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Contact ID of the contact to view/read]">
<input type="hidden" name="account" value="[Account Name of the contact]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>

```

Say, the email ID specified is jake@acme.com and the Account name is Acme. The Contact details of Jake from the account Acme is listed.

To conduct a search for a specific contact or to list the contacts according the alphabet, specify the starting alphabetic of the contact.

View/Read Product

This operation displays the Product associated to the specified account along with the product details.

URL Format

The URL format for the Account operation - View/Read Product for an account

For xml output

`http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getProduct`

For json output

`http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/getProduct`

Parameters

The parameter to be passed via HTTP method is given below,

Parameter	Value	Description
account	string	Account name to view the products.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters: -

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.
- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/getProduct"
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
```

```
status=Failure
```

```
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/getProduct"
```

```
status=Failure
```

```
statuscode=5002
```

```
statusmessage=The Account [account name]  
does not exist.
```

Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getProduct' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getProduct">  
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter-API-Key]">  
<input type="hidden" name="account" value="[Name of the account to view the products]">  
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">  
</form>
```

Solution Related Operations

While invoking the solutions related operations through API, the operation defined are based on the parameter value, and the developer needs to submit a request to the url via HTTP POST or GET method.

NOTE: Before proceeding with the solution related operations and its corresponding parameters, please note that the parameters are case sensitive and should be used as defined.

The operations that can be performed over solutions is,

- View/Read Solutions
-

View/Read Solutions

The solutions can be viewed based on the Solution Id or by conducting a search using keywords.

URL Format

The URL format for the Solution operation -
View/Read

For xml output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getSolution

For json output

http://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/json/getSolution

Parameters

Either of the following parameters should be passed via HTTP method.

Parameter	Value	Description
Id	string	Solution ID of the solutions to be viewed.
search	string	View solutions based on search keywords.

Output Response Format

The output response format for both xml and json consists of three parameters:-

- **response uri:** The response uri is the url value sent over HTTP POST or GET method.

- **status:** The status denotes the status of the operation. Here there are only two status - Success and Failure.
- **statuscode:** The statuscode denotes the code displayed when the status is Success or Failure. For a successful operation, the status code is 200.

Success

When the operation is successful, the output response format is as given below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Success
statuscode=200
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/getSolution"

status=Success

statuscode=200
```

Error

Errors occur when the API Key is not valid or the parameter value does not exist in the application. In such cases, the output format is as shown below,

```
response uri=[url value]
status=Failure
statuscode=failurecode
```

Sample Response

```
response uri="api/xml/getSolution"

status=Failure

statuscode=4000

statusmessage=The parameter [apikey] is not
available in the request.
```

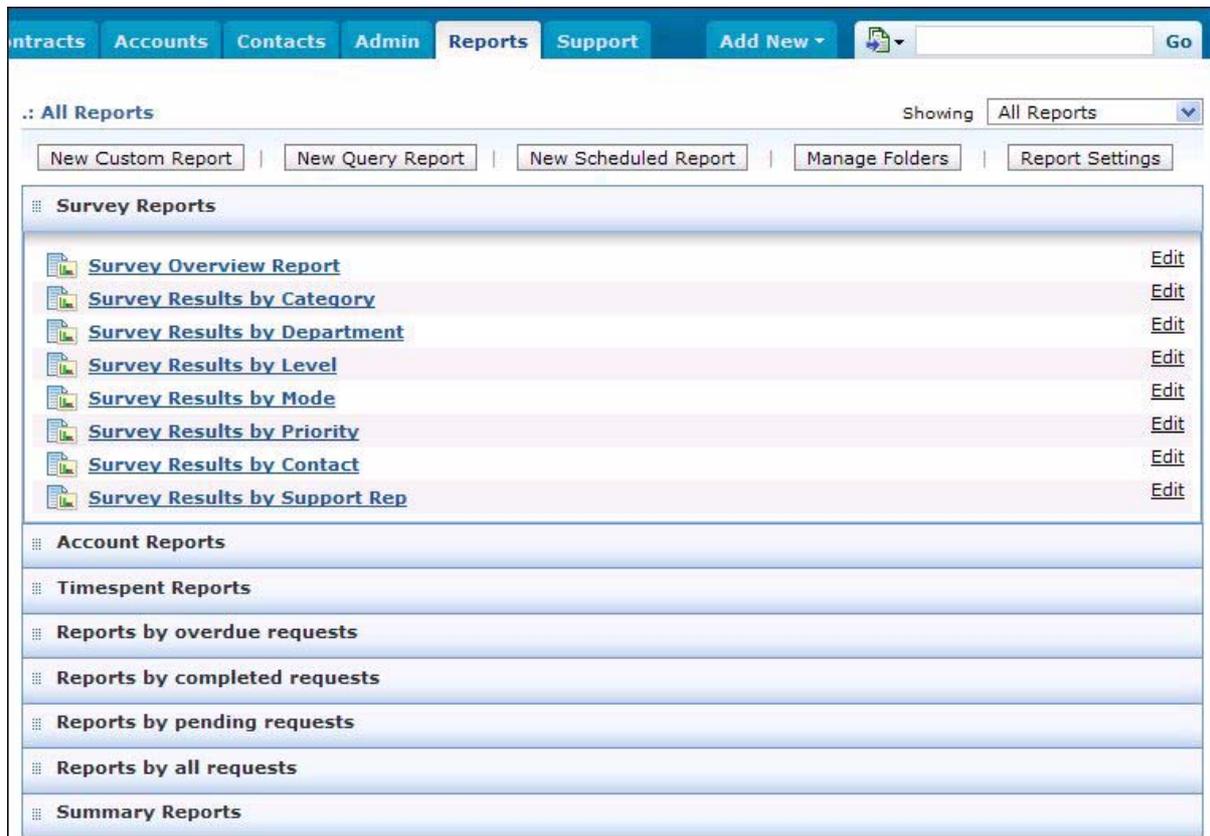
Sample Input Form

Sample form for the operation 'getSolution' is given below,

```
<form method="POST" action="http(s)://<server-name>:<port-number>/api/xml/getSolution">
<input type="hidden" name="apikey" value="[SupportCenter-API-Key]">
<input type="hidden" name="id" value="[Your solution ID]">
<input type="hidden" name="search" value="[Your solution search keyword]">
<input type="submit" name="submit" value="Get">
</form>
```

Reports

Reports play a vital role as its essential in every organization. You can view reports based on the time spent by a support rep on an account, product, or reports on all the over due requests. You can even schedule reports, Share reports to accounts and manage reports in the Reports tab.



The reports tab consists of the following -

- Custom Reports - Customize your own reports that suits your organizations needs.
- Query Report - Create Custom Reports by defining a Query.
- Schedule Report - Generate reports automatically on daily, weekly or monthly basis.
- Manage Folder - Keeps a track on the number of reports under each folder and option to add a new folder.
- Report Settings - Customize your report column size, the data and time format to be displayed in reports and options to Disable links, grouping per page and specify default values for empty fields.

Pre-defined Reports

SupportCenter Plus provides you with pre-defined reports that can be classified as Survey Reports, Account Reports, Timespent Reports, Reports by Overdue requests, Reports by Completed requests, Reports by Pending requests, Reports by all requests and Summary Reports.

Support Reps with administrator privilege and Full access permission over Reports module can edit these pre defined reports to suit their needs.

Survey Reports

These reports provide you with the summary details on the survey results based on various parameters. All these reports help in measuring the efficiency and effectiveness of your support team, and take respective corrective actions. Under Survey reports you have,

- **Survey Overview Report** which gives you the overall ratings of each of the questions in the survey based on the feedback of the users who took the survey. The ratings give you an idea about the value that is associated with the corresponding question. This report provides both tabular and a graphic representation of the results.
- **Survey Results by Category** report has the survey information grouped based on the category. Against each category, the points gained by each of the survey questions is tabulated. Depending on the kind of survey questions, this report provides valuable information based on individual request categories.
- **Survey Results by Department** has the survey information grouped based on the department from which the requests originated. The points for each question of the survey is mapped against the department name from where the request originated.
- **Survey Results by Level** has the survey information grouped based on the level of the requests. The points for each question of the survey is mapped against the level of the request for which the survey was sent.
- **Survey Results by Mode** has the survey information grouped based on the mode of the requests. The points for each question of the survey is mapped against the mode of the request for which the survey was sent. This also gives you an idea on the mode of request that is most frequently used to create a new request.
- **Survey Results by Priority** has the survey information grouped based on the priority of the requests. The points for each question of the survey is mapped against the priority of the request for which the survey was sent.
- **Survey Results by Contact** has the survey information grouped based on individual contact. This helps you in finding out which contact has sent the maximum number of requests and any other information based on your survey questions. This will give you an idea of the users perspective and help you in deciding about the corrective actions that need to be taken to make the support team more efficient and effective.
- **Survey Results by Support Rep** has the survey information grouped based on individual support reps. Each of the survey questions will carry some value and based on this value, the average value for the questions will be marked against the support reps. These points will enable you to objectively measure the support reps efficiency and effectiveness from the users perspective and take any corrective measures, if required.

Account Reports

These reports provide you with the summary of account details with several parameters such as **Report by Product, Product Zone, Time Zone, Report by Account City, Report by Account Country and Report by Account Industry**. Using these reports you can track the number of request raised from each account and zone.

Request Timespent Reports

These reports provide information on the support rep's time spent on requests and the cost per support rep based on the time spent. You can group the report information based on Account, Contact, Product and Product Type of the request. The time spent report by contact, gives you an idea on the cost per contact and the number of request.

By default, the support desk reports is created for the current week. On editing, you can choose any custom period of your choice or choose to create reports for last week, or this month, or for just this day. All these reports can be used for analysis purposes. Say, the reports mapped against the parameter support rep can be used to measure the support rep responsiveness and load handling capability.

Reports by Overdue requests

You can get the report of all the overdue requests from **Account, Category, Contact, level, Priority, Group, Contact, Product Type, Support Rep, Mode, Due Date and Created date**. Thus these reports helps in improving the service and rectify the mistakes for mutual benefit.

Reports by completed requests

These reports show the distribution of completed and closed requests. Similar to Survey Reports, these reports are generated based on various parameters such as **Category, Account, Contact, Level, Mode, Priority, Group, Product and Product Type**.

Reports by pending requests

This shows the distribution of all pending requests for a specific period of time, based on different parameters, such as **Category, Account, Contact, Level, Mode, Priority, Group, Product, Product Type and Support Rep**.

Reports by all requests

These reports provide you with graphical view of all open and closed requests by **Category, Created Date, Account, Level, Priority, Status, Group, Product, Product Type, Contact, Support Rep, request status by Category, Level, Priority, Support Rep, Account and Contact**.

Request Summary requests

These reports provide you with a high level view of the requests **Received and Completed** during a particular period date-wise. These reports are generated based on various parameters such as Category, Account, Contact, Level, Mode, Priority, Support Rep, Group, Product and Product type. These parameters are applicable for both Receive and Completed requests.

Custom Reports

SupportCenter Plus enables you to create reports that meet your organization needs.

To create your own custom reports,

1. Click on the **Reports** tab in the header pane to open the All Reports page.
2. Select **New Custom Report** button. The **Custom Reports** form opens.
3. Specify the **Report Title**. This field is mandatory.
4. Choose the **Report Type** by selecting either **Tabular Reports** or **Matrix Reports** radio button.
5. Select a module (Request, Time Spent, Survey and so on) for which you would like to create custom reports.
6. Click **Proceed to Report Wizard >>** button. The next page differs for each report type.

Generating Tabular Reports

Tabular reports are simple reports that allow you to list your data based on certain criteria. You can select the columns to view and group the output data. If you had selected the **Tabular Reports** option in step 5 above, then follow the steps below to create a tabular report.

Step 1: Select Columns to Display

1. Click Select columns to display title.
2. Select the columns to be displayed in the report by selecting it from the **Available Columns** list and move it to **Display Columns** list using >> button. You can also order the column list using upward and backward button.

Step 1 : Select columns to display

Available Columns

- Created Time
- Category
- Request Status
- Priority
- Contact Job Title
- Level
- Request Mode
- Dueby Time
- Completed Time
- Overdue Status

Display Columns

- Request ID
- Contact
- Last Updated
- Sub Account
- Account
- Subject

Hold Ctrl and click to select multiple items

Step 2: Filter Options

On selecting the columns to be displayed in the reports, you need to specify the **Filter Options** for the columns.

1. Click the **Filter Options** title.
2. Specify the **Date Filter** by selecting the **Column, Day** and **Date**.
3. If you wish to add **Advanced Filtering**, select the **Column Name** and **Criteria** from the drop down list. Specify the value by clicking on pick value icon . You can add 'n' number of Name and Criteria and match with AND or OR condition.

Step 3: Select Column to Group

1. Click **Column to Group** title to open the link.
2. Select the column data to be grouped from the **Group by** and **Order by** drop down. You also have an model column on the right hand side of the page.

Step 4: Select Summary Type

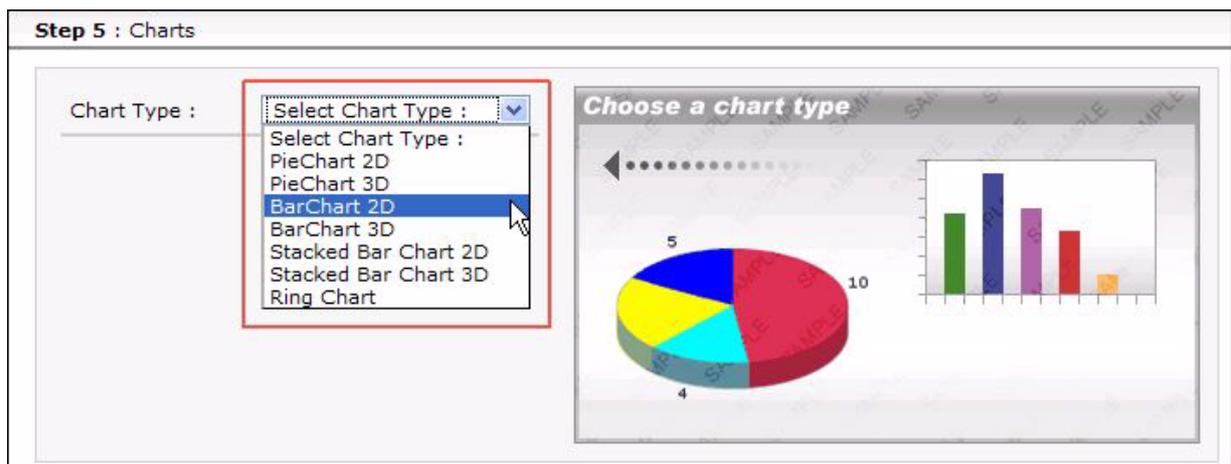
If you have selected any numeric field in the columns to display option then, this option will be available. Select the column summary options available for each column. Column summary options are count, sum, average, maximum value and minimum value.

Select the column summary options by enabling the check box. These selected column summary will be displayed in the reports.

Step 5: Charts

Choose the chart type to show the result in graphical format.

1. Clicking the **Charts** title opens the choose a chart type page.
2. Select the **Chart Type** from the combo box. Say, Pie chart or Bar chart and so on. On selecting the chart type a model chart type is displayed on the right hand side of the page.
3. Select Rum Report >> button. On running the report you get a tabular report as well as the graphical view for the selected column data.



Generating Matrix Reports

Matrix reports provides the data in a grid manner (m x n format). It allows you to study different scenarios based on the chosen criteria. If you have selected the Report Type as Matrix Report, follow the steps below,

Step 1: Select Column to Group

You have simple grouping and advanced grouping option for matrix reports.

Simple Grouping

1. Click the **Simple** tab. A sample matrix is displayed with options to select the **Top column** information and **left column** information. Both are mandatory fields
2. Select the **Top column** information to be displayed in the report.
3. Select the **Left column** information to be displayed in the report.
4. You can **Summarize the columns by** Count, Average, Minimum or Maximum value **Of** the Request ID or the Elapse Time.

Advanced Grouping

1. Click the **Advanced** tab. In Advance Matrix Report you have **Column Grouping** and **Group by** options. Both are mandatory.
2. Select the **Columns** and **Date format** from the drop down.
3. You can group the matrix in tree levels by selecting the respective levels under Group By column.
4. You can **Summarize the columns by** Count, Average, Minimum or Maximum value **Of** the Request ID or the Elapse Time.

Step 2: Filter Options

On selecting the columns to be displayed in the reports, you need to specify the **Filter Options** for the columns.

1. Click the **Filter Options** title.
2. Specify the **Date Filter** by selecting the **Column, Day** and **Date**.
3. If you wish to add **Advanced Filtering**, select the **Column Name** and **Criteria** from the drop down list. Specify the value by clicking on pick value icon . You can add 'n' number of Name and Criteria and match with AND or OR condition.
4. Click **Run Report >>** button. On running the report you get a **Matrix** report for the selected column data.
5. **Save** the Report.

Viewing Reports

While viewing a custom report, whether its Tabular or Matrix, you can perform actions such as Edit, Save the report, Schedule the report, Mail the report and View the Report Query.

	Jake Thomas	Not Assigned	Shawn Adams	administrator	Count
High	1	0	2	3	6
Normal	1	11	0	2	14
Count	2	11	2	5	20

- **Editing Reports:** Edit a custom report to choose fields of your choice.
- **Save Reports:** Create and save your customized report.
- **Schedule Reports:** Schedule to run the reports daily, weekly or monthly using this option. On scheduling the report, the selected report gets generated automatically on the specified date and time and the generated report is sent to the respective person through e-mail.
- **Mail this report:** Mail the report instantly to support reps and account managers as a PDF, HTML, XLS or CSV format.
- **Share:** You can share the reports to contacts in an accounts.

Editing Reports

You can edit the report either from the reports list view or while viewing an individual report.

Reports List View

1. From the All Reports page, click **Edit** link available against the custom report that you wish to edit. The Report Wizard page opens.
2. Modify the necessary details and **Save** the report

Viewing Reports

1. Click on the **Edit** button. The Report Wizard page opens.
2. Modify the necessary details and **Save** the report.

Delete Reports

You can delete the custom reports that you have created and saved. From the All Reports page, click **Delete** link available against the custom report that you wish to delete. This will delete the report.

Saving Reports

If you wish to save the report,

1. Click **Save Report** as button.
2. Specify the **Report Name** and share the report as public or private.
3. Select the **Folder** in which you would like to share the report. You can also add a new folder if required using **Add New Folder** link.
4. Enter **Description** regarding the report.
5. Click **Save**. The report is saved in the folder specified.

Viewing Query

You can also view the SQL Query used in the database to run the report.

1. Click **Show Query** button. The SQL Query of the report is displayed in a pop up.
2. You can also view the Query in the Query Editor on clicking Open With Query Editor.

Mailing Report

1. Click **Mail this Report** button. The mail this report dialog appears.
2. Select the **Format** from the drop down. Say, PDF, HTML, XLS and CSV
3. Specify the **To** address in the given text field.
4. Specify the **Subject** and **Description** of the mail.
5. **Send** the mail.

Sharing Report

The Share button appears on saving and viewing the Custom report. You can share reports to all accounts or only to selected accounts.

1. Click **Share** button.
2. From the Share Report pop up, select the radio button from the options **All Accounts**, **Do not share this report** and **Selected Accounts**.
3. On selecting Selected Accounts, the list of available account name is displayed. You can choose the accounts and move them to **Selected Accounts** block using the >> button.
4. Click **Share**. The report is shared to the selected accounts.

You have an option to export this report to HTML file, PDF file, XLS file and CSV file. To know how to export to PDF, refer to the section Exporting Report as PDF.

Query Reports

The Query Editor helps you to create your custom report by defining your query. With the Query editor you can join different tables from different modules.

1. Click on the **Reports** tab in the header pane to open the All Reports page.
2. Click **New Query Report** button. The Query Editor opens.
3. Click **Create** button. Click **New Query Report** option. This opens the Query Editor page.
4. Specify the title of the report in the **Report Title** field. This field is mandatory.
5. Specify the query to be executed in the **Query** field. This field is also mandatory.
6. The **Logs** displays all error messages on providing any wrong query.
7. Click **Run Report** to run query report.

Tips

1. Date Formulae: `DATE_FORMAT (FROM_UNIXTIME (COLUMN_NAME/1000), '%d-%m-%Y %k: %i') 'Column Alias'`.
2. Minutes Formulae: `ROUND (((COLUMN_NAME/1000)/60) % 60) 'Minutes'`.
3. Hours Formulae: `ROUND (((COLUMN_NAME/1000)/3600)) 'Hours'`.
4. Compare Date: `COLUMN_NAME >= (UNIX_TIMESTAMP (DATE ('2006-07-24 00:00:00')) * 1000)`.
5. Convert Memory in GB: `(((MEMORY_COLUMN)/1024)/1024)/1024`
6. Default Value For Null Data: `COALESCE (COLUMN_NAME, 'Unassigned')`
7. Group by: Query statement will be ends with order by `<column_index>`

Schedule Reports

You can schedule to run the selected reports daily, weekly or monthly using this option. On scheduling the report, the selected report gets generated automatically on the specified date and time and the generated report is sent to the respective person through e-mail. Thus by scheduling the reports you get the data in regular intervals without manually generating it.

1. Click on the **Reports** tab in the header pane to open the All Reports page.
2. Click **New Scheduled Report** button. The Schedule Report page opens. You have four option to schedule reports,

Generate Once

You can generate the report only once by specify the **Date** using the calendar icon  and **Time** from the hours and minutes drop down.

Daily Report

Generate reports on a daily basis by specify the **From Date** and **Time** in hours and minutes from the drop down.

Weekly Report

Generate weekly report by enabling the check box beside the days of the week on which you want to generate reports, or you can select **Everyday** check box to generate reports on daily basis. Also specify the **Time** in hours and minutes.

Monthly Report

Generate reports on a monthly basis by enabling the check box beside the month on which the report has to be generated, or by select **Every Month** check box to generate reports on monthly basis. Also, select the **Date** the report has to be generated every month and the **Time** in hours and minutes.

3. Once you select the **Schedule Type**, select the **Report to schedule** from **Report** drop down. The report drop down lists all the available reports in the application. This field is mandatory.
4. Select the **Format** in which the report should be generated from the drop down. Say, PDF, HTML, CSV and so on.
5. Specify the Email ID of the person to whom the generated report has to be sent in the **To** field.
6. Specify the **Subject** and **Message** to be sent along with the report in the respective fields.
7. **Save** the details.

Report Settings

Report Settings helps you to customize the report column size, customize the data and time format to be displayed in reports, and options to Disable links, grouping per page and specify default values for empty fields.

1. Click **Reports** tab in the header pane to open All Reports page.
2. Click on **Report Settings** button. **Report Settings** page pops up.
3. You can customize the **Tabular column size** by specify the size of the small text, large text, number size and date and time text.
4. If you wish to customize the **Matrix column size**, specify the size of the cell width and cell height and update the changes.
5. You can also change the **Date and Time format** to be displayed in the report. If you specify the format in the given text field as MM-dd-yyyy HH:mm then the result would be Date: 09-20-2007 Time:03:20.
6. You can also customize the **Report Font Settings** by select the font size for the report title, table header and table row from the respective drop down.
7. While viewing the report, if you do not want to show links then enable **Disable link in reports** check box. By default, this option is disabled.
8. You can specify values to replace empty values in the respective field.
9. Click the **Update** button.

Exporting Report as PDF

You can export the report as PDF and save the PDF version of the report for future reference.

To export a report,

1. Generate the report that you want. To know how to generate a report, refer to the Viewing Helpdesk Reports topic.
2. In the report view, click on any of the **Export** options say, PDF
3. If you have a PDF reader (Acrobat Reader), you will be asked if you want to open the document in your default PDF reader. Or else, you can choose to save the PDF document to your disk by selecting the **Save to Disk** radio button. If you want to open the PDF in a PDF reader, then leave the default selected option as is.



4. Click **OK**. The PDF document is opened in your default PDF reader.
5. Save the PDF document for future reference.

Dashboards

Dashboards display the real time information of the data specified in SupportCenter Plus. It provides a quick view of the activities in the present week, present month, previous weeks and previous months, thereby enabling a user to take necessary decisions and actions.

Based on the roles assigned, the Dashboards are customizable to suit the user's perspective. Many such dashboards can be created and sorted by a single user. The widgets display specific information and is illustrated in the form of a pie chart, bar diagram, line diagram or as a list. These widgets can be concealed and rearranged in the canvas. Further, additional information can be obtained on hovering over the bar diagram or pie chart on the widget.

Public Dashboards appear in all the configured Business Units in the application. Any changes made in the public dashboard (adding new widgets or removing a widget) of one business unit, effects the dashboard of all other configured Business Unit.

	<p>Note</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If you have enabled multi-tenancy through Business Unit, select the Business Unit for which the Dashboard should be created and then proceed with the dashboard configurations. 2. Dashboard can be customized by users with specific role permission. Refer Roles to know more.
---	---

The following are the topics discussed under this section: -

- Creating a New Dashboard
 - Editing existing Dashboards
 - Setting a Dashboard as Default
 - Deleting Dashboards
 - Viewing the Dashboard on Full Screen
-

Creating New Dashboard

The New Dashboard form can be accessed from the Dashboard tab by,

- Clicking **New Dashboard** button, or
- Select **Switch to** drop down -> **New Dashboard** option.

The New Dashboard form is separated into **Dashboard Details** and **Add Widgets to Dashboard** section.

Adding the Dashboard details

1. Specify a unique name to be displayed in the Dashboard. The **Dashboard Name** is a mandatory field.
2. Enter a brief **Description** on the main focus of the Dashboard.
3. The Dashboard can be displayed in columns of 1, 2 and 3. Choose the **Number of Columns** from the drop down.

4. If you have selected the column size as 2 or 3, the **Column width** options are enabled. Here you can adjust the width of the columns to suit your needs.
5. For updated real time information, you need to refresh the widgets in the Dashboard at regular intervals. Select the **Refresh Interval** from the drop down. The refresh intervals are from every 5 minutes to every 2 hours. If you do not wish to refresh the widgets, select Never.
6. The dashboard can be made private or can be shared to other SupportCenter Plus users (public). To enable privacy, select Private radio button. To share the dashboard with other users, select Public radio button.
7. Enable the check box beside the widgets you wish to add on the dashboard. It is mandatory to select the widgets.
8. Click **Save** button. The details are saved and the dashboard appears along with the selected widgets in **Switch to...** drop down.

NOTE: To know more on adding widgets to dashboards, refer Adding Widgets to Dashboards.

Editing Dashboards

To modify an existing dashboard,

1. Select the dashboard to be edited from **Switch to...** drop down.
2. Click **Actions** drop down -> select **Edit Dashboard** option. The edit dashboard form appears.
3. Modify the Dashboard details and select/de-select the widgets from the form.
4. Click **Save** button. The modified details are saved and the dashboard appears along with the modified details.

Setting a Dashboard as default

Default Dashboards are dashboards that appear when a user logs into the application. To set a dashboard as default,

1. Select the dashboard to be set as default from **Switch to...** drop down.
2. Click **Actions** drop down -> select **Set this as Default** option.

If you have enabled multi tenancy through Business Units, and you have configured 3 Business Units, with a public dashboard set as default, then all other Business Units bear the same default dashboard.

Deleting Dashboards

To delete a dashboard,

1. Select the dashboard to be deleted from **Switch to...** drop down.
2. Click **Actions** drop down -> select **Delete Dashboard** option. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **Ok** to proceed with the deletion.

NOTE: The delete operation cannot be performed for "Global Dashboard".

View the Dashboard on Full Screen

To get a better view of the dashboard, select View Full Screen option. To view a dashboard on full screen,

1. Select the dashboard to be viewed as full screen from **Switch to...** drop down.
2. Click **Actions** drop down -> select **View Full Screen** option. A new window appears displaying the chosen dashboard in full screen.
3. Close the window to exit from the Full Screen view.

Adding Widgets to Dashboard

There are over 40 widgets that are grouped under specific headings such as Business Units, Requests, Account and Contact, Contracts, Solutions and Others. The purpose of each widget is explained in this document.

-
- Business Unit Widgets
 - Request Widgets
 - Accounts and Contacts Widgets
 - Contract Widgets
 - Solutions Widgets
 - Other Widgets
-

Business Unit Widgets

The Business Unit widgets display the result for all the configured Business Units in the application.

- **Pending Requests by Status - All Business Units:** Lists the number of unresolved requests under the status Open, Onhold and Overdue, across all the configured Business Units.
- **Pending Requests by Support Reps - All Business Units:** Lists the number of requests assigned to Support Reps that remain unresolved, across all the configured Business Units.
- **SLA compliance by Business Unit:** Bar diagram depicting the number of requests within the SLA time and the number of overdue requests across all the Business Units.
- **Inbound Requests by Business Unit:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests fetched across all the configured Business Unit.
- **Contracts expiry summary across all Business Unit:** Lists the number of contracts due to expire for that day, the next 7 days and the next 30 days across all the configured Business Units.
- **Announcements - All Business Units:** This widget holds the current three announcements across all the configured Business Units.
- **Requests approaching SLA Violation:** Lists the first ten requests across all the Business Units that are approaching SLA violation along with the time frame.
- **Requests approaching SLA Violation (First Response):** Lists the first ten requests across all the configured Business Units that are approaching first response time SLA violation.

Request Widgets

- **Pending Requests by Support Rep:** Lists the number of requests assigned to the Support Reps that remain unresolved.
- **Pending Requests by Account:** Lists the number of unresolved requests under each account.
- **SLA Resolution Time compliance by Support Rep:** Bar diagram depicting the number of requests within the specified SLA resolution time and the number of overdue requests that are assigned to the support reps.
- **SLA Resolution Time compliance by Level:** The number of requests within the specified SLA resolution time and the number of overdue requests with level as a parameter.
- **SLA Resolution Time compliance by Priority:** The number of requests within the specified SLA resolution time and the number of overdue requests with priority as a parameter.
- **SLA Resolution Time compliance by Category:** The number of requests within the specified SLA resolution time and the number of overdue requests with category as a parameter.
- **SLA Response Time compliance by Support Rep:** The number of requests within the specified SLA response time and the number of overdue requests assigned to the support reps.
- **SLA Response Time compliance by Level:** The number of requests within the specified SLA response time and the number of overdue requests with level as a parameter.
- **SLA Response Time compliance by Priority:** The number of requests within the specified SLA response time and the number of overdue requests with priority as a parameter.
- **SLA Response Time compliance by Category:** The number of requests within the specified SLA response time and the number of overdue requests with category as a parameter.
- **Request Summary:** Lists the number of requests that are overdue, the number of requests due for that day and the number of unresolved requests.
- **Inbound, Due, Completed Requests:** Line graph showing the inbound, overdue and completed requests.
- **Requests By Mode:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests in the various modes configured in the application.
- **Requests By Support Rep:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests assigned to the support reps.
- **Requests By Level:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests in the levels configured in the application.
- **Requests By Priority:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests in the various priority configured in the application.
- **Request By Category:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests in assigned to the categories configured in the application.

- **Average Resolution Time compliance by Support Rep:** Bar diagram depicting the average resolution time taken by Support Reps to close a request.
- **Average Resolution Time compliance by Level:** Bar diagram depicting the average resolution time taken to close request based on level.
- **Average Resolution Time compliance by Priority:** Bar diagram depicting the average resolution time taken to close requests based on priority.
- **Average Resolution Time compliance by Category:** Bar diagram depicting the average resolution time taken to close a request based on category.
- **Requests Assigned Contracts Vs Requests Not-Assigned Contracts:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests assigned to a contract and the number of requests that are not assigned to a contract.
- **Requests Assigned Products Vs Requests Not-Assigned Products:** Pie chart depicting the number of requests assigned to a product and the number of requests that are not assigned to a product.

Account and Contact Widgets

- **Accounts and Contacts Summary:** This widget shows the number of Accounts added in the last 30 days, the number of contacts added in the last 30 days and the number of contacts without an account.
- **Top Ten accounts with maximum number of products:** Pie chart depicting the top ten accounts with maximum number of products.
- **Top Ten accounts with maximum number of requests:** Pie chart depicting the top ten accounts with maximum number of requests.
- **Accounts By Time Zone:** Pie chart depicting the number of accounts under each time zone.
- **Accounts By Industry:** Pie chart depicting the number of accounts under each industry.
- **Top Ten contacts with maximum number of requests:** Pie chart depicting the top ten contacts with maximum number of requests.
- **Contact Pending Approvals:** Lists the number of contacts that have registered for SupportCenter Plus through the customer portal (Registered Contacts) and the number of contacts who have raised requests in the application but their data is unavailable in the database (Unapproved Contacts).

Contract Widgets

- **Contract Expiry Summary:** Lists the number of contracts that has expired in the last 30 days, the number of contracts expiring in the next 7 days and the number of contracts expiring in the next 30 days.
- **Contract Creation Summary:** Lists the number of contracts created in the last 7 days, the number of contracts created in the last 30 days and the number of contracts created in the last 3 months.

Solution Widgets

- **Solutions waiting for approval:** Lists the recent five solutions waiting to be approved. Clicking on Show All takes you to the Approval Pending Solutions list view page.
- **Recent Solutions:** Lists the recent five solutions added in the application. Clicking on Show All takes you to the Recent Solutions list view page.

Other Widgets

- **Announcement:** Lists the recent five announcements from the selected Business Units. Clicking on Show all takes you to the currently showing announcement list view page.
- **All Tasks:** Lists the recent six tasks created in a Business Unit.
- **Custom Widgets:** As the name suggests, this widget can be customized to display any plain text, video or any output that requires an html snippet.

Dashboards

There are many actions that can be performed on the widgets from the Dashboard tab. The following topics are discussed under this section:-

- Drag and Drop Widgets
- Widget Settings
- Custom Widget

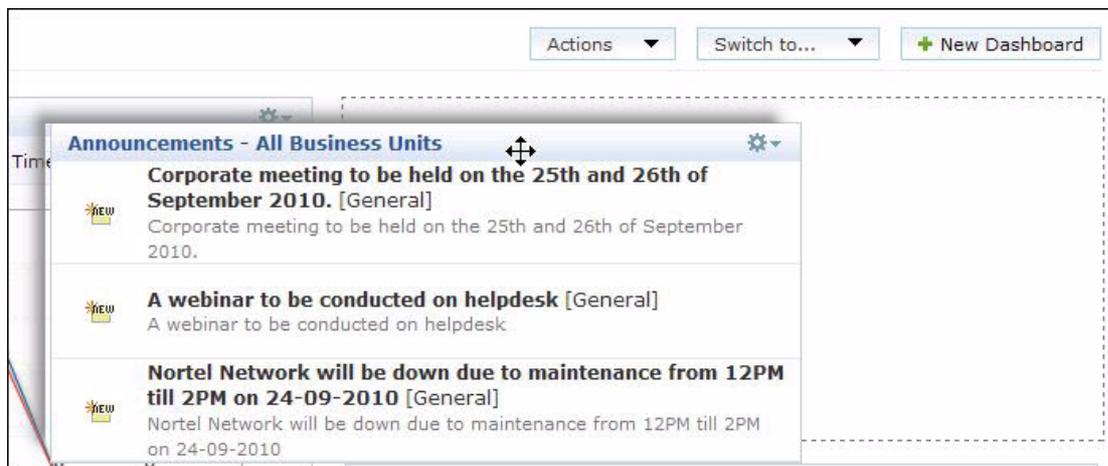
Drag and Drop Widgets

With the drag and drop option, you can place the widgets in the dashboard according to your preference. The widgets most viewed or vital can be placed above all other widgets.

To perform a drag and drop of the widgets,

1. Hover the cursor over the widget title section.
2. Click and drag and widget to the desired location in the canvas.

NOTE: Please note that the widgets should be placed within the dotted lines as shown in the image below,



Widget Settings

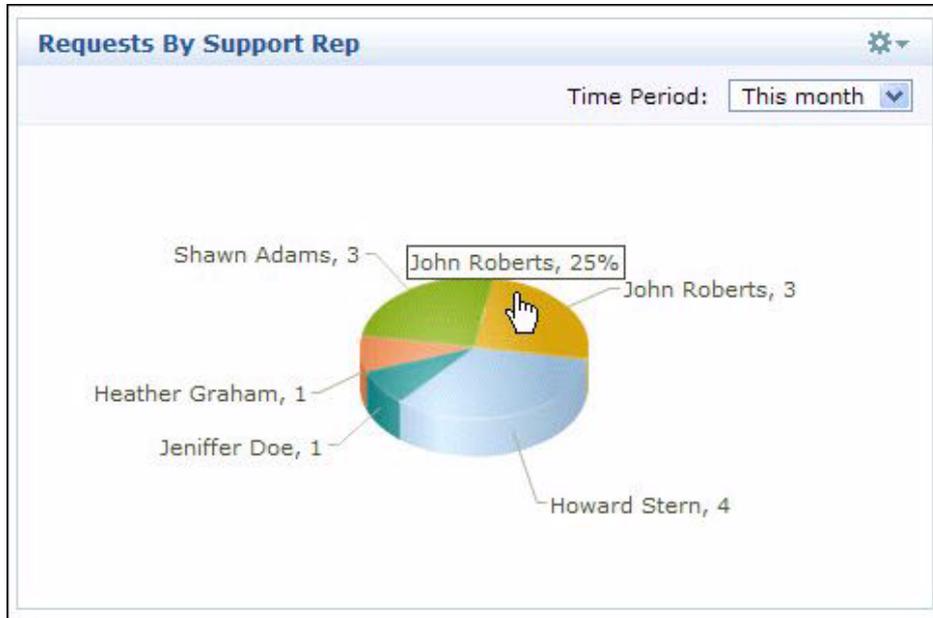
Each widget in the dashboard is provided with a **settings** icon  from where the details about the widget can be obtained. The settings icon also consists of the following options,

- **Settings** The Settings option is available only for the **Custom** widget and for widgets depicting Time Period (pie chart, bar diagram and line diagram).
- **Hide this Widget** Use Hide this Widget to remove a widget from the dashboard. You can enable the widget using Edit Dashboard option.
- **About this Widget** About this Widget provides information on the details and purpose of the widget.

Lets take the pie chart as an example to explore the actions that can be performed on the widgets. The pie chart is divided into various sectors illustration each portion with a

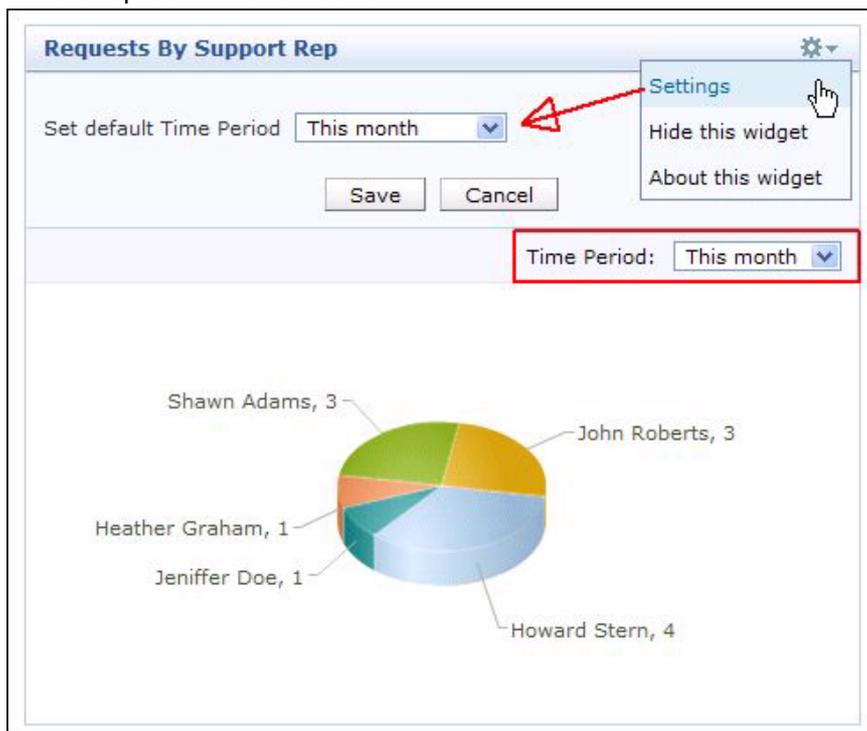
name and numeric value. Hovering over each sector displays the proportion in percentage.

For instance, the widget "Requests by Support Reps" is a pie chart illustrating the number of requests assigned to the various support reps configured in the application.



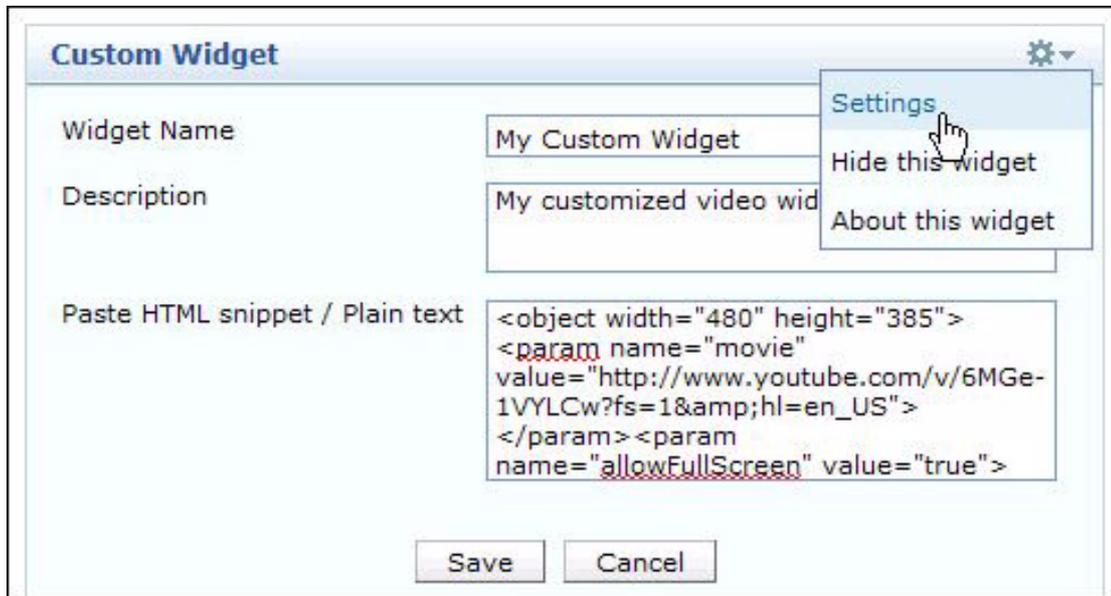
You can set the Time Period to view the requests assigned to the support reps for the present month, present week, previous month and previous week. There are two ways through which you can set the Time Period,

- Select the Time Period from the Widget.
- Click the **Settings** icon  -> Settings option. Set the default Time Period from the drop down. Click Save.



Custom Widget

The custom widget can be customized to display any plain text, video or any output that requires a html snippet. To add a html snippet, enter a name to be displayed for the widget in the **Widget Name** field. Enter a brief description on the custom widget in the **Description** text field. Next, paste the HTML snippet or the plain text in the field provided. Click **Save** to display the output.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Custom Widget" with a settings gear icon in the top right corner. The dialog contains three main input fields:

- Widget Name:** A text box containing "My Custom Widget".
- Description:** A text box containing "My customized video wid".
- Paste HTML snippet / Plain text:** A text area containing the following HTML code:

```
<object width="480" height="385">
<param name="movie"
value="http://www.youtube.com/v/6MGe-
1VYLCw?fs=1&hl=en_US">
</param><param
name="allowFullScreen" value="true">
```

At the bottom of the dialog are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons. A context menu is open over the "Widget Name" field, showing three options: "Settings" (with a gear icon), "Hide this widget", and "About this widget". A mouse cursor is pointing at the "Settings" option.

Appendix

This topic explains the features that are not grouped under any of the modules but can be used from the application.

- System Log Viewer
- Contacting ZOHO Corporation

System Log Viewer

You can view the error logs generated by the SupportCenter Plus application online.



Note: You can also view the error logs in the file name **serverout0.txt** found under C:\AdventNet\ME\SupportCenter\server\default\log.

To view the error logs from the application,

1. Log in to the SupportCenter Plus application using your user name and password. If you have the permissions to view the support information, you will see a **Support** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Support** tab. This opens the **System Log** page.
3. Click the **System Log Viewer** link available in the Support page.

Viewing Individual Log Error Details

To view the individual error details,

1. In the **Error Log** list view page, click the hyperlinked **Error Message**. This opens the error log details page.
2. The **Error Message** field contains the complete error message.
3. The **Module** field indicates the module in which the error occurred.
4. The **Occurred At** field indicates the date and time when the error occurred.
5. If the probable cause of the error is known, then the cause is displayed in the **Probable Cause** field.
6. The **Performed By** field indicates the origin of the error. For example, if it is a system-generated error, then the Performed By field contains System as its value.
7. Click **Close** after viewing the details of the error message.

None of these fields are editable. You can also search for a specific error log details with the help of the **Search in** feature.

Search for Error Logs

To search for error logs,

1. In the left menu, the search block is found at the bottom. If you are in the Error Log list view page, then by default, the **System Log** option is chosen in the **Search in** combo box. If not, then choose **System Log**.
2. In the **Enter Keyword** text field, enter the search string.
3. Press **Enter** on your keyboard or click **Go**. The search results will display all the error logs that match the search string.
4. Click the error log of your choice to view the same.

Delete Error Logs

You can delete these error logs. To delete individual error logs,

1. In the **Error Log** list view, select check boxes beside the **Error Messages** that you wish to delete.
2. Click **Delete**.

If you want to delete all the existing error messages, then click the **Delete All** button.

Contacting ZOHO Corporation

- ZOHO Corporation Headquarters
- Sales
- Technical Support

ZOHO Corporation Headquarters

Web site	www.manageengine.com
ZOHO Corporation Headquarters	ZOHO Corporation 4900 Hopyard Rd., Suite 310 Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA Phone: +1-925-924-9500 Fax: +1-925-924-9600
ZOHO Corporation Development Center	ZOHO Development Centre (I) Private Limited 11 Sarathy Nagar, Vijayanagar, Velachery, Chennai 600 042 INDIA Phone: +91-44-22431115 (10 lines) Fax: +91-44-22435327

Sales

For purchasing ManageEngine SupportCenter Plus from any part of the world, log onto www.supportcenterplus.com or you can also send a mail to sales@manageengine.com.

You can also call the ZOHO Corporation headquarters in the following numbers:

Phone: +1-925-924-9500

Fax: +1-925-924-9600 and request for Sales

Technical Support

One of the value propositions of ZOHO Corporation to its customers is excellent support. During the evaluation phase, the support program is extended to users free of charge.

For support, please mail to supportcenterplus-support@manageengine.com.

Alternatively, you can submit your feedback from the SupportCenter Plus product by clicking the **Feedback** link at the top right corner just above the header tabs after logging into the application. Your feedback will be sent to the SupportCenter Plus Support Team and they will get in touch with you. Do not forget to provide your e-mail ID or your contact information for the team to get in touch with you.